

*91 GS/Tech-07/Sp*  
*Original: inglés*  
*Mayo de 2024*

## **Actividades de las comisiones especializadas**

COMISIÓN DE NORMAS BIOLÓGICAS

**Propuesta de enmiendas al**  
***Manual de las Pruebas de Diagnóstico y de las Vacunas para los***  
***Animales Terrestres***

*Documento de trabajo técnico*



# Índice

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>I. Introducción</b>   | <b>3</b>   |
| <b>1. Textos del <i>Manual Terrestre</i> propuestos para adopción</b>  | <b>3</b>   |
| 1.1 Capítulo 1.1.5. «Gestión de la calidad en los laboratorios de pruebas veterinarias» (Anexo 4)  | 3          |
| 1.2 Capítulo 1.1.9. «Pruebas de esterilidad y ausencia de contaminación en los materiales biológicos de uso veterinario» (Anexo 5)                   | 3          |
| 1.3 Capítulo 2.2.4. «Incertidumbre de la medición» (Anexo 6)   | 4          |
| 1.4 Capítulo 2.2.6. «Elección y uso de tipos y grupos de muestras de referencia» (Anexo 7)   | 5          |
| 1.5 Capítulo 3.1.5. «Fiebre hemorrágica de Crimea-Congo» (Anexo 8)   | 5          |
| 1.6 Capítulo 3.3.6. «Tuberculosis aviar» (sección C. 'Requisitos para las vacunas') (Anexo 9)  | 5          |
| 1.7 Capítulo 3.4.1. «Anaplasmosis bovina» (Anexo 10)   | 5          |
| 1.8 Capítulo 3.4.7. «Diarrea viral bovina» (Anexo 11)  | 6          |
| 1.9 Capítulo 3.4.12. «Dermatosis nodular contagiosa» (solo la sección sobre vacunas) (Anexo 12)  | 6          |
| 1.10 Capítulo 3.6.9. «Rinoneumonía equina (infección por <i>Varicellovirus equidalpha1</i> )» [formalmente, herpesvirus-1 de los équidos] (Anexo 13) | 6          |
| 1.11 Capítulo 3.8.1. «Enfermedad de la frontera» (Anexo 14)  | 6          |
| 1.12 Capítulo 3.8.12. «Viruela ovina y viruela caprina» (solo la sección sobre pruebas de diagnóstico) (Anexo 15)                                    | 6          |
| 1.13 Capítulo 3.9.1. Peste porcina africana (solo la sección sobre vacunas)  | 7          |
| Los números de los anexos corresponden al número de los anexos del informe de la reunión de febrero de 2024 de la Comisión de Normas Biológicas.     |            |
| <b>Annexe 4. Chapter 1.1.5. 'Quality management in veterinary testing laboratories'</b>  | <b>8</b>   |
| <b>Annexe 5. Chapter 1.1.9. 'Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended for veterinary use'</b>             | <b>20</b>  |
| <b>Annexe 6. Chapter 2.2.4. 'Measurement uncertainty'</b>  | <b>40</b>  |
| <b>Annexe 7. Chapter 2.2.6. 'Selection and use of reference samples and panels'</b>  | <b>47</b>  |
| <b>Annexe 8. Chapter 3.1.5. 'Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever'</b>   | <b>59</b>  |
| <b>Annexe 9. Chapter 3.3.6. 'Avian tuberculosis'</b>   | <b>68</b>  |
| <b>Annexe 10. Chapter 3.4.1. 'Bovine anaplasmosis'</b>   | <b>76</b>  |
| <b>Annexe 11. Chapter 3.4.7. 'Bovine viral diarrhoea'</b>  | <b>106</b> |
| <b>Annexe 12. Chapter 3.4.12 'Lumpy skin disease'</b>  | <b>143</b> |
| <b>Annexe 13. Chapter 3.6.9. 'Equine rhinopneumonitis (infection with <i>Varicellovirus equidalpha1</i>)'</b>  | <b>167</b> |
| <b>Annexe 14. Chapter 3.8.1. 'Border disease'</b>  | <b>187</b> |
| <b>Annexe 15. Chapter 3.8.12. 'Sheep pox and goat pox'</b>   | <b>202</b> |

## I. Introducción

Desde la 90ª Sesión General, celebrada en mayo de 2023, la Comisión de Normas Biológicas se ha reunido dos veces, del 4 al 8 de septiembre de 2023 y del 5 al 9 de febrero de 2024. Entre sus actividades, la Comisión ha avanzado en la elaboración de textos nuevos y revisados para el *Manual de las Pruebas de Diagnóstico y de las Vacunas para los Animales Terrestres (Manual Terrestre)*, de acuerdo con su programa de trabajo. Los pormenores de las actividades de la Comisión, incluidos los textos distribuidos para recabar comentarios, se publicaron en los informes de las reuniones de septiembre de 2023 y febrero de 2024 de la Comisión y se pueden consultar en el sitio web de los Delegados, así como en la [página de la OMSA](#).

Este informe ofrece un breve resumen de cada uno de los textos revisados del *Manual Terrestre* que se presentarán para adopción en la 91ª Sesión General. En los informes de las reuniones de la Comisión de [septiembre de 2023](#) y de [febrero de 2024](#) se detallan los comentarios de los Miembros sobre los borradores. La Comisión anima a los Miembros a remitirse a estos informes de reunión para obtener más detalles sobre los textos enmendados que se propondrán para adopción.

Los anexos a este documento presentan las enmiendas propuestas a los capítulos del *Manual Terrestre* que se someterán a la aprobación de la Asamblea Mundial de Delegados en la 91ª Sesión General. Los números de los anexos coinciden con los que figuran en el informe de febrero de 2024 de la Comisión de Normas Biológicas.

Es posible que durante la Sesión General se propongan otras enmiendas al borrador basadas en los comentarios de los Miembros recibidos durante la segunda ronda de comentarios (fecha límite: [30 de abril de 2024](#)).

En el proceso de redacción y revisión de estas enmiendas, la Comisión tuvo en cuenta los comentarios enviados por los Miembros y por las Organizaciones Internacionales que tienen un acuerdo de cooperación con la OMSA.

# 1. Textos del *Manual Terrestre* propuestos para adopción

## 1.1 Capítulo 1.1.5. «Gestión de la calidad en los laboratorios de pruebas veterinarias» ([Anexo 4](#))

El Capítulo 1.1.5. «Gestión de la calidad en los laboratorios de pruebas veterinarias» ha sido objeto de una revisión exhaustiva. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones incluyen: actualización de las referencias y URL; aclaración de que una escasa disponibilidad de material adecuado puede dificultar la validación, y el traslado a la sección A.7.3 «Validación del método analítico»; y actualizaciones técnicas sustanciales en los apartados sobre:

- Acreditación;
- Determinación del alcance del sistema de gestión de la calidad o de la acreditación del laboratorio;
- Validación del método analítico;
- Estimación de la incertidumbre de la medición.

Y actualización del apartado sobre planificación estratégica.

## 1.2 Capítulo 1.1.9. «Pruebas de esterilidad y ausencia de contaminación en los materiales biológicos de uso veterinario» ([Anexo 5](#))

El Capítulo 1.1.9. «Pruebas de esterilidad y ausencia de contaminación de los materiales biológicos de uso veterinario» ha sido objeto de una revisión exhaustiva. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones son las siguientes: actualización para ofrecer una visión general basada en ejemplos de las pruebas y sus antecedentes normativos, incluidos breves ejemplos ilustrativos de contaminación de vacunas; adición de datos a la sección G. «Ejemplos de protocolos» y una clara adjetivación de los ejemplos como no prescriptivos y no exhaustivos, ya que son un fuerte incentivo para las pruebas de agentes extraños; actualización de la sección A. «Revisión de los métodos analíticos» destacando las oportunidades y desafíos más recientes; fusión de las secciones sobre virus vivos e inactivados y bacterias, para simplificar y racionalizar el capítulo; y actualización de la bibliografía y los enlaces web.

## 1.3 Capítulo 2.2.4. «Incertidumbre de la medición» ([Anexo 6](#))

El Capítulo 2.2.4. «Incertidumbre de la medición» ha sido objeto de una revisión exhaustiva. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones son las siguientes: supresión de la referencia a la «Norma de validación de la OMSA»: el capítulo 1.1.6 diferirá del futuro capítulo del *Manual Acuático*, por lo que ya no existe una norma que se aplique a ambos Manuales; aclaración de que el método descrito en este capítulo se conoce como método «descendente», e inclusión de información sobre sus requisitos junto con una sección sobre el alcance y las limitaciones del método descendente; aclaración de que existen métodos alternativos que dependen menos de hipótesis de distribución y que permiten gestionar mejor la presencia de valores atípicos; adición de un ejemplo de cálculo de la incertidumbre de la medición en pruebas moleculares.

#### 1.4 Capítulo 2.2.6. «Elección y uso de tipos y grupos de muestras de referencia» ([Anexo 7](#))

El capítulo 2.2.6. «Elección y uso de muestras y grupos de muestras de referencia» ha sido objeto de una revisión moderada. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones son: actualización de las referencias cruzadas con el Capítulo 1.1.6 «Validación de las pruebas de diagnóstico de las enfermedades infecciosas de animales terrestres»; adición de una figura sobre la documentación que se exige a los materiales de referencia; adición de una lista de referencias para lecturas complementarias; adición de una sección sobre «Lecturas complementarias» con bibliografía revisada por expertos.

#### 1.5 Capítulo 3.1.5. «Fiebre hemorrágica de Crimea–Congo» ([Anexo 8](#))

El Capítulo 3.1.5. «Fiebre hemorrágica de Crimea–Congo» ha sido objeto de una revisión moderada. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones son: adición de dos notas a pie de página a la finalidad «Confirmación de casos clínicos en animales» en la Tabla 1 «Formatos de pruebas de diagnóstico para las infecciones por el virus de la fiebre hemorrágica de Crimea–Congo en animales» para garantizar que concuerda con la definición de caso: las notas a pie de página serán reemplazadas por un enlace a la definición de caso una vez que el capítulo sea adoptado e incluido en el *Código Terrestre*; cambio en la clasificación de la PCR en tiempo real para la finalidad «Demostrar ausencia de infección en animales individuales antes de los desplazamientos», ya que la investigación sobre el VFHCC confirma la viremia transitoria.

#### 1.6 Capítulo 3.3.6. «Tuberculosis aviar» (Sección C. 'Requisitos para las vacunas') ([Anexo 9](#))

El Capítulo 3.3.6. «Tuberculosis aviar» ha sido objeto de una revisión moderada. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre del 2023. Aunque se anexó todo el capítulo, sólo debió haberse anexado la sección C. 'Requisitos para las vacunas'. La principal modificación es la actualización de la sección sobre la producción y los requisitos mínimos para la producción de tuberculina. **NB:** Dado que la tuberculosis aviar no figura en la lista de enfermedades de la OMSA, este capítulo se suprimirá del *Manual Terrestre*; una vez adoptado, la información sobre la producción de tuberculina aviar se trasladará al Capítulo 3.1.13 «Tuberculosis de los mamíferos (infección por el complejo *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*)».

#### 1.7 Capítulo 3.4.1. «Anaplasmosis bovina» ([Anexo 10](#))

El Capítulo 3.4.1. «Anaplasmosis bovina» ha sido objeto de una revisión exhaustiva. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones incluyen: actualización de la información en la introducción del capítulo; adición de una ilustración de un frotis sanguíneo teñido que muestra cuerpos de inclusión de *Anaplasma marginale*; actualización exhaustiva de la sección sobre la PCR, incluida la adición de una tabla de secuencias de cebadores, y de la sección sobre los ELISA, incluida la adición de un ELISA sándwich de doble antígeno de desplazamiento que se ha desarrollado para diferenciar entre los anticuerpos contra *A. marginale* y contra *A. centrale*; revisión de las clasificaciones de algunas de las pruebas de la Tabla 1 «Métodos analíticos disponibles para el diagnóstico de la anaplasmosis bovina y su propósito»; se ha subrayado que la prueba de fijación del complemento tiene una sensibilidad variable y se ha eliminado de la Tabla 1. Este capítulo incluye ahora tablas de justificación de las calificaciones de las pruebas de la Tabla 1 para cada finalidad: estas tablas de justificación serán de gran utilidad para los usuarios del *Manual Terrestre* a la hora de decidir qué prueba utilizar para una finalidad determinada.

### 1.8 Capítulo 3.4.7. «Diarrea viral bovina» ([Anexo 11](#))

El Capítulo 3.4.7. «Diarrea viral bovina» ha sido objeto de una revisión moderada. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones incluyen: actualización de la taxonomía; revisión de las calificaciones de algunas de las pruebas de la Tabla 1 «Métodos analíticos disponibles para el diagnóstico de la diarrea viral bovina y su propósito»; elaboración de tablas de justificación de las calificaciones de las pruebas de la Tabla 1 para cada finalidad.

### 1.9 Capítulo 3.4.12. «Dermatosis nodular contagiosa» (solo la sección sobre vacunas) ([Anexo 12](#))

El Capítulo 3.4.12. «Dermatosis nodular contagiosa» (sólo la sección sobre vacunas) ha sido objeto de una revisión exhaustiva. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones incluyen: adición de texto sobre la escasez de información acerca del papel de la fauna silvestre en la epidemiología de la dermatosis nodular contagiosa; y una actualización completa de la sección C «Requisitos para las vacunas».

### 1.10 Capítulo 3.6.9. «Rinoneumonía equina (infección por *Varicellovirus equidalpha1*)» [formalmente, herpesvirus-1 de los équidos] ([Anexo 13](#))

El Capítulo 3.6.9. «Rinoneumonitis equina (infección por *Varicellovirus equidalpha1*)» [formalmente, herpesvirus-1 de los équidos] ha sido objeto de una revisión exhaustiva. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones consisten en: una actualización de la taxonomía del agente patógeno, puesto que el herpesvirus-1 de los équidos ahora se denomina *Varicellovirus equidalpha1*, y como el capítulo trata de la infección por *Varicellovirus equidalpha1*, se ha suprimido la mayor parte de la información sobre el herpesvirus-4 de los équidos, ya que el HVE4 no figura en la lista; una actualización exhaustiva de la Sección B «Técnicas de diagnóstico», en particular el apartado sobre detección del virus mediante PCR, que ahora cuenta con una tabla sobre secuencias de cebadores y sondas para una serie de PCR en tiempo real, subsecciones sobre pruebas moleculares POC y caracterización molecular, secciones sobre aislamiento de virus y neutralización de virus, y una sección sobre la prueba de fijación del complemento; elaboración de tablas de justificación para las calificaciones de las pruebas de la Tabla 1 para cada finalidad.

### 1.11 Capítulo 3.8.1. «Enfermedad de la frontera» ([Anexo 14](#))

El Capítulo 3.8.1. «Enfermedad de la frontera» ha sido objeto de muy poca revisión. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones son: una actualización menor, principalmente de la taxonomía.

### 1.12 Capítulo 3.8.12. «Viruela ovina y viruela caprina» (solo la sección sobre pruebas de diagnóstico) ([Anexo 15](#))

El Capítulo 3.8.12. «Viruela ovina y viruela caprina» (sólo la sección sobre pruebas de diagnóstico) ha sido objeto de una revisión moderada. El texto revisado se distribuyó para una primera ronda de comentarios en octubre de 2023. Las principales modificaciones son las siguientes: inclusión de las pruebas de anticuerpos fluorescentes, la histopatología y el ELISA en la Tabla 1 «Métodos analíticos disponibles para el diagnóstico de la viruela ovina y la caprina y su finalidad»; actualización completa de la sección sobre métodos de reconocimiento de ácidos nucleicos, en particular los métodos de PCR convencional y en tiempo real; aclaración de que las pruebas ELISA no pueden discriminar entre anticuerpos contra diferentes capripoxvirus.

### *1.13 Capítulo 3.9.1. Peste porcina africana (solo la sección sobre vacunas)*

El Capítulo 3.9.1. «Peste porcina africana» (solo la sección sobre vacunas) ha sido objeto de una revisión exhaustiva. Como resultado del gran volumen de comentarios recibidos de los miembros, el capítulo no será propuesto para su adopción. Se convocará una consulta de expertos para abordar los temas desafiantes y el capítulo se presentará en el ciclo de revisión 2024/2025.

# Annexe 4. Chapter 1.1.5. 'Quality management in veterinary testing laboratories'

## CHAPTER 1.1.5.

# QUALITY MANAGEMENT IN VETERINARY TESTING LABORATORIES

---

## SUMMARY

Valid laboratory results are essential for diagnosis, surveillance, and trade. Such results are achieved by the use of assured through implementation of good a management practices, valid system that supports accurate and consistent test and calibration methods, proper techniques, quality control and quality assurance, all working together within a quality management system. Laboratory quality management includes technical, managerial, and operational elements of testing-performing, interpreting and the interpretation of-reporting test results. A quality management system enables the laboratory to demonstrate both competency and an ability to generate consistent technically valid results that meet the needs of its customers. The need for Mutual recognition and acceptance of test results for international trade, and the acceptance accreditation of tests to international standards such as ISO/IEC<sup>1</sup> 17025-2005 (General Requirements for the Competence of Testing and Calibration Laboratories) (ISO/IEC, 2005-2017b) requires good-suitable laboratory quality management systems. This chapter is not intended to reiterate the requirements of ISO/IEC 17025, nor has it been endorsed by accreditation bodies. Rather, it outlines the important issues and considerations a laboratory should address in the design and maintenance of its quality management system, whether or not it has been formally accredited-regardless of formal accreditation status. Chapter 1.1.1 Management of veterinary diagnostic laboratories gives an introduction to-veterinary diagnostic laboratories introduces the components of governance and management of veterinary laboratories that are necessary for the effective delivery of diagnostic services, and highlights the critical elements that should be established as minimum requirements.

### A. KEY CONSIDERATIONS FOR THE DESIGN AND MAINTENANCE OF A LABORATORY QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

To ensure that the quality management system is appropriate and effective, the design must be carefully thought out-planned and, where accreditation is sought, must address all criteria of the appropriate quality standard. The major categories of considerations and the-their associated key issues and activities within each of these categories are outlined in the following eight sections of this chapter.

---

<sup>1</sup> ISO/IEC: International Organization for Standardization/International Electrochemical Commission.



32 **1. The work, responsibilities, and goals of the laboratory**

33 Many factors affect the necessary elements and requirements of a quality management system. ~~These~~  
34 ~~factors include, including:~~

- 35 i) Type of testing ~~done performed~~, e.g. research versus diagnostic work;
- 36 ii) Purpose and requirements of ~~the~~ test results, e.g. ~~for import or /export quarantine~~ testing,  
37 surveillance, emergency disease exclusion, declaration of freedom from disease post-outbreak;
- 38 iii) Potential impact of a questionable ~~or,~~ erroneous or unfavourable result, e.g. detection of foot and  
39 mouth disease (FMD) in an FMD-free country;
- 40 iv) ~~The tolerance level of Risk and liability~~ tolerance, e.g. vaccination ~~vs versus~~ culling ~~or /~~slaughter;
- 41 v) Customer ~~needs (requirements,~~ e.g. sensitivity and specificity ~~of the test method,~~ cost, turnaround  
42 time, ~~strain or genotype level of~~ characterisation), e.g. ~~for surveillance, or declaration of freedom~~  
43 ~~after outbreak;~~
- 44 vi) ~~The role of the laboratory~~ Role in legal work or in regulatory programmes, e.g. for disease  
45 eradication and declaration of disease freedom to the WOA;H;
- 46 vii) ~~The role of the laboratory~~ Role in assisting with, confirming, or overseeing the work of other  
47 laboratories (e.g. as a reference laboratory);
- 48 viii) Business goals ~~of the laboratory,~~ including the need for any third-party recognition or accreditation.

49 **2. Standards, guides, and references**

50 The laboratory should ~~choose reputable and accepted~~ follow globally recognised standards and guides  
51 to assist in designing the quality management system. For laboratories seeking accreditation ~~formal~~  
52 recognition of testing competency, and for all WOA;H Reference Laboratories, the use of ISO/IEC 17025  
53 (ISO/IEC, 2005-2017b) or equivalent ~~will be is~~ essential. This standard ~~includes specifies~~  
54 and technical requirements and accredited laboratories ~~that are compliant~~ are regarded as competent.  
55 Further information on standards may be obtained from the national standards body of each country,  
56 from the International Laboratory Accreditation Cooperation (ILAC)<sup>2</sup>, and from accreditation bodies, e.g.  
57 ~~the National Association of Testing Authorities (NATA), Australia, the United Kingdom Accreditation~~  
58 ~~Service (UKAS), the American Association for Laboratory Accreditation (A2LA), etc.~~ Technical and  
59 international organisations such as AOAC International (The Scientific Association Dedicated to  
60 Analytical Excellence; formerly the Association of Official Analytical Chemists) and the International  
61 Organization for Standardization (ISO) publish useful references, guides, application documents and  
62 standards that supplement the general requirements of ISO/IEC 17025. Other relevant documents may  
63 include guide [https://nata.com.au/files/2021/05/Animal-Health-ISO-IEC-17025-Appendix-effective-](https://nata.com.au/files/2021/05/Animal-Health-ISO-IEC-17025-Appendix-effective-March2021.pdf)  
64 [March2021.pdf](https://nata.com.au/files/2021/05/Animal-Health-ISO-IEC-17025-Appendix-effective-March2021.pdf); Newberry & Colling, 2021.

65 The ISO International Standard 9001 (ISO, 2015), ~~is a certification standard~~ specifies the requirements  
66 for quality management systems and while it may be a useful ~~supplement~~ framework to a ~~underpin a~~  
67 laboratory quality system, fulfilment of its requirements ~~does~~ not ~~necessarily ensure or imply assure~~  
68 technical competence (in the areas listed in Section 3 *Accreditation*). Conformance to the requirements  
69 of ISO 9001 is assessed by a certification body that is accredited ~~to undertake such assessments by~~  
70 the national accreditation body to undertake such assessments. When a laboratory meets the  
71 requirements of ISO 9001, the term *registration* or *certification* is used to indicate conformity, not  
72 *accreditation*.

73 With the advent of stronger alliances between medical and veterinary diagnostic testing under initiatives  
74 such as “One Health”, some laboratories may ~~wish to choose~~ to follow other ISO standards such as ISO  
75 15189 Medical Laboratories – Requirements for Quality and Competence (ISO/IEC, 2012), ~~which~~  
76 ~~include 2022), for~~ testing of human samples, e.g. for zoonotic diseases. ~~It should be noted that for~~  
77 ~~veterinary laboratories, limited availability of suitable material may render validation difficult; under these~~

---

<sup>2</sup> ILAC: The ILAC Secretariat, PO Box 7507, Silverwater, NSW 2128, Australia; <http://ilac.org/>

78 circumstances it is necessary to highlight the limited validation status when reporting results and their  
79 interpretation (Stevenson *et al.*, 2021).

### 80 3. Accreditation

81 If ~~the laboratory decides to proceed with formal recognition of its a laboratory's~~ quality management  
82 system and testing, ~~then is sought~~, third party verification of its conformity with the selected standard(s)  
83 ~~will be is~~ necessary. ILAC has published specific requirements and guides for laboratories and  
84 accreditation bodies. Under the ILAC system, ISO/IEC 17025 is to be used for laboratory accreditation  
85 of testing or calibration activities. Definitions regarding laboratory accreditation may be found in ISO/IEC  
86 International Standard 17000: Conformity Assessment – Vocabulary and General Principles (ISO/IEC,  
87 2004a-2020). Accreditation is not tied to dependent on demonstrated competence, which is encompasses  
88 significantly more than having and following documented procedures. Providing a competent and  
89 customer-oriented service also means that the laboratory requires:

- 90 i) Adequate facilities and environmental controls:
- 91 ii) ~~Has~~ Appropriately qualified and trained personnel with a depth of technical knowledge  
92 commensurate with appropriate level of authority;
- 93 ~~Has appropriate~~ Equipment with planned that is appropriately verified and managed in accordance  
94 with the relevant maintenance and calibration schedule;
- 95 ~~iv) Has adequate facilities and environmental control;~~
- 96 ~~v) Has procedures and specifications that ensure accurate and reliable results;~~
- 97 ~~vi) Implements continual improvements in testing and quality management;~~
- 98 ~~vii) Can assess the need for and implement appropriate corrective or preventive actions, e.g. customer~~  
99 ~~satisfaction;~~
- 100 ~~viii) Accurately assesses and controls uncertainty in testing;~~
- 101 iv) Appropriate sample and materials management processes:
- 102 v) Has Technically valid and validated test methods, procedures and specifications ~~that are,~~  
103 documented in accordance with the requirements of the applicable standard or guidelines, e.g.  
104 Chapter 1.1.6 *Principles and methods of validation of diagnostic assays for infectious diseases*  
105 and chapters 2.2.1 to 2.2.8 *Recommendations for validation of diagnostic tests and Special Issue*  
106 of the Scientific and Technical Review (2021)<sup>3</sup>;
- 107 ~~vi) Demonstrates~~ Demonstrable proficiency in the applicable test methods used (e.g. by regular  
108 participation in proficiency tests on a regular basis testing schemes);
- 109 vii) Accurate assessment and control of the measurement of uncertainty in testing;
- 110 viii) Good documentation practices, e.g. ALCOA+ principles (i.e. Attributable, Legible,  
111 Contemporaneous, Original, Accurate, Complete, Consistent, Enduring, Available);
- 112 ix) Non-conformance management process, including detection, reporting, risk-assessment and  
113 implementation of effective corrective and preventive actions;
- 114 x) Complaints management;
- 115 xi) Adequate control of data and information;
- 116 xii) Appropriate reporting and approval process;
- 117 xiii) Culture of continual improvement.
- 118 xiv) Has demonstrable competence to generate technically valid results.

<sup>3</sup> Available at: <https://doc.woaah.org/dyn/portal/index.xhtml?page=alo&alold=41245>

119 **4. Selection of an accreditation body**

120 To facilitate the acceptance of the laboratory's test results for trade, the accreditation standard used  
121 must be recognised by the international community and the accreditation body recognised as competent  
122 to accredit laboratories. Programmes for the recognition of accreditation bodies are, in the ILAC scheme,  
123 based on the requirements of ISO/IEC International Standard 17011: Conformity Assessment – General  
124 Requirements for Accreditation Bodies Accrediting Conformity Assessment Bodies (ISO/IEC, 2004b  
125 2017a). Information on recognised accreditation bodies may be obtained from the organisations that  
126 recognise them, such as the Asia-Pacific Accreditation Cooperation (APAC), the Inter-American  
127 Accreditation Cooperation (IAAC), and the European Co-operation for Accreditation (EA).

128 Accreditation bodies may also be signatory to the ILAC and regional (e.g. APAC) mutual recognition  
129 arrangements (MRAs). These MRAs are designed to reduce technical barriers to trade and further  
130 facilitate the acceptance of a laboratory's test results in foreign markets. Further information on the ILAC  
131 MRA may be obtained from the <http://www.ilac.org>.

132 **5. Determination of the scope of the quality management system or of the laboratory's**  
133 **accreditation**

134 The scope of the quality management system should ~~cover all areas of activity affecting all~~ include all  
135 activities that impact testing that is ~~done at~~ performed by the laboratory. Whilst only accredited  
136 laboratories are obliged to meet the requirements of the relevant standard ~~as detailed below, these~~ the  
137 guiding principles should be considered best practise and are relevant to all testing laboratories.

138 ~~Laboratories accredited~~ A laboratory's accreditation to ISO/IEC 17025 ~~have~~ includes a specific list of  
139 ~~these accredited~~ tests that are accredited, called, referred to as the schedule or scope of accreditation  
140 ~~or the scope~~. Veterinary testing facilities include government and private facilities, veterinary practices,  
141 university veterinary schools, and other laboratories for the testing of animals and animal products for  
142 the diagnosis, monitoring and treatment of disease. In principle, if new testing methods are introduced  
143 these must be assessed and accredited before they can be added to the scope, however a flexible  
144 scope can be implemented that assesses the laboratory as competent to add tests to scope, which are  
145 then formally added at the next accreditation visit. ~~The quality management system should ideally cover~~  
146 ~~all areas of activity affecting all testing that is done at~~ the laboratory. However, it is up to the laboratory  
147 ~~to decide which tests are to be accredited and included in the scope~~. If an accredited laboratory also  
148 offers ~~unaccredited~~ non-accredited tests, these must be clearly indicated as such on any reports that  
149 claim or make reference to accreditation. ~~Factors~~ It is ultimately the decision of the laboratory to decide  
150 which tests require inclusion in the scope of accreditation, and factors that might affect the laboratory's  
151 ~~choice of tests for scope of accreditation~~ this decision include:

- 152 i) ~~The impact of initial accreditation on resources within a given deadline;~~
- 153 i) Associated risks and opportunities;
- 154 ii) Initial investment required (e.g. time, resources);
- 155 iii) ~~A~~ Contractual requirement for accredited testing (e.g. for international trade, research projects);
- 156 iv) ~~The~~ Importance of the test and the potential impact of an incorrect result;
- 157 v) The cost of maintaining an accredited test versus frequency of use;
- 158 vi) Availability of personnel, facilities and equipment;
- 159 vii) Availability of appropriate materials and reference standards (e.g. ~~standardised~~ reagents, ~~internal~~  
160 ~~quality control samples~~ controls, reference cultures) ~~and~~
- 161 viii) Access to proficiency testing schemes;
- 162 ix) The quality ~~assurance~~ control processes necessary for materials, reagents and media;
- 163 x) The validation status, e.g. access to field samples from infected and non-infected animals, technical  
164 complexity and reliability of the test method;
- 165 xi) ~~The~~ Potential for subcontracting of accredited tests.

## 166 6. Quality assurance, quality control and proficiency testing

167 Quality assurance (QA) is the ~~part element~~ of quality management focused on providing confidence that  
168 ~~quality defined~~ requirements ~~will be~~ are fulfilled. The requirements may be internal or defined in an  
169 accreditation or certification standard. QA is process-oriented and ~~ensures provides~~ the right things are  
170 ~~being done in the right way~~ appropriate inputs to prevent problems arising.

171 Quality control (QC) is the systematic and planned monitoring of outputs to ensure ~~the minimum levels~~  
172 ~~of quality requirements~~ have been met. For a testing laboratory, this is ~~to ensure test processes~~ ensures  
173 ~~tests are working correctly performing consistently and reliably~~, and results are within ~~the expected~~  
174 acceptable parameters and limits. QC is ~~test orientated and ensures the results are as expected~~  
175 oriented and ensures detection of any problems that arise.

176 Proficiency testing (PT), sometimes referred to as external quality assurance ~~or (EQA)~~, is the  
177 ~~determination assessment~~ of a laboratory's performance ~~by when~~ testing a standardised panel of  
178 specimens of undisclosed content. Ideally, PT schemes should be ~~run~~ managed by an external  
179 independent provider. Participation in proficiency testing schemes enables the laboratory to assess and  
180 demonstrate ~~the their testing~~ reliability of results ~~by in~~ comparison with ~~those from~~ other participating  
181 laboratories.

182 All laboratories should, where possible, participate in external proficiency testing schemes appropriate  
183 ~~to their testing. Participation the suite of tests provided; participation~~ in such schemes is a requirement  
184 for accredited laboratories. This provides an independent assessment of the testing methods used ~~and~~  
185 as well as the level of staff competence. If such schemes are not available, valid alternatives may be  
186 used, such as ring trials organised by reference laboratories, inter-laboratory testing, use of certified  
187 reference materials or internal quality control samples, replicate testing using the same or different  
188 methods, retesting of retained items, ~~and or~~ correlation of results for different characteristics of a  
189 specimen.

190 Providers and operators of proficiency testing programmes should be accredited to ISO/IEC 17043 –  
191 Conformity Assessment – General Requirements for Proficiency Testing (ISO/IEC, 2010).

192 Proficiency testing material from accredited providers ~~has been~~ is well characterised and any spare  
193 material, once the proficiency testing has been completed, can be useful to demonstrate staff  
194 competence or for test validation. Information about selection and use of reference samples and panels  
195 is available in Chapter 2.2.6 *Selection and use of reference samples and panels*. Proficiency testing and  
196 reproducibility scenarios are described by Johnson & Cabuang (2021) and Waugh & Clark (2021),  
197 respectively.

## 198 7. Test methods

199 ISO/IEC 17025 requires the use of appropriate test methods and has requirements for their selection,  
200 development, and validation to ~~show demonstrate~~ fitness for purpose.

201 This *Terrestrial Manual* provides recommendations on the selection of test methods for trade, diagnostic  
202 and surveillance purposes in the chapters on specific diseases. Disease-specific chapters include, or  
203 will include in the near future, a table of the tests available for the disease, graded against the test's  
204 fitness for purpose; these purposes are defined in the WOAHA Validation Template (chapter 1.1.6), which  
205 identifies six main purposes for which diagnostic tests may be carried out. The table is intended ~~to be~~  
206 as a general guide to test application; the fact that a test is recommended does not necessarily mean  
207 that a laboratory is competent to perform it. The laboratory quality system should incorporate provision  
208 of evidence of competency.

209 In ~~the veterinary profession laboratories~~, other standard methods (published in international, regional,  
210 or national standards) or fully validated methods (having undergone a full collaborative study and that  
211 are published or issued by an authoritative technical body such as the AOAC International) may be  
212 preferable to use, but ~~may not be~~ available. Many veterinary laboratories develop or modify methods,  
213 and most laboratories have test systems that use non-standard methods, or a combination of standard

214 and non-standard methods. In veterinary laboratories, even with the use of standard methods, some in-  
215 house evaluation, optimisation, or validation ~~is generally must be done~~ required to ensure valid results.

216 Customers and laboratory staff must have a clear understanding of the performance characteristics of  
217 the test, and customers should be informed if the method is non-standard. Many veterinary testing  
218 laboratories will therefore need to demonstrate competence in the development, adaptation, verification  
219 and validation of test methods.

220 This *Terrestrial Manual* provides more detailed and specific guidance on test selection, optimisation,  
221 standardisation, and validation in chapter 1.1.6. ~~Chapter 1.1.6 refers to chapters 2.2.1–2.2.8~~  
222 ~~Recommendations for validation of diagnostic tests~~ that deal with the development and optimisation of  
223 fundamentally different assays such as antibody, antigen and nucleic acid detections tests,  
224 measurement uncertainty, statistical approaches to test validation, selection and use of reference  
225 samples and panels, validation of diagnostic tests for wildlife, and comparability experiments after  
226 changes in a validated test method.

227 The following are key test method issues for those involved in the quality management of the laboratory.

## 228 **7.1. Selection of the test method**

229 Valid results begin with the selection of a test method that meets the needs of the laboratory's  
230 customers in addressing their specific requirements (fitness for purpose). Some issues relate  
231 directly to the laboratory, others to the customer.

### 232 **7.1.1. Considerations for the selection of a test method**

- 233 i) International acceptance;
- 234 ii) Scientific acceptance;
- 235 iii) Appropriate or current technology;
- 236 iv) Suitable performance characteristics (e.g. analytical and diagnostic sensitivity and  
237 specificity, repeatability, reproducibility, isolation rate, limits of detection, precision,  
238 trueness, and uncertainty);
- 239 v) Suitability of the test in the species and population of interest;
- 240 vi) Sample type (e.g. serum, tissue, milk) and its expected quality or state on arrival at  
241 the laboratory;
- 242 vii) Test target (e.g. antibody, antigen, live pathogen, nucleic acid sequence);
- 243 viii) Test turnaround time;
- 244 ix) Resources and time available for development, adaptation, evaluation;
- 245 x) Intended use (e.g. export, import, surveillance, screening, diagnostic, confirmatory);
- 246 xi) Safety factors and biocontainment requirements;
- 247 xii) Customer expectations;
- 248 xiii) Throughput of test-Sample numbers and required throughput (automation, robot);
- 249 xiv) Cost of test, per sample;
- 250 xv) Availability of reference standards, reference materials and proficiency testing  
251 schemes. (See also chapter 2.2.6.).

## 252 **7.2. Optimisation and standardisation of the test method**

253 Once the method has been selected, it must be set up at the laboratory. Additional optimisation  
254 is necessary, whether the method was developed in-house (validation) or imported from an  
255 outside source (verification). Optimisation establishes critical specifications and performance  
256 standards for the test process as used in a specific laboratory.

257  
258  
259  
260  
261  
262  
263  
264  
265  
266  
267  
268  
269

### 7.2.1. Determinants of optimisation

- i) Critical specifications for equipment, ~~instruments-consumables, and~~ reagents (e.g. chemicals, biologicals), reference standards, reference materials, and internal controls;
- ii) Robustness – critical control points and acceptable ranges, attributes or behaviour at critical control points, using statistically acceptable procedures;
- iii) Quality control activities necessary to monitor critical control points;
- iv) The type, number, range, frequency, and arrangement of test run controls;
- v) Criteria for ~~non-subjective-objective~~ acceptance or rejection of a batch of test results;
- vi) Criteria for ~~the~~ interpretation and reporting of test results;
- vii) ~~A-Documented test method and reporting procedure for use by laboratory staff;~~
- viii) Evidence of technical competence for those ~~who performing~~ the test ~~processes~~ methods, authorising test results and interpreting results.

270

### 7.3. Validation of the test method

271  
272  
273  
274  
275  
276  
277  
278  
279  
280  
281  
282  
283  
284  
285  
286  
287  
288  
289

Test method validation evaluates the test for its fitness for a given use purpose by establishing test performance characteristics such as sensitivity, specificity, and isolation rate; and diagnostic parameters such as positive or negative cut-off, repeatability, reproducibility and titre of interest or significance. Validation should be ~~done~~ performed using an optimised, documented, and fixed procedure. The extent and depth of the validation process will depend on logistical and risk factors. ~~It and~~ may involve any number of activities and amount of data, with subsequent data analysis using appropriate statistical methods (Chapter 1.1.6.). Acknowledging diagnostic test validation science as a key element in the effective detection of infectious diseases, WOAH recently published a Special Issue representing an up-to-date compilation of the relevant standards (WOAH and non-WOAH) and guidance documents for all stages of diagnostic test validation and proficiency testing, including design and analysis, as well as clear, complete and transparent reporting of validation studies in the peer-reviewed literature (Colling & Gardner, 2021). It is important to note that the current version of ISO 17025:2017 specifies that personnel must be authorised to perform validation and related activities, which means that training in validation and verification methods, including results interpretation, is likely to become more important to prove competence (Colling & Gardner, 2021). It should also be noted that for veterinary laboratories, limited availability of suitable material may render validation difficult; under these circumstances it is necessary to highlight the limited validation status when reporting results and their interpretation (Stevenson et al., 2021).

290

#### 7.3.1. Activities that validation might include

291  
292  
293  
294  
295  
296  
297  
298  
299  
300  
301  
302  
303  
304

- ~~i) Field or epidemiological studies, including disease outbreak investigations and testing of samples from infected and non-infected animals;~~
- ~~ii) Development of testing algorithms for specific purposes, e.g. surveillance, outbreak investigations, etc.;~~
- ~~iii) Repeat testing in the same laboratory to establish the effect of variables such as operator, reagents, equipment;~~
- ~~iiiv) Comparison with other, preferably standard methods and with reference standards (if available);~~
- ~~iiiv) Collaborative studies with other laboratories using the same documented method. Ideally organised by a reference laboratory and including testing a panel of samples of undisclosed composition or titre with expert evaluation of results and feedback to the participants to estimate reproducibility;~~
- ~~iv) Reproduction of data from an accepted standard method, or from a reputable peer-reviewed publication (verification);~~



305 vii) Experimental infection or disease outbreak studies;

306 viii) Analysis of internal quality control data.

307 vii) Field or epidemiological studies, including disease outbreak investigations and  
308 testing of samples from infected and non-infected animals;

309 viii) Development of testing algorithms for specific purposes, e.g. surveillance, outbreak  
310 investigations, etc.;

311 Validation is always a balance between cost, risk, and technical possibilities. There  
312 may be cases where quantities such as only basic accuracy and precision can only  
313 be given determined, e.g. when the disease is not present in a simplified way country  
314 or region. Criteria and procedures for the correlation of test results for diagnosis of  
315 disease status or for regulatory action must be developed. The criteria and  
316 procedures developed should account for screening methods, retesting and  
317 confirmatory testing.

318 Test validation is covered in chapter 1.1.6.

#### 319 **7.4. Uncertainty of the test method**

320 Statistically relevant numbers of samples from infected and non-infected animals are discussed  
321 in chapter 1.1.6. test validation and chapter 2.2.5 statistical approaches to validation.

#### 322 **7.4. Estimation of Measurement Uncertainty**

323 Measurement of Uncertainty (MU) is “a parameter associated with the result of a measurement  
324 that characterises the dispersion of values that could reasonably be attributed to the measure”  
325 (Eurachem, 2012). Uncertainty of measurement does not imply doubt about a result but rather  
326 increased confidence in its validity. It is not the equivalent to *error*, as it may be applied to all  
327 test results derived from a particular procedure.

328 Laboratories must estimate the MU for each test method resulting in a quantitative measurement  
329 included in their scope of accreditation, and for any methods used to calibrate equipment,  
330 included in their scope of accreditation (ISO/IEC 17025, 2005-2017b).

331 Tests can be broadly divided into two groups: quantitative (e.g. biochemical assays, enzyme-  
332 linked immunosorbent assays [ELISA], titrations, real-time polymerase chain reaction [PCR],  
333 pathogen enumeration, etc.); and qualitative (bacterial culture, parasite identification, virus  
334 isolation, endpoint PCR, immunofluorescence, etc.).

335 The determination of MU is well established in *quantitative* measurement sciences (ANSI,  
336 1997). It may be given as a numeric expression of reliability and is commonly shown as a stated  
337 range. Standard deviation (SD) and confidence reference interval (C-RI) are examples of the  
338 expression of MU, for example the optical density result of an ELISA expressed as  $\pm n$  SD,  
339 where  $n$  is usually 1, 2 or 3. The confidence interval (usually 95%) gives an estimated range in  
340 which the result is likely to fall, calculated from a given set of test data. For quantitative  
341 measurements, example for a top-down or control-sample approach are provided for an  
342 antibody ELISA in chapter 2.2.4, and by the Australian government webpage<sup>4</sup>. An example for  
343 a quantitative PCR hydrolysis probe (TaqMan) assay is provided by Newberry & Colling (2021).

344 The ISO/IEC 17025 requirement for “quality control procedures for monitoring the validity of  
345 tests” implies that the laboratory must use quality control procedures that cover all major sources  
346 of uncertainty. There is no requirement to cover each component separately. Laboratories may  
347 establish acceptable specifications, criteria, ranges, etc., at critical control points for each  
348 component of the test process. The laboratory can then implement appropriate quality control

<sup>4</sup> Australian Government, Department of Agriculture, Fisheries and Forestry, Worked examples of measurement uncertainty, Measurement uncertainty in veterinary diagnostic testing – DAFF (agriculture.gov.au) (accessed 15 March 2023).

349 measures at these critical points, or seek to reduce or eliminate the uncertainty effect of each  
350 component.

351 **7.4.1. Potential sources of uncertainty include:**

- 352 i) Sampling;
- 353 ii) Contamination;
- 354 iii) Sample transport and storage conditions;
- 355 iv) Sample processing;
- 356 v) Reagent quality, preparation and storage;
- 357 vi) Type of reference material;
- 358 vii) Volumetric and weight manipulations;
- 359 viii) Environmental conditions;
- 360 ix) Equipment effects;
- 361 x) Analyst or operator bias;
- 362 xi) Biological variability;
- 363 xii) Unknown or random effects.

364 Systematic errors or bias determined by validation must be corrected by changes in the  
365 method, adjusted for mathematically, or have the bias noted as part of the report  
366 statement.

367 If an adjustment is made to a test or procedure to reduce uncertainty or correct bias then  
368 a new source of uncertainty is introduced (the uncertainty of the correction). This must be  
369 assessed as part of the MU estimate.

370 The application of the principles of MU to *qualitative* testing is less well defined. The  
371 determination and expression of MU has not been standardised for veterinary (or medical,  
372 food, or environmental) testing laboratories, but sound guidance exists and as  
373 accreditation becomes more important, applications are being developed. The ISO/IEC  
374 17025 standard recognises that some test methods may preclude metrologically and  
375 statistically valid calculation of uncertainty of measurement. In such cases the laboratory  
376 must attempt to identify and estimate all the components of uncertainty based on  
377 knowledge of the performance of the method and making use of previous experience,  
378 validation data, internal control results, etc.

379 Many technical organisations and accreditation bodies (e.g. AOAC International, ISO,  
380 NATA, A2LA, Standards Council of Canada, UKAS, Eurachem, the Cooperation of  
381 International Traceability in Analytical Chemistry) teach courses or provide guidance on  
382 MU for laboratories seeking accreditation.

383 ~~The ISO/IEC 17025 requirement for “quality control procedures for monitoring the validity~~  
384 ~~of tests” implies that the laboratory must use quality control procedures that cover all~~  
385 ~~major sources of uncertainty. There is no requirement to cover each component~~  
386 ~~separately. Laboratories may establish acceptable specifications, criteria, ranges, etc., at~~  
387 ~~critical control points for each component of the test process. The laboratory can then~~  
388 ~~implement appropriate quality control measures at these critical points, or seek to reduce~~  
389 ~~or eliminate the uncertainty effect of each component. Measurement Uncertainty is~~  
390 ~~covered in chapter 2.2.4.~~

391 **~~7.4.1. Components of tests with sources of uncertainty include:~~**

- 392 ~~i) Sampling;~~
- 393 ~~ii) Contamination;~~



- 394 iii) ~~Sample transport and storage conditions;~~  
395 iv) ~~Sample processing;~~  
396 v) ~~Reagent quality, preparation and storage;~~  
397 vi) ~~Type of reference material;~~  
398 vii) ~~Volumetric and weight manipulations;~~  
399 viii) ~~Environmental conditions;~~  
400 ix) ~~Equipment effects;~~  
401 x) ~~Analyst or operator bias;~~  
402 xi) ~~Biological variability;~~  
403 xii) ~~Unknown or random effects.~~

404 ~~Systematic errors or bias determined by validation must be corrected by changes in the~~  
405 ~~method, adjusted for mathematically, or have the bias noted as part of the report~~  
406 ~~statement.~~

407 ~~If an adjustment is made to a test or procedure to reduce uncertainty or correct bias then~~  
408 ~~a new source of uncertainty is introduced (the uncertainty of the correction). This must be~~  
409 ~~assessed as part of the MU estimate.~~

410 Additional information on the analysis of uncertainty may be found in the Eurachem  
411 Guides to Quantifying Uncertainty in Measurement (Eurachem, 2012) and Use of  
412 ~~uncertainty information in compliance assessment~~ Uncertainty Information in Compliance  
413 Assessment (Eurachem, 2007).

## 414 7.5. Implementation and use of the test method

415 Training should be a planned and structured activity with steps to ensure adequate supervision  
416 is maintained while analysts are being trained. Depending on the complexity of the test and the  
417 experience of the analyst, training may include any combination of reading and understanding  
418 the documented test method, initial demonstration, performance of the test under supervision  
419 and independent performance. Analysts should ~~be able to demonstrate proficiency in using the~~  
420 ~~test method prior to producing~~ being authorised to produce reported results, and on an ongoing  
421 basis.

422 The laboratory must be able to demonstrate traceability for all accredited tests and the principle  
423 should apply to all tests whether accredited or not. This covers all activities relating to test  
424 selection, development, optimisation, standardisation, validation, verification, implementation,  
425 reporting, personnel, quality control and quality assurance (see also Section 7.3.1. point vi).  
426 Traceability is achieved by using appropriate documented project management, record keeping,  
427 data management and archiving systems.

## 428 8. Strategic planning

429 Laboratories should have evidence of continual improvement, which is an obligatory requirement  
430 for accredited laboratories. The laboratory must ~~be knowledgeable of and stay~~ maintain current  
431 ~~with knowledge of~~ the relevant quality and technical ~~management~~ standards and with methods  
432 used to demonstrate laboratory competence and establish and maintain technical validity. Evidence  
433 of this may ~~be provided by~~ include:

- 434 i) Attendance at conferences, organisation of in-house or external meetings on diagnostics and  
435 quality management;
- 436 ii) ~~Participation in~~ Membership of local and international organisations;
- 437 iii) ~~Participation in writing~~ Contribution to national and international standards (e.g. on ILAC and  
438 ISO committees);

- 439 iv) Maintenance of current awareness of publications, writing through review of and reviewing  
440 publications about diagnostic methods contribution to relevant literature;
- 441 v) Participation in training programmes, including visits to other laboratories;
- 442 vi) Conducting research;
- 443 vii) Participation in cooperative programmes (e.g. Inter-American Institute for Cooperation in  
444 Agriculture);
- 445 viii) Exchange of procedures, methods, reagents, samples, personnel, and ideas;
- 446 ix) Planned, continual professional development and technical training;
- 447 x) Management reviews;
- 448 xi) Analysis of customer feedback;
- 449 xii) Root cause analysis of anomalies and implementation of corrective, preventive and  
450 improvement actions, as well as effectiveness reviews.

451

## REFERENCES

- 452 ANSI (American National Standards Institute) (1997). ANSI/NCS<sup>5</sup> Z540-2-1997 (R2012), US Guide to  
453 the Expression of Uncertainty in Measurement, First Edition. American National Standards Institute,  
454 [www.ansi.org](http://www.ansi.org).
- 455 Colling A.& Gardner I.A., eds (2021). Diagnostic test validation science: a key element for effective  
456 detection and control of infectious animal diseases. Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz., 40, Available at  
457 <https://doc.woah.org/dyn/portal/index.xhtml?page=alo&alold=41245>
- 458 Eurachem (2007). Eurachem/CITAC Guide: Use of Uncertainty Information in Compliance Assessment,  
459 First Edition. Eurachem Secretariat. [www.eurachem.org](http://www.eurachem.org).
- 460 Eurachem (2012). Eurachem/CITAC<sup>6</sup> Guide (CG4): Quantifying Uncertainty in Analytical Measurement,  
461 Third Edition. Eurachem Secretariat. [www.eurachem.org](http://www.eurachem.org).
- 462 ISO (2015). ISO 9001:2015. Quality Management Systems – Requirements. International Organization  
463 for Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
- 464 ISO/IEC (~~2004a-2020~~). ISO/IEC 17000:2004-2020. Conformity Assessment – Vocabulary and General  
465 Principles. International Organization for Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
- 466 ISO/IEC (~~2004b-2017a~~). ISO/IEC 17011:2004-2017. Conformity Assessment – General Requirements  
467 for accreditation Bodies Accrediting Conformity Assessment Bodies. International Organization for  
468 Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
- 469 ISO/IEC (~~2005-2017b~~). ISO/IEC 17025:2005-2017. General Requirements for the Competence of  
470 Testing and Calibration Laboratories. International Organization for Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
- 471 ISO/IEC (2010). ISO/IEC 17043:2010. Conformity Assessment – General Requirements for Proficiency  
472 Testing. International Organization for Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org)
- 473 ISO/IEC (~~2022-2042~~). ISO/IEC 15189:2012-2022. Medical Laboratories – Requirements for Quality and  
474 Competence. International Organization for Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org)

<sup>5</sup> NCSL: The National Conference of Standards Laboratories.

<sup>6</sup> CITAC: The Cooperation of International Traceability in Analytical Chemistry.

475 Johnson P. & Cabuang L. (2021). Proficiency testing and ring trials. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, **40**,  
476 189–203.

477 Newberry K. & Colling A. (2021). Quality standards and guidelines for test validation for infectious  
478 diseases in veterinary laboratories. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, **40**, 227–237.

479 STEVENSON M., HALPIN K. & HEUER C. (2021). Emerging and endemic zoonotic diseases: surveillance  
480 and diagnostics. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, **40**, 119–129.

481 Waugh C. & Clark G. (2021). Factors affecting test reproducibility among laboratories. *Rev. Sci. Tech.*  
482 *Off. Int. Epiz.*, **40**, 131–141.

483  
484

\*  
\* \*

485 NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 1996 AS *GOOD LABORATORY PRACTICE, QUALITY CONTROL AND QUALITY ASSURANCE*.  
486 MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2017.

## Annexe 5. Chapter 1.1.9. 'Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended for veterinary use'

### CHAPTER 1.1.9.

## TESTS FOR STERILITY AND FREEDOM FROM CONTAMINATION OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIALS INTENDED FOR VETERINARY USE

---

### INTRODUCTION

The international trade-related movements of biological materials intended for veterinary use are subject to restrictions imposed to minimise the spread of animal and human pathogens. Countries may impose requirements for proof-of-freedom testing before allowing the regulated importation of materials of animal derivation and substances containing such derivatives. Where chemical or physical treatments are inappropriate or inefficient, or where evidence is lacking of the effectiveness of the treatment is lacking, there may be general or specific testing requirements imposed by authorities of countries receiving such materials. This chapter provides guidance on the approach to such regulated testing, particularly as might be applied to the movement of vaccine master seed and master cell stocks, and to related biological materials used in manufacturing processes. The term seed stocks is used when testing live products, for killed products the preferred reference is master cell stocks. While the onus for ensuring safety of a product remains with the manufacturer and may be regulated by therapeutic guidelines, this chapter provides procedures that are designed in particular to minimise the risk of undetected contaminants in veterinary therapeutics and biological reagents causing the cross-border spread of agents of concern to particular importing countries. In their review "Extraneous agent detection in vaccines" Farsang & Kulcsar, 2012 reported the following examples of contamination of vaccines with extraneous agents: a) Foamy virus (Spumaretroviridae) was identified as a contaminant of primary monkey kidney cultures used for vaccine production in the early 1950, b) In the 1960s it was shown that yellow fever live attenuated vaccines prepared in chicken embryo fibroblasts were infected with avian leukosis virus (ALV). c) Calicivirus was found in Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells, d) Newcastle disease vaccine strains were found in different live poultry vaccines, e) in 1990 a live attenuated multi component canine vaccine was contaminated with a serotype of Bluetongue virus causing abortions and death in pregnant bitches, f) Fetal calf serum transmitted Pestiviruses (BVDV types 1 and 2) are one of the most common extraneous agents in veterinary and human vaccines, g) RD114 is a replication-competent feline endogenous gamma retrovirus which contaminated canine corona and parvovirus vaccines, h) a notable case of human vaccine contamination may have been when in the 20th century tens of millions of people worldwide were immunised with polio vaccines containing simian virus 40 (SV40). SV40 was found to cause cancer in animals and is associated with human brain, bone and lung cancers, however, a clear connection was not found between this certain vaccine and any human tumour case, i) a porcine circovirus 1 (PCV1) was found in a rotavirus vaccine widely used worldwide for children. Farsang & Kulcsar (2012) and WHO (2015) describe case studies of veterinary and human vaccines contaminated

41 with extraneous agents and findings support the need of accurate and validated  
42 amplification and detection methods as key elements for effective detection and control.  
43 Further examples are given in Section G. Protocol examples below. Control of  
44 contamination with transmissible spongiform encephalopathy (TSE) agents is not covered  
45 in this chapter because standard testing and physical treatments cannot be used to ensure  
46 freedom from these agents. Detection methods are described in Chapter 3.4.5. Bovine  
47 spongiform encephalopathy.

48 Sterility is defined as the absence of viable microorganisms, which for the purpose of this  
49 chapter, includes viruses. It should be achieved using aseptic techniques and validated  
50 sterilisation methods, including heating, filtration, chemical treatments, and irradiation that  
51 fits the intended purpose. Freedom from contamination is defined as the absence of  
52 specified viable microorganisms. This may be achieved by selecting materials from sources  
53 shown to be free from specified microorganisms and by conducting subsequent procedures  
54 aseptically. Adequate assurance of sterility and freedom from contaminating  
55 microorganisms can only be achieved by proper control of the primary materials used and  
56 their subsequent processing. Tests on intermediate products are necessary throughout the  
57 production process to check that this control has been achieved.

58 Biological materials subject to contamination that cannot be sterilised before or during use  
59 in vaccine production, such as ingredients of animal origin, e.g. serum and trypsin, primary  
60 and continuous cells and cell lines, and viral or bacterial seed stocks, etc., should be tested  
61 for viable extraneous agents before use. Assays to detect viral contaminants, if present,  
62 can be achieved by various culture methods, including use of embryonated eggs, which  
63 are supported by cytopathic effects (CPE) detection/embryo death, fluorescent antibody  
64 techniques and other suitable (fit for purpose), methods such as polymerase chain reaction  
65 (PCR) and antigen detection ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay). As is  
66 explained in more detail in this chapter care must be taken when using PCR and ELISA  
67 techniques for detection as such tests do not distinguish viable from non-viable agent  
68 detection. Specific assays to detect other contaminants, such as fungi, protozoa and  
69 bacteria (including rickettsia and mycoplasma) are also described.

70 Avian materials and vaccines are required to be inoculated on to primary avian cell cultures  
71 or eggs for the detection of avian viruses. A combination of general tests, for example to  
72 detect haemadsorbing, haemagglutinating and CPE-causing viruses and specific  
73 procedures aimed at the growth and detection of specific viruses is recommended to  
74 increase the probability of detection. Assays to detect other contaminants, such as bacteria,  
75 fungi, protozoa, rickettsia and mycoplasma are also described.

76 ~~Procedures applied~~ Testing procedures should be validated and found to be “fit for  
77 purpose” following Chapter 1.1.6. Validation of diagnostic assays for infectious diseases of  
78 terrestrial animals, where possible.

79 It is a requirement of many regulators, that a laboratory testing report notes the use of  
80 validated procedures and describes the validated procedures in detail including acceptance  
81 criteria. This gives the regulator transparency in the procedures used in a testing laboratory.

82 The validation assessment of an amplification process in cell culture should include  
83 documentation of the history of permissive cell lines used, reference positive controls and  
84 culture media products used in the process of excluding adventitious agents, to ensure the  
85 process is sound and is not compromised. The validation assessment should give  
86 information (published or in-house) of the limitations that may affect test outcomes and an  
87 assessment of performance characteristics such as analytical specificity and sensitivity of  
88 each cell culture system, using well characterised, reference positive controls.

89 It is the responsibility of the submitter to ~~assure~~ ensure a representative selection and  
90 number of items to be tested. ~~The principles of~~ Appendix 1.1.2.1 Epidemiological  
91 approaches to sampling: sample size calculations of Chapter 1.1.2 Collection, submission  
92 and storage of diagnostic specimens apply describes the principles to be applied. Adequate

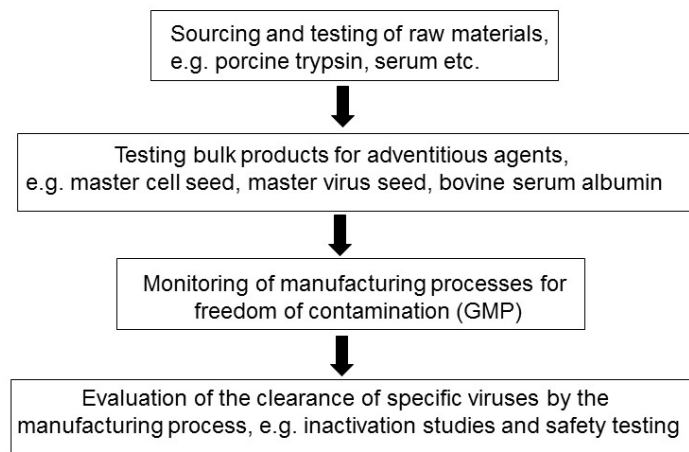
93 ~~transportation is described in Chapter 1.1.2 and Chapter 1.1.3~~ Transport of biological  
94 materials describe transportation requirements.

## 95 A. AN OVERVIEW OF TESTING APPROACHES

96 Although testing is seen as a key component of biosafety in biological products intended for veterinary use,  
97 testing is not enough to ensure a given product is free of viable infectious contaminants, and so a holistic,  
98 multifaceted approach must be taken. Such an approach includes risk assessment, risk mitigation and  
99 management strategies (Barone *et al.*, 2020). In general:

- 100 • Primary materials must be collected from sources shown to be free from contamination and handled in  
101 such a way as to minimise contamination and the opportunities for any contaminants to multiply (Figure  
102 1).
- 103 • Materials that are not sterilised and those that are to be processed further after sterilisation must be  
104 handled aseptically. Such materials will require further assessment of freedom of contaminants at certain  
105 stages of production to assure freedom of adventitious agents.
- 106 • Materials that can be sterilised without their biological activities being affected unduly must be sterilised  
107 by a method effective for the pathogens ~~concerned of concern~~. The method must reduce the level of  
108 contamination to be undetectable, as determined by an appropriate sterility test study. ~~(See Section D.1.~~  
109 ~~below)~~. If a sterilisation process is used, it shall be validated to demonstrate that it is fit for purpose.  
110 Suitable controls will be included in each sterilisation process to monitor efficiency.
- 111 • The environment in which any aseptic handling is carried out must be maintained in a clean state,  
112 protected from external sources of contamination, and controlled to prevent internal contamination. Rules  
113 governing aseptic preparation of vaccines are documented in Chapter 2.3.3 *Minimum requirements for*  
114 *the organisation and management of a vaccine manufacturing facility*.

115 **Figure 1. ~~Testing algorithm~~ Risk assessment flowchart for vaccine production.**



116  
117 Some procedures have been properly validated and found to be “fit for purpose”, whilst others may have  
118 undergone only limited validation studies. For example, methods for bacterial and fungal sterility may  
119 not been formally validated although they have been used for many years. In particular, ~~the~~ *in-vivo* and cell  
120 culture *in-vitro* methods have essentially unknown sensitivity and specificity (Sheets *et al.*, 2012) though  
121 there is an accepted theoretical sensitivity, regarding cell culture of 1 colony plaque-forming unit (CFU  
122 PFU). For example, an evaluation of methods to detect bovine and porcine viruses in serum and trypsin  
123 based on United States (of America) Code of Federal Regulations, Title 9 (9CFR) revealed gaps in  
124 sensitivity, even within virus families (Marcus-Secura *et al.*, 2011). It is therefore important to interpret, and  
125 report results in the light of specific conditions of cultures employed and considering sensitivity and  
126 specificity of detection systems.



127 Newer, more sensitive methods such as molecular assays may afford the ability to detect contaminants,  
128 which may not be successfully amplified in traditional culturing systems. The detection range can be  
129 broadened by using family specific primers and probes if designed appropriately. However, most, if not all  
130 ~~such new molecular-based~~ tests are also able to detect evidence for non-infectious contaminants, such as  
131 traces of nucleic acid from inactivated contaminants. ~~Follow-up testing would be required to determine the~~  
132 ~~nature of the contaminant, for example, non-infectious nucleic acid or infectious virus. Attempts at virus~~  
133 ~~isolation or sequencing may remedy this.~~ Note: molecular assays if not designed as fit for purpose may  
134 miss detection of contaminating agents or lack sensitivity to do so (Hodinka, 2013).

135 More recently metagenomic high throughput sequencing (HTS) workflows have shown potential for quality  
136 control of biological products (van Borm *et al.*, 2013) and vaccines (Baylis *et al.*, 2011; Farsang & Kulcsar,  
137 2012; Neverov & Chumakov, 2010; Onions & Kolman, 2010; Victoria *et al.*, 2010) in particular for the  
138 identification and characterisation of unexpected highly divergent pathogen variants (Miller *et al.*, 2010;  
139 Rosseel *et al.*, 2011) that may remain undetected using targeted diagnostic tests. Nevertheless, targeted  
140 assays, e.g. amplification in cell culture followed by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) may be superior to  
141 HTS for specific agent detection (Wang *et al.*, 2014) due to lack of sensitivity of HTS at this time. Chapter  
142 1.1.7. gives an overview of the standards for high throughput sequencing, bioinformatics and computational  
143 genomics. Similarly, recent improvements in protein and peptide separation efficiencies and highly accurate  
144 mass spectrometry have promoted the identification and quantification of proteins in a given sample. Most  
145 of these new technologies are broad screening tools, limited by the fact that they cannot distinguish  
146 between viable and non-viable organisms.

147 Given the availability of new technologies, there will be future opportunities and challenges to determine  
148 presence of extraneous agents in biologicals intended for veterinary use for industry and regulators.  
149 Problems can arise when the presence of genome positive results are interpreted as evidence for the  
150 presence of contamination (Mackay & Kriz, 2010). When using molecular technologies, it is important to  
151 understand the correlation between genome detection and detection of live virus agent. It cannot be  
152 assumed that detection of genome corresponds to the presence of an infectious agent.

## 153 **B. LIVING VIRAL VACCINES FOR ADMINISTRATION BY INJECTION, OR THROUGH** 154 **DRINKING WATER, SPRAY, OR SKIN SCARIFICATION**

- 155 1. Materials of animal origin ~~shall~~ should be ~~(a) sterilised, or (b) and~~ obtained from healthy animals that, in  
156 so far as is possible, should be shown to be free from pathogens that can be transmitted from the species  
157 of origin to the species to be vaccinated, or any species in contact with them by means of extraneous  
158 agents testing.
- 159 2. Seed lots of virus, any continuous cell line and biologicals used for virus growth ~~shall~~ should be shown to  
160 be free from ~~viable~~ bacteria, fungi, mycoplasmas, protozoa, rickettsia, and extraneous viruses ~~and other~~  
161 ~~pathogens~~ that can be transmitted from the species of origin to the species to be vaccinated or any species  
162 in contact with them. ~~There may be some exceptions for a limited number of non-pathogenic bacteria and~~  
163 ~~fungi to be present in live viral vaccines produced in eggs and administered through drinking water, spray,~~  
164 ~~or skin scarification.~~

165 For ~~the~~ production of vaccines in embryonated chicken eggs and the quality control procedures for these  
166 vaccines, it is recommended ~~(required in many countries)~~ that eggs from specific pathogen-free birds  
167 should be used.

- 168 3. Each batch of vaccine ~~shall~~ should pass tests for freedom from extraneous agents that are consistent  
169 with the importing country's requirements for accepting the vaccine for use. Some examples of published  
170 methods that document acceptable testing procedures/processes in various countries include: (US) Code  
171 of Federal Regulations (2015); European Pharmacopoeia (2014); European Commission (2006); World  
172 Health Organization (WHO) (1998; 2012) and Department of Agriculture (of Australia) (2013).
  - 173 • Code of Federal Regulations, Title 9 (9CFR) (of the United States of America) (2015).
  - 174 • Department of Agriculture, Forest and Fisheries (Australia) (2013).
  - 175 • Department of Agriculture, Forest and Fisheries (Australia) (2021b) Live Veterinary Vaccines.
  - 176 • Regulation on Veterinary Drug Administration (China [People's Republic of]) (2020).
  - 177 • European Medicines Agency Sciences Medicines Health (2016).

- 178 • European Pharmacopoeia, 10th Edition (2021).  
179 • World Health Organization (WHO) (1998; 2012).

180 4. Tests for ~~sterility~~ freedom of contamination shall ~~shall~~ be appropriate to prove that the vaccine is free  
181 from viable extraneous viruses, bacteria including rickettsia and mycoplasmas, fungi, and protozoa. Each  
182 country will have ~~particular~~ requirements as to what agents are ~~necessary to exclude~~ should be tested  
183 and ~~what by which~~ procedures are ~~acceptable~~. Such tests will include amplification of ~~viable~~ extraneous  
184 agents using cell culture that is susceptible to ~~particular~~ known viruses of the species of concern, tests in  
185 embryonated eggs, bacterial, mycoplasma and fungal culturing techniques and, where ~~necessary and~~  
186 ~~possible~~ there is no alternative ~~ie, tests involving~~ animal inoculation. PCR, fluorescence antibody test  
187 (FAT), presence of colonies or cytopathic effects (CPE) and antigen detection ELISA ~~will can~~ be used for  
188 detection purposes after amplification using culturing techniques to improve specificity and sensitivity. If  
189 *in-vitro* or *in-vivo* amplification of the target agent is not possible, direct PCR may be useful if validated  
190 for this purpose.

## 191 ~~C. LIVING VIRAL VACCINES FOR ADMINISTRATION THROUGH DRINKING WATER,~~ 192 ~~SPRAY, OR SKIN SCARIFICATION~~

193 ~~1. Section B applies.~~

194 ~~2. A limited number of contaminating, non-pathogenic bacteria and fungi may be permitted (see Section~~  
195 ~~1.2.2 General Procedure for testing live viral vaccines produced in eggs and administered through drinking~~  
196 ~~water, spray, or skin scarification for the presence of bacteria and fungi).~~

## 197 ~~D.C. INACTIVATED VIRAL AND BACTERIAL VACCINES~~

- 198 1. Each batch of vaccine shall pass a test for inactivation of the vaccinal ~~virus seed~~ and should include  
199 inactivation studies on representative extraneous agents if the virus or bacterial seed has not already  
200 been tested and shown to be free from extraneous agents. An example of a simple inactivation study  
201 could include assessment of the titre of live vaccine before and after inactivation and assessing the log<sub>10</sub>  
202 drop in titre during the inactivation process. This would give an indication of the efficacy of the inactivation  
203 process. There is evidence that ~~virus~~ titration tests may not have sufficient sensitivity to ensure complete  
204 inactivation. In these circumstances, a specific innocuity test would need to be developed and validated  
205 to be fit for increased sensitivity. To increase sensitivity more than one passage would be required  
206 depending on the virus or bacteria of concern. An example of this approach can be found at:  
207 [https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal\\_health/vet\\_biologics/publications/memo\\_800\\_117.pdf](https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/vet_biologics/publications/memo_800_117.pdf) (accessed 25  
208 July 2023).
- 209 2. If studies on representative extraneous agents are required, then spiking inactivated vaccine with live  
210 representative agents and following the example of an inactivation study ~~as in D.1 above would~~ could  
211 be useful. The inactivation process and the tests used to detect live ~~virus agent~~ after inactivation must be  
212 validated and shown to be suitable for their intended purpose.

213 In addition, each country may have ~~particular~~ its own requirements for sourcing or tests for sterility as  
214 detailed in Section B above.

## 215 ~~E. D. LIVING BACTERIAL VACCINES~~

216 1. See Section B applies.

217 2. Seed lots of bacteria shall be shown to be free from other bacteria as well as fungi and mycoplasmas,  
218 protozoa, rickettsia, and extraneous viruses. Agents required for exclusion will be dependent on the  
219 country accepting the vaccine for use. Use of antibiotics to 'inactivate' the living bacterial seed or vaccine  
220 prior to exclusion of viruses and fungi is recommended to ensure testing in culture is sensitive.



221 Interference testing is recommended to ensure that the antibiotics used do not affect the growth of the  
222 extraneous virus or fungi that is being excluded. Sonication may also be useful

223 Interference testing is required to ensure that antibiotics used (or sonication) does not affect the growth  
224 of extraneous virus or fungi being excluded, compromising the test outcome.

225 Due to the difficulties and reduced sensitivity in exclusion of extraneous bacteria and some mycoplasma,  
226 protozoa, and rickettsia from high-titred seed lots of bacteria, the use of narrow-range antibiotics aimed  
227 specifically at reducing seed lot bacteria is recommended useful if antibiotics do not affect the growth of  
228 bacteria being excluded. The optimal concentration of antibiotics can be determined in a dilution  
229 experiment such as documented in 9CFR Section 113.25(d). Other methods of exclusion of extraneous  
230 bacteria from bacterial seeds may include filtering for size exclusion such as removing bacteria seed to  
231 look for mycoplasma contamination and use of selective culturing media. Such processes would require  
232 validation-verification to ensure the process does not affect the sensitivity of exclusion of extraneous  
233 agents of concern.

234 3. Sonication of a living bacterial seed may be useful when excluding specific viral agents. Once again, the  
235 inactivation procedure would require a verification process to ensure the adventitious virus being excluded  
236 is not affected by the treatment. Use of a suitable reference virus control during the exclusion process  
237 would be required.

238 4. Direct PCR techniques may be useful when culturing processes fail to be sensitive-successful in detecting  
239 extraneous bacteria from live bacterial seeds or vaccines.

## 240 **F. INACTIVATED BACTERIAL VACCINES**

241 1. Section D applies. ~~It should not be necessary to test for extraneous viruses that would not grow in~~  
242 ~~bacteriological culture media as long as freedom from contamination of all starting materials can be~~  
243 ~~assured. Complete inactivation of the vaccinal bacteria should be demonstrated by means of titration and~~  
244 ~~innocuity tests — in some cases general bacterial sterility testing (Section I.2.1) may suffice.~~

## 245 **G-E. SERA, PLASMA AND DIAGNOSTIC AGENTS FOR ADMINISTRATION TO** 246 **ANIMALS**

247 1. Section B-4 applies for sera/diagnostic agents that are not inactivated. Section C applies for non-  
248 inactivated sera/diagnostic agents.

249 2. Some countries require quarantine, health certification, and tests for specific diseases to be completed  
250 for all serum and plasma donor animals, for example, 9CFR (2015) and Australian Quarantine Policy and  
251 Requirements for the Importation of Live and Novel Veterinary Bulk and Finished Vaccines (1999). For  
252 some diseases, for example equine infectious anaemia, the product (plasma) must be stored until the  
253 seroconversion period has been exceeded and the donors tested negative.

254 3. It is recommended that each batch of non-inactivated serum be assessed for viable extraneous agents,  
255 including mycoplasma. Each batch of serum shall pass a test for freedom from extraneous agents.  
256 Suitable test methods have been published for various countries, for example, European Pharmacopoeia  
257 (2014); 9 CFR (2015) and Australian Quarantine Policy and Requirements for the Importation of Live and  
258 Novel Veterinary Bulk and Finished Vaccines (1999) and Department of Agriculture (of Australia) (2013).

259 4. ~~Inactivated serum, Section D applies.~~

260 5. ~~Section B or D may apply if a virus is used in the production of the diagnostic agent; Section E or F may~~  
261 ~~apply if a bacterium is used.~~

## H. E. EMBRYOS, OVA, SEMEN

Special precautions must be taken with relation to the use of embryos, ova, semen (Hare, 1985). Most countries will have regulatory guidelines for import of these biologicals for veterinary use. Such guidelines can be found at various websites such as the European Commission (2015), FAO and Department of Agriculture Forest and Fisheries (2021a; 2021b), though many such some guidelines may give more detail in regard to the food safety aspect.

## J. G. PROTOCOL EXAMPLES

### 1. General procedures Introduction to protocol examples

This section provides some examples to illustrate scope and limitations of testing protocols. It is not intended to be prescriptive or exhaustive. Examples are based on standards and published methods to increase the sensitivity for exclusion of live adventitious agents, using general and specific techniques.

In principle, proposed testing represents an attempted isolation of viable agents in culturing systems normally considered supportive of the growth of each specified agent or group of general agents. After amplification, potential pathogens can be detected further, by sensitive and specific diagnostic tests such as FAT or PCR if as required. General detection systems can include haemabsorbance and CPE by immunohistochemistry staining methods. The example procedures for sterility detection of contamination testing and general detection of viable virus, fungi, protozoa and bacteria (including rickettsia and mycoplasma, fungi and viruses) described below are derived from standards such as the 9CFR (2015), European Pharmacopoeia, (2014) 10th Edition (2021), European Commission (2006), WHO Medicines Agency Sciences Medicines Health (2016), Department of Agriculture, Forest and Fisheries (Australia) (2013) and World Health Organization (1998; 2012).

Individual countries or regions should adopt a holistic, risk-based approach to determine the appropriate testing protocols based on their animal health status. As well as applying general testing procedures documented in national or regional standards as mentioned above, it may be necessary to apply rigorous exclusion testing for specific agents that are exotic to the particular country or region of concern.

General procedures will do not necessarily detect all extraneous agents that may be present in biological material; however, they are useful as screening tests. Some examples of agents that may require specific methods for detection in biologicals refer to Table 1 below. Procedures documented in the Review of Published Tests to Detect Pathogens in Veterinary Vaccines Intended for Importation into Australia (2013) available from the Department of Agriculture, Forest and Water Resources, Australia Fisheries are able to address such agents in offering sensitive testing approaches based on reputable publications. A CVMP reflection paper published written by the European Medicines Agency Sciences Medicines Health Committee of Veterinary Medicinal Products (CVMP) in (2016), adopted in May 2017, documents lists specific test method approaches for a number of agents, listed in Table 1, that cannot be excluded using general test procedures (Table 1).

Exclusion of specific agents requires procedures that maximise sensitivity by providing ideal amplification and detection of the pathogen in question. Extraneous agents, for example, Maedi Visna virus, bovine immunodeficiency virus, (and other retroviruses), *Trypanosoma evansi* and porcine respiratory coronavirus are difficult to culture even using the most sensitive approaches. In these circumstances, application of molecular assays directly to the biological material in question to assess, assessing for the presence of nucleic acid from adventitious agents offers an alternative. Refer to Table 1. Consideration must be noted as described in Section A.6 as, though detection of the presence of non-viable and host associated agents may is also be detected using this procedure possible.

Table 1 gives examples of causative infectious agents that may be present in animal biologicals intended for veterinary use, for example PCV-1 in a rotavirus vaccine (WHO, 2015). BVDV is well known for its presence in many bovine associated biologicals, including cell culture. More recently, non-CPE pestivirus, BVD type 3 (HoBi-like) are found in foetal calf serum and cell culture. Classical Swine fever has contaminated various porcine cell lines used for African swine fever and FMDV diagnosis, and thus the potential for contamination of porcine based vaccines. PEDV is linked to spray-dried porcine plasma used for feed. This is not an

310 exhaustive list of agents of concern or by any means required for exclusion by every country based on risk,  
 311 they are ~~just~~ examples of infectious agents that are not culturable using general culturing procedures and  
 312 require a ~~more~~ use of specialised culturing processes and specific detection ~~process by means of the indirect~~  
 313 ~~fluorescent antibody test, PCR or ELISA, where applicable~~ processes. Notably, some subtypes of an agent  
 314 type may be detectable by general methods, and some may require specialised testing for detection. For  
 315 example, bovine adenovirus subgroup 1 (serotypes 1, 2, 3 and 9) can be readily isolated using general  
 316 methods (Vero cells) however bovine adenovirus subgroup 2 (serotypes 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 10) are not readily  
 317 isolated and required specialised methods for isolation.

318 **Table 1.** ~~Some~~ Examples of infectious agents of veterinary importance  
 319 that require ~~specialist~~ specialised culturing and detection techniques

|                                      |  |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| Rotaviruses                          | Pestiviruses (non-CPE)                   | Turkey rhinotracheitis                |
| Porcine epidemic diarrhoea virus     | Bluetongue virus                         | <i>Brucella abortus</i>               |
| Porcine circoviruses (PCV 1, 2)      | Swine pox virus                          | Rickettsias                           |
| Swine/equine influenza, some strains | Some adenoviruses                        | Protozoa                              |
| Bovine respiratory syncytial virus   | <u>Rhabdoviruses (e.g. rabies virus)</u> | Some fungi (e.g. <i>Histoplasma</i> ) |

## 320 2. Example of detection of bacteria and fungi contamination

### 321 2.1. General procedure for assessing the sterility of viable bacteria and fungi

322 Standard tests for detecting extraneous bacteria and fungi (sterility testing) in raw materials, master  
 323 cell stocks, or final product are the membrane filtration test or the direct inoculation sterility test.

324 For the membrane filtration technique, a filter having a nominal pore size not greater than 0.45 µm  
 325 and a diameter of at least 47 mm should be used. Cellulose nitrate filters should be used if the  
 326 material is aqueous or oily; cellulose acetate filters should be used if the material is strongly alcoholic,  
 327 oily or oil-adjuvanted. Immediately before the contents of the container or containers to be tested are  
 328 filtered, the filter is moistened with 20–25 ml of Diluent A or B.

#### 329 2.1.1. Diluent A

330 Diluent A is for aqueous products or materials. Dissolve 1 g peptic digest of animal tissue in  
 331 water to make 1 litre, filter, or centrifuge to clarify, adjust the pH to 7.1 ± 0.2, dispense into  
 332 containers in 100 ml quantities, and sterilise by steam.

#### 333 2.1.2. Diluent B

334 Diluent B is for oil-adjuvanted products or materials: Add 1 ml polysorbate 80 to 1 litre Diluent  
 335 A, adjust the pH to 7.1 ± 0.2, dispense into containers in 100 ml quantities, and sterilise by  
 336 steam.

337 If the biological being tested has antimicrobial properties, the membrane is washed three times after  
 338 sample application with approximately 100 ml of the appropriate diluent (A or B). The membrane is  
 339 then transferred ~~whole~~ to culture media, aseptically cut into equal parts and placed in media, or the  
 340 media is transferred to the membrane in the filter apparatus. If the test sample contains merthiolate  
 341 as a preservative, fluid thioglycolate medium (FTM) is used and the membranes are incubated at  
 342 both 30–35°C and 20–25°C. If the test sample is a killed biological without merthiolate preservative,  
 343 FTM is used at 30–35°C and soybean casein digest medium (SCDM) at 20–25°C. If the sample  
 344 tested is a live viral biological, SCDM is used at both incubation temperatures. It has been suggested  
 345 that sulfite-polymyxin-sulfadiazine agar be used to enhance the detection of *Clostridium* spp. when  
 346 the membrane filtration technique is used (Tellez *et al.*, 2005).

347 If direct inoculation of culture media is chosen, a sterile pipette or syringe and needle are used to  
 348 aseptically transfer the biological material directly into liquid media. If the biological being tested has

349 antimicrobial properties, the ratio of the inoculum to the volume of culture medium must be  
 350 determined before the test is started, for example as explained in 9CFR 113.25(d) and detailed  
 351 testing procedures can be found for example in supplemental assay method USDA SAM 903  
 352 [https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal\\_health/vet\\_biologics/publications/sam903.pdf](https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/vet_biologics/publications/sam903.pdf) (accessed 24 July  
 353 2023) (SAM) 903 USDA SAM 903, See  
 354 [https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal\\_health/vet\\_biologics/publications](https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/vet_biologics/publications) (accessed 4 July 2022). To  
 355 determine the correct medium volume to negate antimicrobial activity, 100 CFU of the control  
 356 microorganisms listed in Table 2 are used. If the test sample contains merthiolate as a preservative,  
 357 FTM is used in test vessels incubated at both 30–35°C and 20–25°C. Growth should be clearly visible  
 358 after an appropriate incubation time (see Section 1.2.1.3 *Growth promotion and test interference*). If  
 359 the test sample is a killed biological without merthiolate, or a live bacterial biological, FTM is used at  
 360 30–35°C and SCDM at 20–25°C. If the test sample is a live viral biological, SCDM is used at both  
 361 incubation temperatures. If the inactivated bacterial vaccine is a clostridial biological, or contains a  
 362 clostridial component, the use of FTM with 0.5% added beef extract (FTMB) in place of FTM is  
 363 preferred. It may also be desirable to use both FTM and SCDM for all tests.

364 **Table 2. Some American Type Culture Collection<sup>1</sup> strains with their respective**  
 365 **medium and incubation conditions**

| Medium | Test microorganism                         | Incubation       |            |
|--------|--|------------------|------------|
|        |  | Temperature (°C) | Conditions |
| FTM    | <i>Bacillus subtilis</i> ATCC # 6633       | 30–35            | Aerobic    |
| FTM    | <i>Candida krusei</i> ATCC # 6258          | 20–25            | Aerobic    |
| SCDM   | <i>Bacillus subtilis</i> ATCC # 6633       | 30–35            | Aerobic    |
| SCDM   | <i>Candida krusei</i> ATCC # 6258          | 20–25            | Aerobic    |
| FTMB   | <i>Clostridium sporogenes</i> ATCC # 11437 | 30–35            | Anaerobic  |
| FTMB   | <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> ATCC #6538    | 30–35            | Aerobic    |

366 For both membrane filtration and direct inoculation sterility tests, all media are incubated for no fewer  
 367 than 14 days. At intervals during incubation, and after 14 days' incubation, the test vessels are  
 368 examined for evidence of microbial growth. Microbial growth should be confirmed by subculture and  
 369 Gram stain.

370 **2.1.3. Example of growth promotion and test interference**

371 The sterility of the media should be confirmed by incubating representative containers at the  
 372 appropriate temperature for the length of time specified for each test.

373 The ability of the culture media to support growth in the presence and absence of product,  
 374 product components, cells, seeds, or other test material should be validated for each product  
 375 to be tested, and for each new batch or lot of culture media for example as outlined in 9CFR  
 376 113.25(b). Detailed testing procedures can be found for example in USDA SAMs 900-902,  
 377 See USDA APHIS | Supplemental Assay Methods - 900 Series (accessed 22 July 2023)  
 378 [https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal\\_health/vet\\_biologics/publications](https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/vet_biologics/publications) (accessed 4 July 2022).

379 To test for ability to support growth in the absence of the test material, media should be  
 380 inoculated with 10–100 viable control organisms of the suggested ATCC strains listed in Table  
 381 2 and incubated according to the conditions specified.

382 To test for ability of the culture media to support growth in the presence of the test material,  
 383 containers should be inoculated simultaneously with both the test material and 10–100 viable  
 384 control organisms. The number of containers used should be at least one-half the number  
 385 used to test the product or product component. The test media are satisfactory if clear  
 386 evidence of growth of the control organisms appears in all inoculated media containers within  
 387 7 days. In the event that growth is evident, the organism should be identified to confirm that it

<sup>1</sup> American Type Culture Collection, 10801 University Boulevard, Manassas, Virginia 20110-2209, USA.

388 is the organism originally added to the medium. The sterility test is considered invalid if any of  
389 the media show inadequate growth response, or if the organism recovered, is not the organism  
390 used to inoculate the material.

391 If the material being tested renders the medium turbid so that the presence or absence of  
392 microbial growth cannot be readily determined by visual examination, 14 days after the  
393 beginning of incubation transfer portions (each not less than 1 ml) of the medium to fresh  
394 vessels of the same medium and then incubate the original and transfer vessels for not less  
395 than 4 days.

396 **2.2. General procedure for testing live viral vaccines produced in eggs and administered**  
397 **through drinking water, spray, or skin scarification for the presence of bacteria and fungi**

398 ~~Each batch of final container biological should have an average contamination of not more than one~~  
399 ~~bacterial or fungal colony per dose for veterinary vaccines. From each container sample, each of two~~  
400 ~~Petri dishes are inoculated with vaccine equal to ten doses if the vaccine is recommended for poultry,~~  
401 ~~or one dose if recommended for other animals. To each plate 20 ml of brain-heart infusion agar are~~  
402 ~~added containing 0.007 IU (International Units) of penicillinase per ml. One plate should be incubated~~  
403 ~~at 30–35°C for 7 days and the other at 20–25°C for 14 days. Colony counts are made at the end of~~  
404 ~~each incubation period. An average colony count of all the plates representing a batch should be~~  
405 ~~made for each incubation condition. If the average count at either incubation condition exceeds one~~  
406 ~~colony per dose in the initial test, one retest to rule out faulty technique may be conducted using~~  
407 ~~double the number of unopened final containers. If the average count at either incubation condition~~  
408 ~~of the final test for a batch exceeds one colony per dose, the batch of vaccine should be considered~~  
409 ~~unsatisfactory.~~

410 **2.32. Example of general procedure for testing seed lots of bacteria and live bacterial**  
411 **biologicals for purity**

412 Each seed lot of bacteria or batch of live bacterial biological should be tested for purity by inoculation  
413 of SCDM, which is incubated at 20–25°C for 14 days, and FTM, which is incubated at 30–35°C for  
414 14 days. Using good practices in sterile technique to avoid laboratory contamination, a sterile pipette  
415 or syringe and needle is used to aseptically transfer the quantity of biological directly into the two  
416 types of culture medium. The minimum ratio of inoculum to culture medium is 1/15. Both positive and  
417 negative controls are set up as well.

418 If the inoculum or growth of the bacterial vaccine renders the medium turbid so that the absence of  
419 atypical microbial growth cannot be determined by visual examination, subcultures should be made  
420 from all turbid tubes on day 3 through until day 11. Subculturing is done by transferring 0.1–1.0 ml to  
421 differential broths and agar and incubating for the balance of the 14-day period. Microscopic  
422 examination by Gram stain should also be done.

423 If no atypical growth is found in any of the test vessels when compared with a positive control included  
424 in the test, the lot of biological may be considered satisfactory for purity. If atypical growth is found  
425 but it can be demonstrated by a negative control that the media or technique were faulty, then the  
426 first test may-should be repeated. If atypical growth is found but there is no evidence invalidating the  
427 test, then a retest may-should be conducted. Twice the number of biological containers and test  
428 vessels of the first test are used in the retest. If no atypical growth is found in the retest, the biological  
429 could be considered to be satisfactory for purity but the results from both the initial and retest should  
430 be reported for assessment by the individual countries relevant regulatory agency if the laboratory is  
431 sure that the first test result was not due to in-laboratory contamination. If atypical growth is found in  
432 any of the retest vessels, the biological is considered to be unsatisfactory for purity. If, however, it  
433 can be demonstrated by controls that the media or technique of the retest were faulty, then the retest  
434 may-should be repeated.



435 **2.43. An Example of a specific test procedure for exclusion of *Brucella sp.* including**  
436 ***B. abortus* (where general testing is not sufficient) for detection of *Brucella abortus***

437 It should be confirmed that each batch of culture medium supports the growth of *B. abortus* by  
438 inoculating plates and flasks of biphasic medium with a known number of cells (around 100) of the  
439 fastidious *B. abortus* biovar 2. If the media supports the growth of this biotype it will support all other  
440 biovars.

441 Inoculate 1.0 ml of prepared master or working ~~viral~~ live agent or cell seed material (not containing  
442 antibiotics) by inoculating 50 µl of the test product into each of 10 flasks containing biphasic medium.  
443 At the same time 10 plates of serum dextrose agar (SDA) are inoculated with 50 µl of inoculum and  
444 spread with a sterile bent glass Pasteur pipette or hockey stick. An un-inoculated serum dextrose  
445 agar plate and a biphasic flask are also set up at the same time as negative controls.

446 For assessment of inhibitory substances 50 µl of previously prepared master or working viral or cell  
447 seed material and 10–100 CFU of *B. abortus* are inoculated on to duplicate SDA plates. Positive  
448 controls are prepared by inoculating 10–100 CFU of *B. abortus* on to duplicate SDA plates.

449 All plates and flasks are incubated at 37°C in a 5–10% CO<sub>2</sub> environment. Plates are incubated with  
450 the agar uppermost and flasks with the agar slope vertical. Flasks are incubated with the cap loose.

451 Plates are checked for growth of colonies at days 4 and 8 of incubation. The biphasic medium is  
452 examined every 4 to 7 days for 28 days. After each examination of the flasks, they are tilted so that  
453 the liquid phase runs over the solid phase, then righted and returned to the incubator.

454 During the incubation period, SDA plates with positive control and test material are visually compared  
455 with plates with the positive control only and if there is no inhibition of growth of the organism in the  
456 presence of the test material, the interference testing test is successful, and testing can be assured  
457 to be sensitive.

458 Any signs of growth of suspicious contaminating microorganisms on SDA plates, cloudiness or  
459 colonies in biphasic flasks require follow-up testing by PCR to confirm whether *B. abortus* is present.

460 **2.54. -An Example of a general procedure for detection of *Salmonella* contamination**

461 Each batch of ~~live virus~~ biological reagents made in eggs should be free from contamination with  
462 *Salmonella*. This testing must be done before bacteriostatic or bactericidal agents are added. Five  
463 samples of each batch should be tested; 5 ml or one-half of the container contents, whichever is the  
464 lesser, of the sample should be used to inoculate 100 ml of tryptose broth and tetrathionate broth.  
465 The inoculated broths should be incubated for 18–24 hours at 35–37°C. Transfers from these broths  
466 should be made on to MacConkey and *Salmonella-Shigella* agar, incubated for 18–24 hours, and  
467 examined. If no growth typical of *Salmonella* is noted, the agar plates should be incubated an  
468 additional 18–24 hours and again examined. If colonies typical of *Salmonella* are observed, further  
469 subculture on to suitable differential media should be made for positive identification. Sensitive PCR  
470 tests are available for the detection of *Salmonella* spp. in cultured material. If *Salmonella* is detected,  
471 the batch is determined to be unsatisfactory.

472 **3. Example of detection of *Mycoplasma* contamination**

473 **3.1. An example of a general-specific procedure for detection-exclusion of *Mycoplasma***  
474 ***mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* (where general testing is not sufficient)**

475 ~~Each batch of live viral vaccine, each lot of master seed virus (MSV), each lot of primary and master~~  
476 ~~cell stock (MCS), and all ingredients of animal origin not steam-sterilised should be tested for the~~  
477 ~~absence of mycoplasmas. Solid and liquid media that will support the growth of small numbers of~~  
478 ~~test organisms, such as typical contaminating organisms *Acholeplasma laidlawii*, *Mycoplasma*~~  
479 ~~*arginini*, *M. fermentans*, *M. hyorhinis*, *M. orale*, and *M. synoviae* should be used. The nutritive~~  
480 ~~properties of the solid medium should be such that no fewer than 100 CFU should occur with each~~  
481 ~~test organism when approximately 100–200 CFUs are inoculated per plate. An appropriate colour~~

482 change should occur in the liquid media when approximately 20–40 CFUs of each test organism are  
483 inoculated. The ability of the culture media to support growth in the presence of product should be  
484 validated for each product to be tested, and for each new batch or lot of culture media.

485 One sample of each lot of vaccine, e.g. MSV or MCS, should be tested. Four plates of solid medium  
486 are inoculated with 0.25 ml of the sample being tested, and 10 ml of the sample inoculated into 100  
487 ml of the liquid medium. An alternative is to inoculate each of the plates with 0.1 ml and to inoculate  
488 100 ml of liquid medium with 1 ml of the sample being tested. Two plates are incubated at 35–37°C  
489 aerobically (an atmosphere of air containing 5–10% CO<sub>2</sub> and adequate humidity) and two plates are  
490 incubated anaerobically (an atmosphere of nitrogen containing 5–10% CO<sub>2</sub> and adequate humidity)  
491 for 14 days. On day 3 or day 4 after inoculation, 0.25 ml from the liquid media are subcultured on to  
492 two plates of solid media. One plate is incubated aerobically and the second anaerobically at 35–  
493 37°C for 14 days. The subculture procedure is repeated on day 6, 7, or 8 and again on day 13 or 14.  
494 An alternative method is to subculture on days 3, 5, 10, and 14 on to a plate of solid medium. All the  
495 subculture plates are incubated for 10 days except for the 14-day subculture, which is incubated for  
496 14 days. Liquid media is observed every 2–3 days and, if any colour change occurs, has to be  
497 subcultured immediately.

### 498 **3.2. Interpretation of *Mycoplasma* test results**

499 At the end of the incubation period (total 28 days), examine all the inoculated solid media  
500 microscopically for the presence of mycoplasma colonies. The test sample passes the test if the  
501 growth of mycoplasma colonies has occurred on the positive controls, and if growth has not occurred  
502 on any of the solid media inoculated with the test material. If at any stage of the test, more than one  
503 plate is contaminated with bacteria or fungi, or is broken, the test is invalid and should be repeated.  
504 If mycoplasma colonies are found on any agar plate, a suitable confirmatory test on the colonies  
505 should be conducted, such as PCR. Some mycoplasmas cannot be cultivated, in which case the  
506 MSV and MCS have to be tested using an indicator cell line such as Vero cells, DNA staining, or  
507 PCR methods.

508 Further detailed procedures can be found in Veterinary Medicinal Products, VICH GL34:  
509 [http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en\\_GB/document\\_library/Scientific\\_guideline/2013/03/WC500140](http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Scientific_guideline/2013/03/WC500140352.pdf)  
510 [352.pdf](http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Scientific_guideline/2013/03/WC500140352.pdf)

511 Prior to beginning testing it is necessary to determine that each batch of media promotes the growth  
512 of *M. mycoides* subsp. *mycoides* SC (*MmmSC*) type strain PG1. General mycoplasma broth and  
513 agar are used but contain porcine serum as a supplement. Each batch of broth and agar is inoculated  
514 with 10–100 CFU of *MmmSC*. The solid medium is suitable if adequate growth of *MmmSC* is found  
515 after 3–7 days' incubation at 37°C in 5–10% CO<sub>2</sub>. The liquid medium is suitable if the growth on the  
516 agar plates subcultured from the broth is found by at least the first subculture. If reduced growth  
517 occurs another batch of media should be obtained and retested.

518 1 ml of cell or virus seed to be tested is inoculated into 9 ml of the liquid medium and 100 µl on to  
519 solid mycoplasma agar. The volume of the product is inoculated so that it is not more than 10% of  
520 the volume of the medium. The liquid medium is incubated at 37°C in 5–10% CO<sub>2</sub> and 100 µl of broth  
521 is subcultured on to agar at days 7, 14 and 21. The agar plates are incubated at 37°C in 5–10% CO<sub>2</sub>  
522 for no fewer than 14 days, except those corresponding to day 21 subculture, which are incubated for  
523 7 days. An un-inoculated mycoplasma broth and agar plate are incubated as negative controls. For  
524 assessment of inhibitory substances, inoculate 1 ml of sample to be tested into 9 ml of the liquid  
525 medium and 100 µl on to solid medium and add 10–100 CFU of *MmmSC* to each. Prepare positive  
526 control by inoculating 9 ml of mycoplasma broth and a mycoplasma agar plate with 10–100 CFU of  
527 *MmmSC*. Incubate as for samples and negative controls.

528 During incubation time, visually compare the broth of the positive control with sample present with  
529 the positive control broth and, if there is no inhibition of the organism either the product possesses  
530 no antimicrobial activity under the conditions of the test, or such activity has been satisfactorily  
531 eliminated by dilution. If no growth or reduced growth of *MmmSC* is seen in the liquid and solid  
532 medium with test sample when compared with the positive control, the product possesses

533 antimicrobial activity, and the test is not satisfactory. Modifications of the conditions to eliminate the  
534 antimicrobial activity and repeat test are required.

535 If antimicrobial activity is present it is necessary to dilute the test product further. Repeat the test  
536 above using 1.0 ml of sample in 39 ml of mycoplasma broth and then inoculate with 10–100 CFU of  
537 *MmmSC* and incubate as above. All broths and plates are examined for obvious evidence of growth.  
538 Evidence of growth can be determined by comparing the test culture with the negative control, the  
539 positive control, and the inhibition control.

540 If evidence of microbial growth is found in the test samples the contaminating bacterium will be  
541 identified and confirmed as *MmmSC* by specific PCR assay.

### 542 **3.2 General testing for exclusion of *Mycoplasma* sp.**

543 General testing for exclusion of *Mycoplasma* sp. that are less fastidious may require up to 28 days  
544 in culture, using general mycoplasma media. Some mycoplasmas cannot be cultivated, in which  
545 case the live biological sample will have to be tested using an indicator cell line such as Vero cells,  
546 DNA staining, or PCR methods.

547 Further detailed procedures can be found in Veterinary Medicinal Products, VICH GL34:  
548 [http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en\\_GB/document\\_library/Scientific\\_guideline/2013/03/WC500140](http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Scientific_guideline/2013/03/WC500140352.pdf)  
549 [352.pdf](https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/vich-gl34-biologicals-testing-detection-mycoplasma-contamination-scientific-guideline) [https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/vich-gl34-biologicals-testing-detection-mycoplasma-](https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/vich-gl34-biologicals-testing-detection-mycoplasma-contamination-scientific-guideline)  
550 [contamination-scientific-guideline](https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/vich-gl34-biologicals-testing-detection-mycoplasma-contamination-scientific-guideline)

551 and

552 USDA SAM 910: [https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal\\_health/vet\\_biologics/publications/910.pdf](https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/vet_biologics/publications/910.pdf),  
553 (both accessed 25 July 2023).

## 554 **4. Example of detection of rickettsia and protozoa**

555 There are no general test procedures for exclusion of rickettsia or protozoa. Procedures to exclude specific  
556 agents of concern such as *Coxiella burnetii* (Q fever), *Ehrlichia canis*, *Trypanosoma evansi* and *Babesia caballi*  
557 can be found for example, in the Review of Published Tests to detect pathogens in veterinary vaccines  
558 Intended for Importation into Australia ([Australian Government](#) Department of Agriculture [of Australia], Forest  
559 and Fisheries (2013)). The review is based on the reading and interpretation of applicable published papers  
560 from reputable journals and are regarded as examples of sensitive methods for detection of specified agents.

### 561 **4.1. An Example of a specific test protocol based on published methods for exclusion of *Babesia*** 562 ***caballi* and *Theileria equi***

563 *Babesia caballi* and *Theileria equi* can be cultured *in vitro* in 10% equine red blood cells (RBC) in  
564 supportive medium supplemented with 40% horse serum and in a micro-aerophilic environment.  
565 Culture isolation of *T. equi* is more sensitive than for *B. caballi*. Giemsa-stained blood smears are  
566 prepared from cultures daily for 7 days (Avarzed *et al.*, 1997; Ikadai *et al.*, 2001). *Babesia caballi* is  
567 characterised by paired merozoites connected at one end. *Theileria equi* is characterised by a tetrad  
568 formation of merozoites or 'Maltese cross'. Confirmation of the diagnosis is by PCR (see Chapter  
569 2.5.8 *Equine piroplasmosis*). Molecular diagnosis is recommended for the testing of biological  
570 products that do not contain whole blood or organs. Molecular diagnosis by PCR or loop-mediated  
571 isothermal amplification (LAMP) assay are the most sensitive and specific testing methods for  
572 detection of the pathogens of equine *piroplasmosis* (Alhassan *et al.*, 2007).

## 573 **5. Example of detection of virus viruses in biological materials**

574 In brief, general testing usually includes the use of continuous and primary cell lines of the source species,  
575 e.g. cells of known susceptibility to the likely viral contaminants, which are inoculated for usually  
576 up to 3–4 weeks with weekly subcultures. Virus seeds also require testing on a primary cell line of the species  
577 in which the final product is intended. At Day 21 or 28, assessment of the monolayers is done using H&E



578 appropriate histology staining procedures to assess CPE<sub>2</sub> and haemadsorption with guinea-pig and chicken  
579 RBC to assess the presence of haemadsorbing agents. Note that general testing is useful as a screening tool  
580 though not sufficiently sensitive enough to detect all viruses of concern to all countries.

581 Specific testing requires test material to be inoculated on to sensitive, susceptible cells lines for the virus to be  
582 excluded; the amplification process in cell culture is usually up to 28 days but depending of on the virus<sub>2</sub> may  
583 require longer culturing times. Detection of specific viral contaminants is by recognition of CPE in conjunction  
584 with more sensitive antigen detection or molecular tests such as FAT and PCR and ELISA after the  
585 amplification process in cell culture is completed.

586 All testing using cell lines to amplify for target viruses is contingent on the sensitivity of the cells for the target  
587 agent and the ability to recognise the presence of the agent in the cells. The quality, characteristics<sub>2</sub> and virus  
588 permissibility profile of cell lines in use should be determined as fit for purpose and appropriately maintained.  
589 ~~Positive and negative controls should be used at all passages of cell culture to determine sensitivity and~~  
590 ~~specificity. Interference testing should be performed at first pass to ensure that the test sample does not inhibit~~  
591 ~~the growth of the virus being excluded for.~~

#### 592 **5.1. An example of general testing for the exclusion of viruses from virus and cell seed stocks** 593 **used in production of veterinary vaccines**

594 ~~If the test virus inoculum is cytopathogenic. If a virus seed is known to cause cytopathic effect (CPE) in a~~  
595 ~~permissive cell line, the effect must be specifically neutralised without affecting the likelihood of isolation of the~~  
596 ~~target agent. For affected cell type, 1 ml of the test master (or working) virus seed (MVS) is thawed or~~  
597 ~~reconstituted and neutralised with the addition of 1 ml mono-specific antiserum. The serum must be shown to~~  
598 ~~be free from antibodies against any agents for which the test is intended to detect. Antiserum must should~~  
599 ~~be tested for nonspecific inhibiting affects. For a general test, this can be difficult to ascertain. Serum should be~~  
600 ~~of sufficiently high titre to neutralise the seed virus effectively with the use of an approximately equal volume~~  
601 ~~or less of serum. A microplate block titration is used useful to determine the titre amount of the antiserum~~  
602 ~~required to neutralise the MVS a known amount of concern. The antiserum CPE causing virus seed. This is~~  
603 ~~allowed to neutralise the MVS at 37°C for 1 hour. The MVS and antiserum mixture is then inoculated on to a~~  
604 ~~75 cm<sup>2</sup> flask with appropriate cells. If the MVS is known to be high-titred or difficult to neutralise, the blocking~~  
605 ~~antiserum can be added to the growth medium at a final concentration done in the normal conditions required~~  
606 ~~of 1–2% each test system (e.g. time, temperature, cell type etc.).~~

607 ~~Master cell-~~ If a virus seed is known to be high-titred or difficult to neutralise, antiserum can be added to the  
608 growth medium in a test system at a final concentration of 1–2%.

609 Cell seed stocks do not require a neutralisation process.

#### 610 **5.1. Example of general testing procedures for the exclusion of viruses from virus and cell seed** 611 **stocks used in production of veterinary vaccines**

##### 612 **5.1.1 Example of amplification in cell culture**

613 ~~The cells should be passaged weekly up to a 28-day period. Continuous and primary, 75 cm<sup>2</sup>~~  
614 ~~area monolayers of the source species (and intended species as applicable) are infected with~~  
615 ~~1 ml of seed stocks and passaged weekly for between up to 21–28-days. Depending on the~~  
616 ~~procedure followed, monolayers can be subcultured between passes or freeze/thawed to~~  
617 ~~disrupt cells. Negative and positive controls should be also set up at each pass using the same~~  
618 ~~cell population. Certain relevant viruses may be selected as indicators for sensitivity and~~  
619 ~~interference (positive controls) but these will not provide validation for the broader range of~~  
620 ~~agents targeted in general testing. The final culture is examined for cytopathology and~~  
621 ~~haemadsorption.~~

##### 622 **5.1.2 Example of general detection procedures: cytopathology**

623 ~~May–Grünwald–Giemsa or H&E staining procedures are used to assess for cytopathological~~  
624 ~~changes associated with virus growth. Monolayers must have a surface area of at least 6 cm<sup>2</sup>~~  
625 ~~and can be prepared on appropriate chambered tissue culture slides and incubated for 7 days.~~  
626 ~~The plastic wells of the slides are removed leaving the rubber gasket attached to the slide.~~

627 The slides are rinsed in Dulbecco's phosphate buffered saline (PBS), fixed in acetone,  
628 methanol or formalin depending on the stain used and placed on a staining rack. For May-  
629 Grünwald-Giemsa staining: the slides are stained for 15 minutes at room temperature with  
630 May-Grünwald stain diluted 1/5 with absolute methanol. The May-Grünwald stain is removed  
631 by inverting the slides. The slides are then stained for 20 minutes with Giemsa stain diluted  
632 1/15 in deionised water. The Giemsa stain is removed by inverting the slides and rinsing them  
633 in deionised water for 10-20 seconds. The slides are air-dried and mounted with a coverslip  
634 using paraffin oil. The May-Grünwald-Giemsa stain differentially stains ribonucleoprotein  
635 (RNP); DNA RNP stains red-purple, while RNA RNP stains blue. The monolayers are  
636 examined with a conventional microscope for the presence of inclusion bodies, an abnormal  
637 number of giant cells, or other cytopathology attributable to a viral contaminant of the test  
638 product. The inoculated monolayers are compared with suitable control non-inoculated  
639 monolayers. If specific cytopathology attributable to an extraneous virus is found, results are  
640 reported, and additional specific testing may be conducted.

### 641 **5.1.3 Example of general detection procedures: haemadsorption**

642 Testing for haemadsorption ~~uses~~ requires the use of 75 cm<sup>2</sup> area monolayers established in  
643 tissue culture flasks after the 28-day passage period described above. Guinea-pig, chicken,  
644 and any other blood for use in this assay is collected in an equal volume of Alsever's solution  
645 and may be stored at 4°C for up to 7 days. Immediately prior to use, the stored erythrocytes  
646 are again washed by adding 5 ml of blood in Alsever's solution to 45 ml of calcium and  
647 magnesium-free PBS (PBSA) and centrifuging in a 50 ml centrifuge tube at 500 **g** for 10  
648 minutes. The supernatant is aspirated, and the erythrocytes are suspended in PBSA and re-  
649 centrifuged. This washing procedure is repeated at least twice until the supernatant is clear.  
650 Erythrocytes from each species are combined by adding 0.1 ml of each type of packed blood  
651 cells to 100 ml of PBSA. The erythrocytes from different species may be kept separate or  
652 combined, as desired. To each flask, add 5 ml of the erythrocyte suspension, and incubate  
653 the flasks at 4°C for 30 minutes. Monolayers are washed twice with PBSA and examined for  
654 haemadsorption. If no haemadsorption is apparent, 5 ml of ~~the fresh~~ erythrocyte suspension  
655 is added to each flask; the flasks are incubated at 20-25°C (room temperature) for 30 minutes,  
656 rinsed as before, and examined for haemadsorption. Separate flasks may be used for each  
657 incubation temperature if desired. Monolayers are examined for the presence of  
658 haemadsorption using an illuminated light box and microscopically. Non-inoculated  
659 monolayers are used as negative controls. The PBSA and fresh erythrocytes should prevent  
660 most nonspecific haemadsorption from occurring. If specific haemadsorption attributable to an  
661 extraneous agent is found, results are reported, and additional specific testing may be  
662 conducted.

663 ~~Specific testing requires specialised test procedures that are sensitive to amplifying a particular agent~~  
664 ~~in culture and then detection of that agent by means of fluorescence, antigen capture ELISA or PCR;~~  
665 ~~whichever is more sensitive. Specific testing is usually required when general procedures are not~~  
666 ~~adequate for effective exclusion of more fastidious, viruses. Some examples are listed in Table 1.~~

## 667 **5.2. An-Examples of specific virus-agent exclusion testing from-of biologicals used in the** 668 **production of veterinary vaccines**

### 669 **5.2.1. Example of porcine epidemic diarrhoea virus (PEDV)**

670 Trypsin presence is required at inoculation and in the culture medium for isolation of porcine  
671 epidemic diarrhoea virus (PEDV) in Vero cells (CCL81, ATCC) to ensure the virus can enter  
672 host cells. Just confluent monolayers (100%) are required; as under confluent monolayers  
673 (<90%) are more sensitive to the presence of trypsin ~~and will be destroyed well before the 7~~  
674 ~~days required for each passage in culture~~. An over confluent or aging monolayer will not be  
675 sensitive for growth of PEDV. Maintenance media (MM) formulation consists of Earle's MEM  
676 (minimal essential medium) (with 5.6 M HEPES [N-2-hydroxyethylpiperazine, N-2-  
677 ethanesulphonic acid] and glutamine) + 0.3% Tryptose phosphate broth, 0.02% yeast extract  
678 and 4 µg/ml TPCK treated trypsin. The addition of the trypsin into ~~the~~ MM should occur on the  
679 day the media is to be used.

680 Prior to inoculation, confluent 75 cm<sup>2</sup> monolayers are washed twice with the MM (~~with trypsin~~  
681 ~~added~~) to remove growth media containing FCS. Virus or cell seed (1 ml) is added with 1 ml  
682 of MM to each monolayer; incubate at 37°C for 2 hours, then add 30 ml/flask of MM. Negative  
683 control monolayers of the same size are set up prior to inoculation of test material. Positive  
684 and interference controls are set up last, and where possible, in a separate laboratory area to  
685 avoid contamination. Assessment for sensitivity and interfering substances requires  
686 assessment use of PEDV reference virus of known titre. A control for interference using co-  
687 inoculation of test sample and PEDV needs only to be set up on the first pass. Positive controls  
688 must should be set up at every pass to ensure each monolayer used gives expected sensitivity.  
689 PEDV virus is titrated in log dilutions starting at 10<sup>-1</sup> to 10<sup>-6</sup> in MM (depending ~~of~~ on the  
690 endpoint titre of reference virus) in duplicate rows of 6 wells of a 24-well tissue culture plate.  
691 For the interference test, PEDV is titrated in the same dilution series but using MM spiked with  
692 a 10% volume of test material. Decant off the growth media and discard. Wash plates to ensure  
693 no FCS is present. Two washes using approximately 400 µl/well MM (with trypsin added) are  
694 sufficient.

695 Add 100 µl of diluted virus on to each of two duplicate wells. Rock inoculated plates to distribute  
696 the inoculum evenly over the surface of the monolayer. Incubate at 37°C with 5% CO<sub>2</sub> for  
697 2 hours then add a further 1 ml volumes/well of MM.

698 After 7 days, 75 cm<sup>2</sup> monolayers have cells disrupted using two freeze–thaw cycles at –80°C.  
699 Positive control plates are read for end-point titres, and these are compared with virus in the  
700 presence of test material to ensure titres are comparable and interference has not occurred.  
701 Freeze–thaw lysates are clarified at 2000 **g** for 5 minutes and re-passed on to newly formed  
702 monolayers as for the first passage. Passages are repeated until a total of four passages are  
703 completed at which point cell lysates are assessed by PCR for detection of PEDV and day 7  
704 monolayers in 24-well plates are fixed and stained by ~~IFA~~ for FAT. If a seed virus is to be  
705 tested and requires neutralisation using antiserum, extra care in the isolation of PEDV needs  
706 to be considered. Trypsin is rendered inactive in the presence of serum proteins and without  
707 trypsin present, PEDV is unable to grow in cell culture grows poorly, or not at all. Washing off  
708 the inoculum with two MM washes is required after an extended adsorption time of up to 4  
709 hours to ensure acceptable sensitivity.

## 710 **J.H. INFORMATION TO BE SUBMITTED WHEN**

### 711 **APPLYING FOR AN IMPORT LICENCE**

712 When undertaking risk analysis for biologicals, Veterinary Authorities should follow the Terrestrial Code  
713 Manual, and the manufacturer should follow the requirements of the importing country. Requirements for each  
714 importing country should be accessible and published online. The manufacturer or the Veterinary Authority of  
715 the exporting country should make available detailed information, in confidence if as necessary, on the source  
716 of the materials used in the manufacture of the product (e.g. substrates). They should make available details  
717 of the method of manufacture (and where appropriate inactivation) of the substrates and component materials,  
718 the quality assurance procedures for each step in the process, final product testing regimes, and the  
719 pharmacopoeia with which the product must conform in the country of origin. They should also make available  
720 challenge organisms, their biotypes and reference sera, and other means of appropriate product testing.

721 For detailed examples of a risk-based assessment of veterinary biologicals for import into a country refer to:

- 722 • European Commission (2015). The Rules Governing Medicinal Products in the European Union.  
723 Eudralex. Volume 6. Notice to applicants and regulatory guidelines for medicinal products for veterinary  
724 use.
- 725 • Department of Agriculture, Forest and Fisheries of Australia (2021b). Live veterinary vaccines Summary  
726 of information required for biosecurity risk assessment, Version 6 and Inactivated veterinary vaccines,  
727 Version 8.

728 • Outline of the Regulatory System of Veterinary Drugs in Japan (2015) Assurance of the Quality, Efficacy,  
729 and Safety Based on the Law for Ensuring the Quality, Efficacy, and Safety of Drugs and Medical Devices.

730 • Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Affairs, China (People's Rep. of), Regulations on the Administration of  
731 Veterinary drugs (revised in 2020).

732 When applying for an import licence other regulatory requirements may need to be addressed depending on  
733 the type of sample and if the sample needs to be shipped out of country to a testing laboratory. For example,  
734 cell seeds may come under certain requirements for permits such as the Convention for International Trade in  
735 Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES), where a cell line is derived from an endangered  
736 species, e.g. the cell line and its derivatives. Applying for such a permit is time consuming and requires input  
737 from both the exporting and importing country.

738 Genetically modified organisms (GMOs) are becoming more frequent in use with changes in manufacturing  
739 technologies and specialised, time-consuming procedures need to be in place. A laboratory that accepts a  
740 GMO product for testing shall follow the procedures of the Office of the Gene Regulator (OGTR) to allow the  
741 GMO to be dealt with.

## 742 I. RISK ANALYSIS PROCESS

743 Risk analysis should be as objective and transparent as possible and should be performed in accordance with  
744 Section 2 of the *Terrestrial Code*, and certification in line with Section 5 of the *Terrestrial Code*. Of necessity,  
745 assessment of the country and commodity factors and risk reduction measures will be based largely on  
746 manufacturers' data. These data depend on quality assurance at all stages of manufacture, rather than on  
747 testing of the final product alone.

748 Domestic exposure may be influenced by the approved usage of the product. Veterinary Authorities may place  
749 limits on usage of some products (e.g. restricting usage to institutions of appropriate biosecurity).

## 750 I.J. BIOCONTAINMENT

751 Suitable biocontainment may be necessary for many forms of biologicals. In particular, the importation of exotic  
752 micro-organisms should be carried out in accordance with Chapter 1.1.4 *Biosafety and biosecurity: standard*  
753 *for managing biological risk in the veterinary laboratory and animal facilities*.

754 Laboratories using high risk agents should have well researched and documented risk assessments in place  
755 prior to working with such agents to ensure the safety of their staff and laboratory.

## 756 REFERENCES

757 ALHASSAN A., GOVIND Y., TAM N.T., THEKISOE O.M., YOKOYAMA N., INOUE N. & IGARASHI I. (2007). Comparative  
758 evaluation of the sensitivity of LAMP, PCR and *in vitro* culture methods for the diagnosis of equine piro-  
759 plasmosis. *Parasitol. Res.*, **100**, 1165–1168.

760 AUSTRALIAN QUARANTINE POLICY AND REQUIREMENTS FOR THE IMPORTATION OF LIVE AND NOVEL VETERINARY BULK  
761 AND FINISHED VACCINES (1999). Available online at:  
762 [https://www.agriculture.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/ba/memos/1999/animal/99-](https://www.agriculture.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/ba/memos/1999/animal/99-085acleaned.pdf)  
763 [085acleaned.pdf](https://www.agriculture.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/ba/memos/1999/animal/99-085acleaned.pdf) (Accessed 25 July 2023).

764 AVARZED A., IGARASHI I., KANEMARU T., HIRUMI, K., OMATA T., SAITO Y., OYAMADA A., NAGASAWA H., TOYODA Y. &  
765 SUZUKI N. (1997). Improved *in vitro* cultivation of *Babesia caballi*. *J. Vet. Med. Sci.*, **59**, 479–481.

766 BARONE P., WIEBE M.E., LEUNG J.C., HUSSEIN I.T.M., KEUMURIAN F.J., BOURESSA J., BRUSSEL A., CHEN D.,  
767 CHONG M., DEHGHANI H., GERENTES L., GILBERT J., GOLD D., KISS R., KREIL T.R., LABATUT R., LI Y., MÜLLBERG  
768 J., MALLET L., MENZEL C., MOODY M., MONPOEHO S., MURPHY M., PLAVSIC M., ROTH N.J., ROUSH D., RUFFING

- 769 M., SCHICHO R., SNYDER R., STARK D., ZHANG C., WOLFRUM J., SINSKEY A.J. & SPRINGS S.L. (2020). Viral  
770 contamination in biologic manufacture and implications for emerging therapies. *Nat. Biotechnol.*, **38**, 563–572.
- 771 BAYLIS S.A., FINSTERBUSCH T., BANNERT N., BLUMEL J. & MANKERTZ A. (2011). Analysis of porcine circovirus  
772 type 1 detected in Rotarix vaccine. *Vaccine*, **29**, 690–697.
- 773 CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS (OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA) (CFR) (2015). Subchapter E. Viruses,  
774 serums, toxins and analogous products; organisms and vectors. *In*: Code of Federal Regulations, Animals and  
775 Animal Products. Title 9, Parts 101–124. US Government Printing Office, Washington DC, USA. Available  
776 online; <https://www.law.cornell.edu/cfr/text/9/part-113> (Accessed 25 July 2023).
- 777 DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, WATER AND ENVIRONMENT (OF AUSTRALIA) (2013). Review of Published Tests to  
778 Detect Pathogens in Veterinary Vaccines Intended for Importation into Australia, Second Edition. CC BY 3.0.  
779 Available online at:  
780 [https://www.agriculture.gov.au/biosecurity-trade/policy/risk-analysis/animal/review-of-published-tests-to-](https://www.agriculture.gov.au/biosecurity-trade/policy/risk-analysis/animal/review-of-published-tests-to-detect-pathogens)  
781 [detect-pathogens](https://www.agriculture.gov.au/biosecurity-trade/policy/risk-analysis/animal/review-of-published-tests-to-detect-pathogens) (Accessed 25 July 2023).
- 782 DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, WATER AND ENVIRONMENT (OF AUSTRALIA) (2021a). [Inactivated veterinary](https://www.agriculture.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-vaccines/inact-vet-vacs.pdf)  
783 [vaccines Summary of information required for biosecurity risk assessment. Version 8. Available online at:](https://www.agriculture.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-vaccines/inact-vet-vacs.pdf)  
784 [https://www.agriculture.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-](https://www.agriculture.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-vaccines/inact-vet-vacs.pdf)  
785 [vaccines/inact-vet-vacs.pdf](https://www.agriculture.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-vaccines/inact-vet-vacs.pdf) (Accessed 25 July 2023).
- 786 DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, WATER AND ENVIRONMENT (OF AUSTRALIA) (2021b). [Live veterinary vaccines.](https://www.awe.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-vaccines/live-vet-vaccines.doc)  
787 [Summary of information required for biosecurity risk assessment. Version 6. Available online at:](https://www.awe.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-vaccines/live-vet-vaccines.doc)  
788 [https://www.awe.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-](https://www.awe.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-vaccines/live-vet-vaccines.doc)  
789 [vaccines/live-vet-vaccines.doc](https://www.awe.gov.au/sites/default/files/sitecollectiondocuments/aqis/importing/bio-products/vet-vaccines/live-vet-vaccines.doc) (Accessed 25 July 2023).
- 790 EUROPEAN COMMISSION (2006–2015). The Rules Governing Medicinal Products in the European Union.  
791 Eudralex. Volumes 4–9. European Commission, DG Health and Food Safety, Public health, EU  
792 Pharmaceutical information, Eudralex. Available online at:  
793 [http://ec.europa.eu/health/documents/eudralex/index\\_en.htm](http://ec.europa.eu/health/documents/eudralex/index_en.htm) (accessed 25 July 2023).
- 794 EUROPEAN MEDICINES AGENCY SCIENCES MEDICINES HEALTH (2016). [EMA/CVMP/IWP/251741/2015. Reflection](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/95422?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch-edqm%3Fq%3DEMA%252FCVMP%252FIWP%252F251741%252F2015%26delta%3D40%26category%3D302281)  
795 [paper on methods found suitable within the EU for demonstrating freedom from extraneous agents of the](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/95422?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch-edqm%3Fq%3DEMA%252FCVMP%252FIWP%252F251741%252F2015%26delta%3D40%26category%3D302281)  
796 [seeds used for the production of immunological veterinary medicinal products. Available online at:](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/95422?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch-edqm%3Fq%3DEMA%252FCVMP%252FIWP%252F251741%252F2015%26delta%3D40%26category%3D302281)  
797 [https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/95422?p\\_l\\_back\\_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch-](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/95422?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch-edqm%3Fq%3DEMA%252FCVMP%252FIWP%252F251741%252F2015%26delta%3D40%26category%3D302281)  
798 [edqm%3Fq%3DEMA%252FCVMP%252FIWP%252F251741%252F2015%26delta%3D40%26category%3D](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/95422?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch-edqm%3Fq%3DEMA%252FCVMP%252FIWP%252F251741%252F2015%26delta%3D40%26category%3D302281)  
799 [302281](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/95422?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch-edqm%3Fq%3DEMA%252FCVMP%252FIWP%252F251741%252F2015%26delta%3D40%26category%3D302281) (Accessed 25 July 2023).
- 800 EUROPEAN PHARMAPOEIA ~~8.2. (2014)–(2021–2023)~~. European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and  
801 Health Care (EDQM), Council of Europe, Strasbourg, France. ~~Available online at <http://online.edqm.eu/>~~  
802 ~~(accessed 8 March 2017)~~ Current version available online at European Pharmacopoeia (Ph. Eur.) 10th Edition  
803 –European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines & HealthCare (edqm.eu) (accessed 4 July 2022) Current  
804 version available online at European Pharmacopoeia (Ph. Eur.) 11th Edition – European Directorate for the  
805 Quality of Medicines & HealthCare (edqm.eu) (accessed 25 July 2023).
- 806 FARSANG A. & KULCSAR G. (2012). Extraneous agent detection in vaccines – a review of technical aspects.  
807 *Biologicals*, **40**, 225–230.
- 808 HARE W.C.D. (1985). Diseases Transmissible by Semen and Embryo Transfer Techniques. OIE Technical  
809 Series No. 4. World Organisation for Animal Health (OIE), Paris, France.
- 810 HODINKA R.L. (2013). Point: is the era of viral culture over in the clinical microbiology laboratory? *J. Clin.*  
811 *Microbiol.*, **51**, 2–4.
- 812 IKADAI H., MARTIN M.D., NAGASAWA H., FUJISAKI K., SUZUKI N., MIKAMI T., KUDO N., OYAMADA T. & IGARASHI I.  
813 (2001). Analysis of a growth-promoting factor for *Babesia caballi* cultivation. *J. Parasitol.*, **87**, 1484–1486.



814 MARCUS-SECURA C., RICHARDSON J.C., HARSTON R.K., SANE N. & SHEETS R.L. (2011). Evaluation of the human  
815 host range of bovine and porcine viruses that may contaminate bovine serum and porcine trypsin used in the  
816 manufacture of biological products. *Biologicals*, **39**, 359–369.

817 MACKAY D. & KRIZ N. (2010). Current challenges in viral safety and extraneous agents testing. *Biologicals*, **38**,  
818 335–337.

819 MILLER P.J., AFONSO C.L., SPACKMAN E., SCOTT M.A., PEDERSEN J.C., SENNE D.A., BROWN J.D., FULLER C.M.,  
820 UHART M.M., KARESH W.B., BROWN I.H., ALEXANDER D.J. & SWAYNE D. (2010). Evidence for a new avian  
821 paramyxovirus serotype 10 detected in rockhopper penguins from the Falkland Islands. *J. Virol.*, **84**, 11496–  
822 11504.

823 NEVEROV A. & CHUMAKOV K. (2010). Massively parallel sequencing for monitoring genetic consistency and  
824 quality control of live viral vaccines. *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA*, **107**, 20063–20068.

825 ONIONS D. & KOLMAN J. (2010). Massively parallel sequencing, a new method for detecting adventitious agents.  
826 *Biologicals*, **38**, 377–380.

827 OUTLINE OF THE REGULATORY SYSTEM OF VETERINARY DRUGS IN JAPAN (2015). Assurance of the Quality,  
828 Efficacy, and Safety Based on the Law for Ensuring the Quality, Efficacy, and Safety of Drugs and Medical  
829 Devices. [https://www.maff.go.jp/nval/english/regulatory/pdf/Outline\\_RegulatorySystem\\_VMPs.pdf](https://www.maff.go.jp/nval/english/regulatory/pdf/Outline_RegulatorySystem_VMPs.pdf) (Accessed  
830 25 July 2023).

831 ROSSEEL T., LAMBRECHT B., VANDENBUSSCHE F., VAN DEN BERG T. & VAN BORM S. (2011). Identification and  
832 complete genome sequencing of paramyxoviruses in mallard ducks (*Anas platyrhynchos*) using random  
833 access amplification and next generation sequencing technologies. *Virol. J.*, **8**, 463.

834 SHEETS R., LOEWER, J., RAYDCHAUDHURI G. & PETRICCIANI J. (2012). Adventitious agents, new technology, and  
835 risk assessment, 19–20 May 2011, Baltimore, MD. *Biologicals*, **40**, 162–167.

836 TELLEZ S., CASIMIRO R., VELA A.I., FERNANDEZ-GARAYZABAL J.F., EZQUERRA R., LATRE M.V., BRIONES V.,  
837 GOYACHE J., BULLIDO R., ARBOIX M. & DOMINGUEZ L. (2005). Unexpected inefficiency of the European  
838 pharmacopoeia sterility test for detecting contamination in clostridial vaccines. *Vaccine*, **24**, 1710–1715.

839 VAN BORM S., ROSSEEL T., STEENSELS M., VAN DEN BERG T. & LAMBRECHT B. (2013). What's in a strain? Viral  
840 metagenomics identifies genetic variation and contaminating circoviruses in laboratory isolates of pigeon  
841 paramyxovirus type 1. *Virus Res*, **171**, 186–193.

842 VICTORIA J.G., WANG C., JONES M.S., JAING C., MCLOUGHLIN K., GARDNER S. & DELWART E.L. (2010). Viral  
843 nucleic acids in live-attenuated vaccines: detection of minority variants and an adventitious virus. *J. Virol.*, **84**,  
844 6033–6040.

845 WANG J., LUNT R., MEEHAN B. & COLLING A. (2014). Evaluation of the potential role of next-generation  
846 sequencing (NGS) in innocuity testing. Technical Report CSIRO, Australian Animal Health Laboratory.

847 WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION (WHO) (1998). WHO Expert Committee on Biological Standardization. World  
848 Health Organization Technical Report Series, Report No. 858. World Health Organization, Geneva,  
849 Switzerland.

850 WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION (WHO) (2012). WHO Expert Committee on Biological Standardization. World  
851 Health Organization Technical Report Series, Report No. 964. World Health Organization, Geneva,  
852 Switzerland. Available online at:  
853 [https://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/89142/9789241209779\\_eng.pdf](https://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/89142/9789241209779_eng.pdf) (Accessed 25 July 2023).

854 World Health Organisation (WHO) (2015) Expert Committee on Biological Standardization Sixty-fifth report,  
855 Technical report series 993, 2015. Annex 2 Scientific principles for regulatory risk evaluation on finding an  
856 adventitious agent in a marketed vaccine. Available online at: [https://cdn.who.int/media/docs/default-](https://cdn.who.int/media/docs/default-source/biologicals/cell-)  
857 [source/biologicals/cell-](https://cdn.who.int/media/docs/default-source/biologicals/cell-)



858 [substrates/annex2\\_adventious\\_agent\\_in\\_marketed\\_vaccine\\_eng.pdf?sfvrsn=e5de04a\\_3&download=true](#)  
859 [\(Accessed25 July 2023\)](#)

860

### FURTHER READING

861 Details of methods and culture media ~~will~~can be found in the following books and also in commercial  
862 catalogues.

863 BARROW G.I. & Feltham R.K.A., eds. (1993). Cowan and Steel's Manual for the Identification of Medical  
864 Bacteria, Third Edition. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

865 COLLINS C.H., LYNE P.M. & GRANGE J.M., eds. (1995). Collins and Lyne's Microbiological Methods, Seventh  
866 Edition. Butterworth Heinemann, Oxford, UK.

867 MURRAY P.R., ED. (2003). Manual of Clinical Microbiology, Eighth Edition. American Society for Microbiology  
868 Press, Washington DC, USA.

869

\*

870

\* \*

871

**NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 1989. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2017.

## Annexe 6. Chapter 2.2.4. 'Measurement uncertainty'

### CHAPTER 2.2.4.

## MEASUREMENT UNCERTAINTY

---

### INTRODUCTION

The WOAH Validation Recommendations provide detailed information and examples in support of the ~~WOAH Validation Standard that is published as Chapter 1.1.6 Principles and methods of Validation of diagnostic assays for infectious diseases of terrestrial animals this Terrestrial Manual, or Chapter 1.1.2 of the Aquatic Manual. The Term "WOAH Validation Standard" in this chapter should be taken as referring to those chapters.~~

Estimation of measurement uncertainty (MU), ~~sometimes termed measurement imprecision,~~ is a requirement for testing laboratories based on international quality standards such as ISO/IEC 17025-2005, ~~2017~~ General requirements for the competence of testing and calibration laboratories (ISO/IEC 17025). The measurement process for detection of an analyte in a diagnostic sample is not entirely reproducible and hence there is no exact value that can be associated with the measured analyte. Therefore, the result is most accurately expressed as an estimate ~~together~~ with an associated level of imprecision level. This imprecision is the measurement uncertainty (MU). MU is limited to the measurement process of quantitative tests. The approach described here is known as "top-down" or "control sample" because it uses a weak positive control sample and expresses the MU result at the cut-off diagnostic threshold, where it most matters. It is not a question of whether the measurement is appropriate and fit for whatever use to which it may be applied. It is not an alternative to test validation but is rightly considered a component of that process (see ~~the WOAH Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6 Section B.1.1 Repeatability~~).

### A. THE NECESSITY OF DETERMINING MU

To assure compliance with ISO/IEC 17025-2005 ~~2017~~ requirements, national accreditation bodies for diagnostic testing laboratories require laboratories to calculate MU estimates for accredited test methods that produce quantitative results, e.g. optical densities (OD), percentage of positivity or inhibition (PP, PI), titres, cycle threshold (CT) values, etc. This includes tests where numeric results are calculated and then ~~are~~ expressed as a positive or negative result at a cut-off value. For the purpose of estimating MU in serology and reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), suitable statistical measures are mean target values  $\pm 2$  standard deviations (SD), which is an approximately equal to a 95% confidence reference interval (C-RI), relative standard deviation (RSD = SD / mean of replicates) and coefficient of variation (CV = RSD  $\times$  100%). Examples provided below assume normal distribution of data. Alternative methods are available that are less sensitive to both that assumption and to the presence of outliers; they are not illustrated here The concept of MU does not apply to strictly binary (qualitative) results (positive or negative).

35 **1. Samples for use in determining MU**

36 Repeatability is the level of agreement between results of replicates of a sample both within and between runs  
37 of the same test method in a given laboratory. During assay development, repeatability is estimated by  
38 evaluating variation in results of independent replicates from a minimum of three (preferably five) samples  
39 representing analyte activity within the operating range of the assay (see ~~the WOAHS Validation Standard,~~  
40 Chapter 1.1.6 Validation of diagnostic assays for infectious diseases of terrestrial animals, Sections A.2.5  
41 Robustness and B.1.1 Repeatability, and Chapter 2.2.6 Selection and use of reference samples and panels,  
42 Section ~~3.1~~ A.4.2). Typically, the variation in replicate results is expressed as RSD or CV. The significant  
43 feature is that repeatability studies can be used to define the expected precision of the assay in the detection  
44 of a range of analyte concentrations.

45 The use of internal quality or process controls over a range of expected results has become part of daily quality  
46 control and quality assurance operations of accredited facilities (see ~~the WOAHS Validation Standard, chapter~~  
47 1.1.6, Sections A.2.6 Calibration of the assay to standard reagents and B.5.1 Monitoring the assay, and  
48 Chapter 2.2.6, Section ~~4.4~~ C.1). These results provide a continuous monitor relative to different aspects of  
49 repeatability, e.g. intra- and inter-assay variation, intra- and inter-operator variation and intra- and inter-batch  
50 variation, which, when subjected to statistical analysis, provide an expression of the level of robustness  
51 (precision) of a test procedure. The monitoring of assay quality control parameters for repeatability provides  
52 evidence that the assay is or is not performing as expected. For control samples to provide valid inferences  
53 about assay precision, they should be treated in exactly the same way as test samples in each run of the  
54 assay, e.g. including sample preparation such as extraction steps or dilution of serum samples for an antibody  
55 enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA).

56 The variation of the results for control samples can also be used as an estimate of those combined sources of  
57 uncertainty and is called the “top-down” approach. This approach recognises that the components of precision  
58 will be manifest in the ultimate measurement. So monitoring the precision of the measurement over time will  
59 effectively show the combined effects of the imprecision associated with component steps.

60 The imprecision or uncertainty of the measurement process associated with a test result becomes increasingly  
61 more important the closer the test value is to the diagnostic cut-off value. This is because an interpretation is  
62 made relative to the assay threshold regarding the status of the test result as positive, negative, or inconclusive  
63 (as will be described in the following example). In this context, ~~low-weak~~ positive samples, like those used in  
64 repeatability studies or as the ~~low-weak~~ positive control, are most appropriate for estimation of MU. The  
65 rationale being that MU, which is a function of assay precision, is most critical at decision-making points (i.e.  
66 thresholds or cut-offs), which are usually near the lower limit of detection for the assay. In this chapter, the  
67 application of MU with respect to cut-off (threshold) values, whether recommended by test-kit manufacturers  
68 or determined in the diagnostic laboratory, is described.

69 MU, using the top-down approach, ideally requires long-term accumulated data from a weak positive control  
70 sample after multiple test runs over time, with multiple operators and variable conditions. The examples given  
71 below are based on 10 data points but higher numbers will increase robustness.

72 **2. Example of MU calculations in ELISA serology**

73 For most antibody detection tests, it is important to remember that the majority of tests are measurements of  
74 antibody activity relative to a threshold against which a dichotomous interpretation of positive or negative is  
75 applied. This is important because it helps to decide where application of MU is appropriate. In serology,  
76 uncertainty is frequently most relevant at the threshold between positive and negative determinations. Results  
77 falling into this zone are also described as intermediate, inconclusive, suspicious or equivocal (see ~~the WOAHS~~  
78 Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6, Section B.2.4 Selection of a cut-off (threshold) value for classification of  
79 test results).

80 A limited data set from a competitive ELISA for antibody to avian influenza virus is used as an example of a  
 81 “top-down” approach for serology. A low-weak positive control sample was used to calculate MU at the cut-off  
 82 level<sup>1</sup>.

83 **2.1. Method of expression of MU**

84 As the uncertainty is to be estimated at the threshold, which is not necessarily the reaction level of  
 85 the low-weak positive control serum, the relative standard deviation (RSD), or coefficient of variation  
 86 (CV), if expressed as a percentage, provides a convenient transformation:

$$RSD (X) = SD (X) / \text{mean} (\bar{X})$$

87 X represents the set of replicates

88 To simplify assessment, the a suitably transformed result (such as sample-to-positive ratio, per cent  
 89 inhibition, or background-corrected optical density) is regarded as the assay output result, which is  
 90 then averaged across the number of replicates ( $\bar{X}$ ). In the case of this example, a competitive ELISA,  
 91 results are “normalised” (as defined in the WOA Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6, Section A.2.7  
 92 ‘Normalising’ test results to a working standard) to a working standard by forming a ratio of all optical  
 93 density (OD) values to the OD result of a non-reactive (negative) control (OD<sub>N</sub>). This ratio is  
 94 subtracted from 1 to set the level of antibody activity on a positive correlation scale; the greater the  
 95 level, the greater the calculated value. This adjusted value is expressed as a per cent and referred  
 96 to as the percentage inhibition or PI value. So for the low-weak positive control serum (OD<sub>LW</sub>), the  
 97 transformation to obtain the per cent inhibition values for the low-weak positive control (PI<sub>LW</sub>) is:

$$PI_{LW} = 100 \times [1 - \{OD_{LW} / OD_N\}]$$

98 The relative standard deviation becomes:

$$RSD (PI_{LW}) = SD (PI_{LW}) / \text{mean} (PI_{LW})$$

101 **2.2. Example**

102 A limited data set for the AI competitive ELISA example is shown below. In the experiment, the  
 103 operator tested the low-weak positive control serum ten times in the same run. Ideally in the  
 104 application of this “top down” method, a larger data set would be used, which would enable  
 105 accounting for effects on precision resulting from changes in operator and assay components (other  
 106 than only the control serum).

107 **Table 1. Top-down or control sample approach for an influenza antibody C-ELISA**

| Test | PI (%) |
|------|--------|
| 1    | 56     |
| 2    | 56     |
| 3    | 61     |
| 4    | 64     |
| 5    | 51     |
| 6    | 49     |
| 7    | 59     |
| 8    | 70     |
| 9    | 55     |
| 10   | 42     |

108 Mean PI = 56.3; Std Dev (SD) = 7.9; Assays (n) = 10

<sup>1</sup> The Australian Government, Department of Agriculture, Fisheries and Forestry, has compiled worked examples for a number of diagnostic tests Available online at: <https://www.agriculture.gov.au/agriculture-land/animal/health/laboratories/tests/measurement-uncertainty> (accessed 22 June 2023).

### 2.3. Calculating uncertainty

From the limited data set,

$$\text{RSD (PI}_{LW}) = \text{SD}/\text{Mean} = 7.9/56.3 = 0.14 \text{ (or as coefficient of variation = 14\%)}$$

Expanded uncertainty (U) is the statistic defining the interval within which the value of the measure and is believed to lie within a specified level of confidence, usually 95%. Expanding the uncertainty is done by multiplying the RSD (PI<sub>LW</sub>) by a factor of 2; this allows the calculation of an approximate 95% confidence reference interval around the threshold value (in this case at PI = 50%), assuming normally distributed data. If data are not normally distributed they must be transformed to fit a normal distribution using a log scale.

$$U \text{ (95\% C-R)} = 2 \times \text{RSD} = 0.28$$

This estimate can then be applied at the threshold level

$$95\% \text{ C-R} = 50 \pm (50 \times 0.28) = 50 \pm 14\%$$

### 2.4. Interpretation of the results

Any positive result (PI > 50%) that is less than 64% is not positive with 95% confidence. Similarly, a negative result (PI < 50%) that is higher or equal to a PI of 36 is not negative at the 95% confidence level. A sample with a PI between 36% and 64% is within the MU surrounding the threshold value, and thus its diagnostic status is less certain than those of samples with results further from that threshold. This zone of lower confidence may correlate with the “grey zone” or “inconclusive/suspect zone” for interpretation that should be established for all tests (Greiner *et al.*, 1995).

## 3. Example of MU calculation in molecular tests

### 3.1. Example

For real-time PCRs, replicates of positive controls with their respective cycle threshold (Ct) values can be used to estimate MU using the top-down approach (Newberry & Colling, 2021). The method of expression follows the same formula as for the ELISA example above. This example uses data from replicate runs of a weak positive control sample (10 runs) of an equine influenza hydrolysis probe assay.

Table 2. Top-down or control sample approach for an equine influenza TaqMan A assay

| <u>Test</u> | <u>Ct value</u> |
|-------------|-----------------|
| <u>1</u>    | <u>33.60</u>    |
| <u>2</u>    | <u>33.20</u>    |
| <u>3</u>    | <u>33.96</u>    |
| <u>4</u>    | <u>33.18</u>    |
| <u>5</u>    | <u>33.96</u>    |
| <u>6</u>    | <u>32.72</u>    |
| <u>7</u>    | <u>33.57</u>    |
| <u>8</u>    | <u>33.45</u>    |
| <u>9</u>    | <u>32.80</u>    |
| <u>10</u>   | <u>33.20</u>    |

Mean = 33.36; Std Dev (SD) = 0.43; Assay n=10

### 3.2. Calculating uncertainty

From the limited data set,

$$\text{RSD (Pl}_{\text{w}}) = \text{SD}/\text{Mean } 0.43/33.36 = 0.0128 \text{ (or as coefficient of variation = 1.28\%)}$$

Expanded uncertainty (U) is the statistic defining the interval within which the value of the measure and is believed to lie within a specified level of confidence, usually 95%. Expanding the uncertainty is done by multiplying the RSD (Pl<sub>w</sub>) by a factor of 2; this allows the calculation of an approximate 95% confidence interval around the threshold value (in this case at Ct value = 37), assuming normally distributed data.

$$U \text{ (95\% C-R)} = 2 \times \text{RSD} = 0.0255$$

This estimate can then be applied at the threshold level

$$95\% \text{ C-R} = 37 \pm (37 \times 0.0255) = 37 \pm 0.94$$

The mean cycle threshold (Ct) value after 10 runs is 33.36 and the standard deviation is 0.43. The relative standard deviation is 0.0128. The expanded uncertainty (95% C-R) is 2 × the relative standard deviation = 0.0255. Measurement of uncertainty (MU) is most relevant at the cut-off (Ct = 37) and can be applied by multiplication (37 × 0.0255 = 0.94). Subtraction from the threshold (37-0.94) provides the lower 95% confidence-reference limit (Ct = 36.06) and addition (37+0.94) the upper 95% confidence-reference limit (Ct = 37.94).

### 3.3. Interpretation of the results

Any positive result (Ct < 37) that is higher than 36 Ct is not positive with 95% confidence. Similarly, any negative result (Ct > 37) that is less than 38 Ct is not negative with 95% confidence. A sample with a Ct between 36 and 38 is within the MU surrounding the threshold value, and thus its diagnostic status is less certain than those of samples with results further from that threshold.

## B. OTHER APPLICATIONS

The top-down approach should be broadly applicable for a range of diagnostic tests including molecular tests. For the calculation of tests using a typical two-fold dilution series for the positive control such as virus neutralisation, complement fixation and haemagglutination inhibition tests geometric mean titre (i.e. geomean and expanded [SD] of log base 2 titre values) of the positive control serum should be calculated. Relative standard deviations based on these log scale values may then be applied at the threshold (log base 2) titre, and finally transformed (by antilog) to represent the uncertainty at the threshold. However, in all cases, the approach assumes that the variance about the positive control used to estimate the RSD is proportionally similar at the point of application of the MU, for example at the threshold. If the RSD varies significantly over the measurement scale, the positive control serum used to estimate the MU at the threshold should be selected for an activity level close to that threshold. The Australian Government, Department of Agriculture, Fisheries and Water Resources Forestry, has compiled worked examples for a number of diagnostic tests (see footnote 1). (DAFF, 2010), which are available online at:

<http://www.agriculture.gov.au/animal/health/laboratories/tests/worked-example-measurement>

For quantitative real time PCRs (qPCR) replicates of positive controls with their respective cycle threshold (CT) values can be used to estimate MU using the top-down approach.

Other approaches and variations have been described, i.e. for serological tests (Dimech *et al.*, 2006; Goris *et al.*, 2009; Toussaint *et al.*, 2007). Additional work and policy Central documents are available from the National Pathology Accreditation Advisory Group and Life Science. The central document to MU is are the Guide to the expression of uncertainty in measurement (GUM), ISO/IEC Guide, (1995) and Eurachem/CITAC Guide, 2012 CG 4: Quantifying uncertainty in analytical measurement.



180 **Scope and limitations of the top-down approach**

181 Methods for quantifying uncertainty (addressing MU) for tests vary. When estimating MU for quantitative,  
182 biologically based diagnostic tests, where variations in the substrate or matrix have large and unpredictable  
183 effects, a top-down approach is recommended (Dimech *et al.*, 2006; Eurachem 2012; Goris *et al.*, 2009;  
184 ISO/IEC Guide 98-3:2008; Newberry & Colling, 2021; Standards Council of Canada, 2021; and footnote 1).  
185 The advantage of this method is that quality control data are generated during normal test runs and can be  
186 used to estimate the precision of the assay and express it at the cut-off. The application at the cut-off depends  
187 on the performance of the test at different analyte concentrations, e.g. variation is likely to increase at higher  
188 diluted samples. The top-down approach does not identify individual contributors to measurement uncertainty  
189 but rather provides an overall estimate. Measurement uncertainty does not replace test validation; however,  
190 the validation process includes assessments of repeatability through quality control samples which facilitate  
191 calculation of MU.

192 **REFERENCES**

- 193 ~~AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR LABORATORY ACCREDITATION (A2LA). Policy on estimating measurement~~  
194 ~~uncertainty for life science testing labs [https://portal.a2la.org/policies/A2LA\\_P103b.pdf](https://portal.a2la.org/policies/A2LA_P103b.pdf) (accessed 22~~  
195 ~~November 2018).~~
- 196 Australian Government, Department of Agriculture and WATER RESOURCES. Worked examples of  
197 measurement uncertainty [http://www.agriculture.gov.au/animal/health/laboratories/tests/worked-example-](http://www.agriculture.gov.au/animal/health/laboratories/tests/worked-example-measurement)  
198 measurement (accessed 22 November 2018).
- 199 AUSTRALIAN GOVERNMENT DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND AGEING (2007). Requirements for the estimation of  
200 measurement uncertainty, National Pathology Accreditation Advisory Group.  
201 [http://www.health.gov.au/internet/main/publishing.nsf/Content/B1074B732F32282DCA257BF0001FA218/\\$Fi-](http://www.health.gov.au/internet/main/publishing.nsf/Content/B1074B732F32282DCA257BF0001FA218/$File/dhaeou.pdf)  
202 le/dhaeou.pdf (accessed 22 November 2018).
- 203 DIMECH W., FRANCIS B., KOX J. & ROBERTS G. (2006). Calculating uncertainty of measurement for serology  
204 assays by use of precision and bias. *Clin. Chem.*, **52**, No. 3, 526–529.
- 205 ELLISON S.L.R. & WILLIAMS A. (EDS) (2012). Eurachem/CITAC Guide CG 4: Quantifying uncertainty in analytical  
206 measurement, 3rd Edition. Eurachem, Teddington, United Kingdom, Section 3. Available at:  
207 [www.eurachem.org/images/stories/Guides/pdf/QUAM2012\\_P1.pdf](http://www.eurachem.org/images/stories/Guides/pdf/QUAM2012_P1.pdf) (Accessed 10 June 2023).
- 208 GORIS N., VANDENBUSSCHE F., HERR, C., VILLERS, J., VAN DER STEDE, Y. & DE CLERCQ K. (2009). Validation of  
209 two real-time PCR methods for foot-and-mouth disease diagnosis: RNA-extraction, matrix effects, uncertainty  
210 of measurement and precision. *J. Virol. Methods*, **160**, 157–162.
- 211 GREINER M., SOHR D. & GOEBEL P.A. (1995). Modified ROC analysis for the selection of cut-off values and the  
212 definition of intermediate results of serodiagnostic tests, *J. Immunol. Methods*, **185**, 123–132.
- 213 ~~ISO/IEC (1995). Guide to the expression of uncertainty in measurement (GUM), ISO/IEC Guide 98:1995.~~  
214 ~~International Organization for Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).~~
- 215 ~~ISO/IEC (2005). ISO/IEC 17025:2005~~2017. General Requirements for the Competence of Testing and  
216 Calibration Laboratories. International Organization for Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
- 217 ISO/IEC GUIDE 98-3:2008 (E). Uncertainty of measurement – Part 3 Guide to the expression of uncertainty in  
218 measurement (GUM:1995), International Organization for Standardization (ISO), [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org) (accessed 10  
219 June 2023).
- 220 SCC- STANDARDS COUNCIL OF CANADA. Requirements and Guidance for method Verification and Validation in  
221 Testing Laboratories (RG-MVVT), 2021-05-24. <http://www.scc.ca/> (accessed 10 June 2023).

222 TOUSSAINT J.F., ASSAM P., CAIJ B., DEKEYSER F., KNAPEN K., IMBERECHTS H., GORIS N., MOLENBERGHS G.,  
223 MINTIENS K., & DE CLERCQ K. (2007). Uncertainty of measurement for competitive and indirect ELISAs. *Rev.*  
224 *sci. tech. Off. int. Epiz.*, **26**, 649–656.

225 NEWBERRY K. & COLLING A (2021). Quality standards and guidelines for test validation for infectious diseases  
226 in veterinary laboratories. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, 40, 227–237. Available at  
227 <https://doc.woah.org/dyn/portal/index.xhtml?page=alo&aloid=41245> (accessed 22 June 2023)

228  
229

\*  
\* \*

230 **NB: There is a WOAHO Collaborating Centre for**  
231 **Diagnostic Test Validation Science in the Asia-Pacific Region (please consult the WOAHO Web site:**  
232 **<https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/collaborating-centres/#ui-id-3>**  
233 **Please contact the WOAHO Collaborating Centre for any further information on validation.**

234

**NB: FIRST ADOPTED IN 2014.**

## Annexe 7. Chapter 2.2.6. 'Selection and use of reference samples and panels'

### CHAPTER 2.2.6.

## SELECTION AND USE OF REFERENCE SAMPLES AND PANELS

### INTRODUCTION

The WOAH Validation Recommendations provide detailed information and examples in support of ~~the WOAH Validation Standard that is published as Chapter 1.1.6 Principles and methods of Validation of diagnostic assays for infectious diseases of terrestrial animals this Terrestrial Manual, or Chapter 1.1.2 of the Aquatic Manual. The Term "WOAH Validation Standard" in this chapter should be taken as referring to those chapters.~~

Reference samples and panels are essential from the initial proof of concept in the development laboratory through to the maintenance and monitoring of assay performance in the diagnostic laboratory and all of the stages in between. The critical importance of reference samples and panels cannot be over-emphasised. The wrong choice of reference materials can lead to bias and flawed conclusions right from development through to validation and use. Therefore, care must be exercised in selecting reference samples and designing panels.

**Fig. 1. Reference samples and panels grouped based on similar characteristics and composition. The topics and alphanumeric subheadings (e.g. Proof of concept, A.2.1) refer to the relevant section in the WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6 Validation of diagnostic assays for infectious diseases of terrestrial animals.**

|   |  |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|--|---|
| <b>Group A</b>  |  | <b>Group B</b>                                     |  | <b>Group D</b>  |
| Proof of concept, A.2.1.  |  | Asp, B.1.2.  |  | Standard method comparison, B.2.6.                          |
| Operating range, A.2.2-3.                                       |  | Analytical accuracy, <u>ancillary tests</u> B.1.4. |  | Provisional recognition, B.2.6-7.                           |
| <u>ASe, B.1.3.</u>  |  | <del>Reference samples and panels</del>            |  | Biological modifications, B.5.2.2.                          |
| Optimisation, A.2.3-2.  |  | <b>Group C</b>                                     |  | <b>Group E</b>  |
| <del>Robustness, A.2.5. Preliminary repeatability, A.2.8.</del> |  | Repeatability B.1.1.                               |  | D <sub>Sp</sub> and D <sub>Se</sub> Gold standard, B.2.1.   |
| Calibration <u>and process control</u> , A.2.6.                 |  | Preliminary reproducibility, B.2.6 Z.              |  | <b>Group F</b>  |
| <del>Process control, A.2.6.</del>                              |  | Reproducibility, B.3.                              |  | D <sub>Sp</sub> and D <sub>Se</sub> no gold standard B.2.2. |
| <del>ASe, B.1.3.</del>  |  | Proficiency testing, B.5.1.                        |  |   |
| Technical modifications, B.5.2.1.                               |  |  |  |   |
| Reagent replacement, B.5.2.3.                                   |  |  |  |   |

A<sub>Sp</sub> = Analytical specificity; A<sub>Se</sub> = Analytical sensitivity; D<sub>Sp</sub> = diagnostic specificity; D<sub>Se</sub> = diagnostic sensitivity

~~As can be seen in Figure 1, Reference samples and/or panels are mentioned throughout the WOAH Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6. As defined in the glossary of the OIE Quality Standard and Guidelines for Veterinary Laboratories: Infectious Diseases, 'Reference materials are~~

24 ~~“substances whose properties are sufficiently homogenous and well established to be used for~~  
25 ~~the calibration of an apparatus, the assessment of a measurement method, or for assigning~~  
26 ~~values to materials”<sup>1</sup>. In the context of test method validation, reference materials or samples~~  
27 ~~contain the analyte of interest in varying concentrations or activities-reactivities and are used in~~  
28 ~~developing and evaluating the candidate assay’s analytical and diagnostic performance~~  
29 ~~characteristics. In our case,~~ Analyte means the specific component of a test sample that is  
30 detected or measured by the test method, e.g. antibody, antigen or nucleic acid. ~~These~~ Reference  
31 samples may be sera, fluids, tissues, excreta, feed ~~and or~~ environmental samples that contain  
32 the analyte of interest and are usually harvested from infected animals and their environments.  
33 However, in some cases, they may be prepared in the laboratory from an original starting material  
34 (e.g. a dilution of a high positive serum in negative serum) or perhaps created by spiking the  
35 chosen matrix with a derived analyte (e.g. a bacterial or viral culture, a recombinant/expressed  
36 protein, or a genomic construct). Whether natural or prepared, they are used in experiments  
37 throughout the development process, carry over into the validation pathway and can be used to  
38 monitor performance throughout the lifespan of the assay.

39 ~~In Figure 1, reference samples and panels are grouped based on similar characteristics and~~  
40 ~~composition and these groupings will be the basis for the following descriptions. As a cross-~~  
41 ~~reference, the appropriate Section of the OIE Validation Standard is indicated under each~~  
42 ~~particular application of the reference sample or panel.~~

43 ~~Reference samples may be used for multiple purposes from the initial stages of development and~~  
44 ~~optimisation, through Stage 1 and into continual monitoring and maintenance of the assay.~~  
45 ~~Wherever possible, large quantities of these reference samples should be collected or prepared~~  
46 ~~and preserved for long-term use. Switching reference samples during the validation process~~  
47 ~~introduces an intractable variable that can severely undermine interpretation of experimental data~~  
48 ~~and therefore, the integrity of the development and validation process. For assays that may target~~  
49 ~~multiple species, the samples should be representative of the primary species of interest. It is~~  
50 ~~critical that these samples reflect both the target analyte and the matrix in which it is found in the~~  
51 ~~population for which the assay is intended. The reference materials should appropriately~~  
52 ~~represent the range of analyte concentration to be detected by the assay.~~

53 ~~It is important to emphasise that, no matter whether reference samples are selected from natural~~  
54 ~~sources or prepared in the laboratory, all selection criteria ~~or and~~ preparation procedures, as well~~  
55 ~~as testing requirements, need to be fully described and put into document control. Not only is this~~  
56 ~~good quality management practice, but it will provide both an enhanced level of continuity and~~  
57 ~~confidence throughout the lifespan of the assay. Summaries of the data to be collected and~~  
58 ~~documented for reference material can be found in Figure 2. For more detail on best practice and~~  
59 ~~quality standards for the documentation of provenance of reference material refer to Watson et~~  
60 ~~al. (2021).~~

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://www.techlab.fr/Commun/UK\\_Def\\_MRC.asp](https://www.techlab.fr/Commun/UK_Def_MRC.asp)

61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66

**Fig. 2. Documentation of reference material should be thorough to ensure i) transparency of intended purpose during assay development; ii) the correct sample types are used in all stages of assay development and validation; iii) accurate replacement of depleted reagents; and iv) appropriate choice of reference material during assay modification and re-validation. Minimum descriptive metadata are listed for pathogen, animal host, tissue type and phase of infection.**

| <u>Pathogen data</u>  | <u>Animal host and sample type data</u>  | <u>Phase of Infection data</u>   |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>Strain/isolate</u></li> <li>• <u>Serotype</u></li> <li>• <u>Genotype</u></li> <li>• <u>Lineage</u></li> <li>• <u>Tests used for characterisation</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>Natural infection</u></li> <li>• <u>Experimental infection and protocol used</u></li> <li>• <u>Species</u></li> <li>• <u>Breed</u></li> <li>• <u>Age</u></li> <li>• <u>Sex</u></li> <li>• <u>Reproductive status</u></li> <li>• <u>Vaccination history</u></li> <li>• <u>Herd history</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>Clinical signs</u></li> <li>• <u>infection/disease outcome</u></li> <li>• <u>Antibody profiles</u></li> <li>• <u>Pathogen loading and shedding</u></li> <li>• <u>Tests used to determine status of disease/infection (case definition)</u></li> <li>• <u>Time post-experimental infection</u></li> </ul> |
|   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>Tissue type/s (matrix) used</u></li> <li>• <u>For spiked samples – detail source of analyte and diluent (matrix) used</u></li> <li>• <u>Details relating to pooling of samples</u></li> </ul>  |  |

67

## A. GROUP A

68 The question of pooling of samples to create a reference sample is often asked. If reference material is  
69 harvested from a single animal, it is important to ascertain whether or not it is representative of a typical course  
70 and stage of infection within the context of the population to be tested. If not, this could lead to bias and flawed  
71 conclusions related to validation. Pooling is a good alternative but it is imperative to pool from animals that are  
72 in a similar phase of infection. This is particularly important for antibody detection systems. Pooling also  
73 addresses the issue of the larger quantities of reference material to be stored for long term use, especially  
74 when dealing with smaller host species. Before pooling any samples, it is preferable that they be independently  
75 tested to demonstrate that they are similar with respect to analyte concentration and/or reactivity. There should  
76 be an assessment following pooling to ensure that unforeseen interference is not introduced by the pooling of  
77 multiple samples, for example differing blood types or antibody composition within the independent samples  
78 could cross-react within the pool, thus causing the pooled sample to behave differently in the specified assay  
79 than the individual samples when tested independently.

80 It is often difficult to obtain individual samples that truly represent analyte concentrations or reactivities across  
81 the spectrum of the expected range. Given the dynamics of many infections or responses to pathogens,  
82 intermediate ranges are often very transient. In the case of antibody responses, early infection phases in  
83 individual animals often result in highly variable and heterogeneous populations of antibody isotypes and  
84 avidities. In general, these do not make good reference samples for assessing the analytical characteristics of  
85 an assay. They are nonetheless important for different types of reference panels as will be discussed later.  
86 For most applications in Group A, it is acceptable to use prepared samples that are spiked with known  
87 concentrations of analyte or a dilution series of a high positive in negative matrix to create a range of  
88 concentrations.

89 Whether natural or prepared, reference samples should represent the anticipated range of analyte  
90 concentrations, from low-weak to high-strong positive, which would be expected during a typical course of  
91 infection. A negative reference sample should be included as a background monitor. If a negative (matrix) is  
92 used as diluent for preparation of a positive reference sample (e.g. a negative serum used to dilute a high

93 positive serum or tissue spiked with a construct), that negative should definitely be included as the negative  
94 reference sample.

95 ~~As mentioned above, all reference samples should be well characterised. This includes documentation on both  
96 the pathogen and donor host. For pathogens, this may include details related to strain, serotype, genotype,  
97 lineage, etc. The source of the host material should be well described with respect to species, breed, age, sex,  
98 reproductive status, vaccination history, herd history, etc. Wherever possible, the phase of infection should be  
99 noted. This could include details related to clinical signs, antibody profiles, pathogen load or shedding, etc.  
100 Equally important, tests that are used to determine disease/infection status need to be well documented (see  
101 Section E of this chapter for further explanation). In some cases, experimental infection/exposure may be the  
102 only viable option for the production of reference material. In this case, all of the above considerations plus the  
103 experimental protocol should be detailed.~~

104 Above all else, natural or prepared, reference materials must be unequivocal with respect to their status as  
105 representing either a true positive or a true negative sample. This may require that the status be confirmed  
106 using another test or battery of tests. For example, many antibody reference sera are characterised using  
107 multiple serological tests. This provides not only confidence but additional documented characteristics that  
108 may be required when attempting to replace or duplicate this reference material in the future.

109 Recommendations regarding stability and storage of reference materials are available:  
110 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/veterinary-products/#ui-id-4>

## 111 **1. Proof of concept (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section A.2.1)**

112 ~~The WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6 states that test methods and related procedures must be  
113 appropriate for specific diagnostic applications in order for the test results to be of relevance. In other words,  
114 the assay must be 'fit for purpose'. Many assays are developed with good intentions but without a specific  
115 application in mind. At the very outset, it is critical that the diagnostic purpose(s) should be defined with respect  
116 to the population(s) to be tested. The most common purposes are listed in broad terms in Section A of ~~the~~  
117 ~~WOAH Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6~~. As such, they are inclusive of more narrow and specific  
118 applications. However, these specific purpose(s) need to be clearly defined from the outset and are critically  
119 important in the context of a fully validated assay. As will be seen in the following descriptions, clearly defining  
120 the application will have impact on both the selection of reference samples and panels and the design of  
121 analytical and diagnostic evaluations.~~

## 122 **2. Operating range (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section A.2.2-3) and 123 analytical sensitivity (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.1.3)**

### 124 **2.1. Analytical approaches Operating range and analytical sensitivity**

125 ~~The operating range of the assay is defines the lower and upper analyte detection limits and the  
126 interval of analyte concentrations (amounts) over which the method provides suitable accuracy and  
127 precision. It also defines the lower and upper detection limits the assay. To establish this range, The  
128 operating range is established by serial dilution, to extinction, of replicates of a high-~~strong~~ positive  
129 reference sample ~~is selected. This high positive sample, either natural or prepared, is serially diluted  
130 to extinction. Dilutions of the strong positive are made in a negative matrix representative of the  
131 typical sample matrix of samples type taken from animals in the population targeted by the assay.  
132 This includes antibody assays where a high-replicates of a strong positive reference serum should  
133 be diluted in a negative reference serum to create the dilution series. Analytical sensitivity (ASe) is  
134 measured by replicates of the lower limit of detection (LOD) of an analyte in an assay. The same  
135 high-~~strong~~ positive reference sample may be used to determine both the operating range and the  
136 analytical LOD.~~~~

### 137 **2.2. Comparative approaches to analytical sensitivity**

138 If the intended purpose is to detect low levels of analyte or subclinical infections, it may be difficult to  
139 obtain the appropriate reference materials from early stages of the infection process. In some cases,  
140 it may be useful to determine a comparative ASe by running a panel of samples on the candidate



141 assay and on another independent assay. Ideally this panel of samples would be serially collected  
142 from either naturally or experimentally infected animals and should represent infected animals early  
143 after infection, ~~on~~ through to the development of clinical or fulminating disease, if possible. This would  
144 provide a relative comparison of ASe between the assays, ~~as well as,~~ and a temporal comparison of  
145 the earliest point of detection relative to the pathogenesis of the disease.

146 An experiment like the one described above, provides a unique opportunity to collect reference  
147 samples representing a natural range of concentrations that would be useful for other validation  
148 purposes. Care must be taken to avoid use of such samples when inappropriate (consult Group D  
149 below). Wherever possible serial samples should be collected from ~~at least five~~ a statistically sound  
150 number of animals throughout the course of infection. In cases where sampling is lethal (e.g.  
151 requiring the harvest of internal organ tissues), the number of animals required ~~would be a minimum~~  
152 depends on need and fitness of five per sampling event ~~the experimental approach.~~ In all cases  
153 approval from an ethics committee is required. For smaller host species, ~~this~~ the number may need  
154 to be increased in order to collect sufficient reference material. Given that experiments like this  
155 require a high commitment of resources, it would be wise to maximise the collection of not only the  
156 currently targeted reference samples but additional materials (e.g. multiple tissues, fluids, etc.) that  
157 may be useful as reference materials in the future.

### 158 **3. Optimisation (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section A.2.32) and preliminary** 159 **repeatability (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section A.2.68)**

160 Optimisation is the process by which the most important physical, chemical and biological parameters of an  
161 assay are evaluated and adjusted to ensure that the performance characteristics of the assay are best suited  
162 to the intended application. At least three reference samples representing negative, low-weak and high-strong  
163 positive may be chosen from either natural or prepared reference samples. Optimisation experiments are  
164 rather exhaustive especially when assays with multiple preparatory and testing steps are involved. It is very  
165 important that a sufficient quantity of each reference sample be available to complete all optimisation  
166 experiments. Changing reference samples during the course of optimisation is not recommended as this will  
167 result in the addition of an uncontrolled variable and a disruption in the continuity of optimisation evidence.

168 Assessment of repeatability should begin during assay development and optimisation stages. ~~Repeatability~~  
169 and is further verified during Stage 1 of assay validation (Section B.1.1 of chapter 1.1.6). The same reference  
170 samples should be used ~~for both processes,~~ again throughout to provide continuity of evidence.

### 171 **4. Calibration and process controls (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section** 172 **A.2.6)**

#### 173 **4.1. International, national or in-house analyte reference standards**

174 International reference standards are highly characterised, contain defined concentrations of analyte,  
175 and are usually prepared and held by international reference laboratories. They are the reagents to  
176 which all assays and/or other reference materials should be standardised. National reference  
177 standards are calibrated by comparison with an international standard reagent whenever possible.  
178 In the absence of an international standard, a national reference standard may be selected or  
179 prepared and it then becomes the standard of comparison for the candidate assay. In the absence  
180 of both of the above, an in-house standard should be selected or prepared by the development  
181 laboratory within the responsible organisation. In all cases, thorough documentation of reference  
182 material should be observed as summarised in Figure 2. All of the standard reagents, whether natural  
183 or prepared, must be highly characterised through extensive analysis, and preferably the methods  
184 for their characterisation, preparation, and storage have been published in peer-reviewed  
185 publications (Watson et al., 2021). These reference standards should also be both stable and  
186 innocuous.

187 Reference standards, especially antibody, are usually provided in one of two formats. They may be  
188 provided as a single positive reagent of given titre with the expectation that the candidate assay will  
189 be standardised to give an equivalent titre. This is a straight forward analytical approach but many  
190 of these 'single' standards have been prepared from highly positive samples as a pre-dilution in a

191 negative matrix in order to maximise the number of aliquots available. The drawback here is that  
192 there is no accounting for any potential matrix effect in the candidate assay as there is no matrix  
193 control provided. The other approach is to provide a negative and a low-weak and high-strong positive  
194 set of reference standards that are of known concentrations or reactivities and are within the  
195 operating range of the standard method that was used to prepare them. The negative provided in  
196 the set must be the same as the negative diluent used to prepare the weak and strong positive  
197 reference standard, if the positive standards were diluted. This compensates for any potentially  
198 hidden matrix effect. In addition, this set of three acts as a template for the selection and/or  
199 preparation of process controls (discussed below).

200 Classically, the above standards usually have been polyclonal antibody standards and to a lesser  
201 extent, conventional antigen standards used for calibration of serological assays. However, today,  
202 reference standards could also be monoclonal antibodies or recombinant/expressed proteins or  
203 genomic constructs, if they are to be used to calibrate assays to a single performance standard.

#### 204 **4.2. Working standards or process controls**

205 Working standard reagent(s), commonly known as quality or process controls, are calibrated to  
206 international, national, or in-house standard reagents. They are selected or prepared in the local  
207 matrix which is found in the population for which the assay is intended. Ideally, negative and low  
208 weak and high-strong positive working standards should be selected or prepared. Concentrations  
209 and/or reactivities should be within the normal operating range of the assay. Large quantities should  
210 be prepared, aliquoted and stored for routine use in each diagnostic run of the assay. The intent is  
211 that these controls should mimic, as closely as possible, field samples and should be handled and  
212 tested like routine samples. They are used to establish upper and lower control limits of assay  
213 performance and to monitor random and/or systematic variability using various control charting  
214 methods. Their daily performance will determine whether or not an assay is in control and if individual  
215 runs may be accepted. As such, these working reference samples are critically important from a  
216 quality management standpoint.

#### 217 **5. Technical modifications (~~WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.5.2.1~~)**

218 Technical modifications to a validated assay such as changes in instrumentation, extraction protocols, and  
219 conversion of an assay to a semi-automated or fully automated system using robotics will typically not  
220 necessitate full revalidation of the assay. Rather, a methods comparison study may be done to determine if  
221 these minor modifications to the assay protocol will affect the test results. Consult See chapter 2.2.8  
222 Comparability of assays after changes in a validated test method for description of experiments and statistical  
223 approaches to assay precision in the face of technical modifications that are appropriate for comparability  
224 testing (Bowden & Wang, 2021; Reising *et al.*, 2021).

225 In general, these approaches require the use of three reference samples, a negative, a weak and a low and  
226 high-strong positive. Again these samples to represent the entire operating range of both assays. Samples  
227 may be either natural or prepared. The important point to re-iterate here is that the same reference samples  
228 that were used in the developmental stages of the assay may be used to assess modifications after the method  
229 has been put into routine diagnostic use. This provides a higher level of confidence assessing potential impacts  
230 because the performance characteristics of these reference samples have been well characterised. At the very  
231 least, if new reference samples are to be used, they should be selected or prepared using the same criteria or  
232 preparation procedures established for previous materials. Again as this enhances the continuity of evidence.

#### 233 **6. Reagent replacement (~~WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.5.2.3~~)**

234 When a reagent such as a process control sample is nearing depletion, it is essential to prepare and repeatedly  
235 test a replacement before such a control is depleted. The prospective replacement should be included in  
236 multiple runs of the assay in parallel with the original control to establish their proportional relationship. It is  
237 important to change only one control reagent at a time to avoid the compound problem of evaluating more  
238 than one variable.

239 Again, it cannot be over-emphasised that any Replacement reference reagent should be selected or prepared  
240 using the same criteria or preparation procedures established for previous materials. Again as this enhances

241 the continuity of evidence and confidence in the assay and underlines the importance of documentation of  
242 reference material data (Figure 2).

243

## B. GROUP B

### 244 1. Analytical specificity (~~WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.1.2~~)

245 Analytical specificity (ASp) is the degree to which the assay distinguishes between the target analyte and other  
246 components that may be detected in the assay. ~~This is a relatively broad definition that is often not well~~  
247 ~~understood. ASp may be broken down into different elements as described below.~~

248 The choice of reference samples that are required to assess ASp is highly dependent on the ~~specific-intended~~  
249 ~~purpose or application that was originally envisaged~~ defined at the development stage of the assay.  
250 Assessment of ASp is a crucial element in proof of concept and verification of fitness for purpose and may be  
251 broken down into three elements: selectivity, exclusivity and inclusivity.

252 Selectivity: an important element is the extent to which a method can accurately detect and or quantify the  
253 targeted analyte in the milieu of nucleic acids, proteins and/or antibodies in the test matrix. This is sometimes  
254 termed 'selectivity'. An example is the use of reference samples for tests that are designed to differentiate  
255 infected from vaccinated animals (DIVA tests).

256 Reference samples need to be selected and tested from i) non-infected/non-vaccinated, ii) non-  
257 infected/vaccinated, iii) infected/non-vaccinated, and iv) infected/vaccinated animals. These samples may be  
258 collected under field conditions but it is important that an accurate history be collected, ideally with respect to  
259 the animals, but at least to the herds involved, including vaccination practices and disease occurrences (Figure  
260 2). Alternatively, it may be necessary to produce this material in experiments like those described in Section  
261 A.2.2 of this chapter, ~~but~~ including a combination of experimentally vaccinated and challenged animals. ~~#~~  
262 Application of the 3 Rs (replacement, reduction and refinement) aims to avoid or minimise the number of  
263 animals used in experiments. For enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs), it is important to avoid use  
264 of the vaccine as capture antigen in the assay (e.g. indirect ELISA enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay [I-  
265 ELISA]), because carrier proteins in the vaccine may stimulate non-specific antibody responses in vaccinated  
266 animals that may be detected in ELISA leading to false positives in the assay. Similarly to the comparative  
267 approach described above with respect to ASe, at least five animals in each group should be considered. For  
268 smaller host species, this number may need to be increased in order to collect sufficient reference material,  
269 leading to false positives in the assay. Depending on the DIVA test, a single experiment could be designed to  
270 assess aspects of both ASe and ASp.

271 ~~A second element, sometimes termed 'exclusivity',~~ Exclusivity is the capacity of the assay to detect an analyte  
272 or genomic sequence that is unique to a targeted organism, and excludes all other other known organisms  
273 that are potentially cross-reactive. This is especially true in serological assays where there are many examples  
274 of antigens expressed by other organisms that are capable of eliciting cross-reacting antibody. An attempt  
275 should be made to obtain reference samples from documented cases of infections ~~and/or~~ organisms that may  
276 be cross-reactive. Depending on the type of assay, these reference materials may represent the organism  
277 itself, host-derived samples, or genomic sequences. A profile for the exclusivity of the assay should be  
278 established, and expanded on a continual basis as potentially cross-reactive organisms arise.

279 ~~Thirdly, a critical design consideration~~ Inclusivity relates to the capacity of an assay to detect one or several  
280 strains or serovars of a species, several species of a genus, or a similar grouping of closely related ~~organisms~~  
281 viruses, bacteria or antibodies. This defines the scope of detection and thus the fitness for purpose. Reference  
282 samples are required to define the scope of the assay. If for example an assay is developed as a screening  
283 test to detect all known genotypes or serotypes of a virus, then reference samples from each representative  
284 type should be tested. As new lineages or serotype variants arise, they too should be tested as part of the test  
285 profile, which should be updated on an ongoing basis.

286 **2. Analytical accuracy of adjunct ancillary tests (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6,**  
287 **Section B.1.4)**

288 Some test methods or procedures are solely analytical tools ~~and are usually applied~~ used to further  
289 characterise an analyte that has been detected in a primary assay, ~~for example assays like~~ Examples are the  
290 virus neutralisation tests used to type an isolated virus or characterise an antibody response and subtyping of  
291 haemagglutinin genes by polymerase chain reaction of avian influenza virus. Such ~~adjunct ancillary~~ tests must  
292 be validated for analytical performance characteristics, ~~but and differ from to~~ routine diagnostic tests because  
293 they do not require validation for diagnostic performance characteristics. The analytical accuracy of these tests  
294 is often dependant on the use of reference ~~reagents~~ material. These reagents, whether they are antibody for  
295 typing strains of organisms or reference strains of the organism, etc., should be thoroughly documented, as  
296 required for any other reference material (Figure 2), with respect to their source, identity and performance  
297 characteristics.

298 **C. GROUP C**

299 Reference samples in Group C may be used for a number of purposes. In the initial development stages, they  
300 may be used in the assessment of assay repeatability and both preliminary reproducibility in Stage 1 and the  
301 more in depth assessment of reproducibility in Stage 3 of the Validation Pathway. However, these samples  
302 have a number of other potential uses once the assay is transferred to the diagnostic laboratory. They may be  
303 used as panels for training and qualifying of analysts, and for assessing laboratory proficiency in external ring  
304 testing programmes. Ideally, 20 or more individual samples should be prepared in large volumes. About a  
305 quarter (25%) should be negative samples and the remainder (75%) should represent a collection of positives  
306 spanning the operating range of the assay. They should be aliquoted into individual tubes in sufficient volumes  
307 for single use only and stored for long term use (Chapter 1.1.2 Collection, submission and storage of diagnostic  
308 specimens). The number of aliquots of each that will be required will depend on how many laboratories will be  
309 using the assay on a routine diagnostic basis and how often proficiency testing is anticipated. Ideally, they  
310 should be prepared in an inexhaustible quantity, but this is seldom feasible. At a minimum, several hundred or  
311 more aliquots of each should be prepared at a time if the assay is intended for use in multiple laboratories.  
312 This allows assessment of laboratory proficiency by testing the same sample over many testing intervals – a  
313 useful means of detecting systematic error (bias) that may creep into long term use of an assay.

314 These samples may be natural or prepared from either single or pooled starting material. The intent is that  
315 they should mimic as closely as possible a true test sample. Because mass storage is always a problem, it  
316 may be necessary to store these materials in bulk and prepare working aliquots from time to time. However, if  
317 storage space is available, it is preferable to prepare and store large numbers of aliquots at one time because  
318 bulk quantities of analyte, undergoing freeze–thaw cycles to prepare a few aliquots at a time, may be subject  
319 to degradation. Because this type of reference material is consumed at a fairly high rate, they will need to be  
320 replaced or replenished on a continual basis. As potential replacement material is identified during routine  
321 testing or during outbreaks, it is advisable to work with field counterparts to obtain bulk reference material and  
322 store it for future use. Alternatively, it may be necessary to produce this material in experiments like those  
323 described in Section A.2.2 of this chapter. Similar to the comparative approach described above with respect  
324 to ASe, at least five animals in each group should be considered. For smaller host species, this number may  
325 need to be increased in order to collect sufficient reference material.

326 **1. Repeatability (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.1.1) and preliminary**  
327 **reproducibility provisional assay recognition (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6,**  
328 **Section B.2.6)**

329 Repeatability is the level of agreement between results of replicates of a sample both within and between runs  
330 of the same test method in a given laboratory. Repeatability is estimated by evaluating variation in results of  
331 replicates from a minimum of three (preferably five) samples representing analyte activity within the operating  
332 range of the assay. Consult Chapter 2.2.4 *Measurement uncertainty* for statistical approaches for measures  
333 of uncertainty for assessments of repeatability.

334 Reproducibility is the ability of a test method to provide consistent results, as determined by estimates of  
335 precision, when applied to aliquots of the same samples tested in different laboratories. However, preliminary

336 reproducibility estimates of the candidate assay should be determined during developmental stages. A small  
337 panel of three (but preferably five) representing negative, weak and ~~both low and high~~ strong positives, like  
338 those described above, would be adequate. This type of panel could also be used for a limited evaluation of  
339 reproducibility to enhance provisional acceptance status for the assay. The test method is usually assessed in  
340 ~~one~~ two or more laboratories with a high level of experience and proficiency in assays similar to the candidate  
341 assay. The panel of 'blind' samples is evaluated using the candidate assay in each of these laboratories, using  
342 the same protocol, same reagents and comparable equipment. This is a scaled-down version of Stage 3 of  
343 assay validation. ~~Consult Chapter 2.2.4 for further explanation of the topic and its application.~~

## 344 **2. Reproducibility (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.3)**

345 Reproducibility is an important measure of the precision of an assay when used in a cross-section of  
346 laboratories located in distinct or different regions or countries using the identical assay (protocol, reagents  
347 and controls). As the number of laboratories increases, so does the number of variables encountered with  
348 respect to laboratory environments, equipment differences and technical expertise. ~~These~~ An overview of the  
349 factors affecting testing reproducibility is provided in Waugh & Clark (2021). Reproducibility studies are a  
350 measure of an assay's capacity to remain unaffected by substantial changes or substitutions in test conditions  
351 anticipated in multi-laboratory use (e.g. shipping conditions, technology transfer, reagents batches, equipment,  
352 testing platforms and/or environments). ~~Each of~~ At least three laboratories should test the same panel of 'blind'  
353 samples containing a minimum of 20 samples, representing negative and a range of positive samples. If  
354 selected negative and/or positive samples ~~in the panel are duplicated,~~ in the panel then it may be possible to  
355 assess both assay reproducibility and within-laboratory repeatability estimates ~~may be augmented by replicate~~  
356 ~~testing of these samples when used in the reproducibility studies.~~

## 357 **3. Proficiency testing (WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.5.1)**

358 A validated assay in routine use in multiple laboratories needs to be continually monitored to ensure uniform  
359 performance and provide overall confidence in test results. This is assessed through external quality assurance  
360 programmes. Proficiency testing is one measure of laboratory competence derived by means of an inter-  
361 laboratory comparison; implied is that participating laboratories are using the same (or similar) test methods,  
362 reagents and controls. Results are usually expressed qualitatively, i.e. either negative or positive, to determine  
363 pass/fail criteria. However, ~~for single dilution assays, where~~ semi-quantitative results ~~provide~~ are provided,  
364 additional data for assessment of analysis may assess non-random error among the participating laboratories.  
365 Refer to Johnson & Cabuang (2021) for an overview of proficiency testing and ring trials.

366 Proficiency testing programmes are varied depending on the type of assay in use. For single dilution type  
367 assays, panel sizes also vary but a minimum of five samples, representing negative and both low and high  
368 positives, like those described above, would be adequate. Proficiency testing is not unlike a continuous form  
369 of reproducibility assessment. However, reproducibility, by definition, is a measure of the assay's performance  
370 in multiple laboratories; whereas proficiency testing is an assessment of laboratory competence in the  
371 performance of an established and validated assay. Measurements of precision can be estimated for both the  
372 reproducibility and repeatability data if replicates of the same reference sample are included in this 'blind'  
373 panel. ~~Consult Chapter 2.2.4 for further explanation of the topic and its application.~~ vary but a minimum of five  
374 samples, representing negative weak and strong positives, would be adequate.

## 375 **D. GROUP D**

376 Reference samples in Group D differ from the previous Groups in that each sample in the panel should be  
377 from a different individual animal. As indicated in Chapter 2.2.8 Comparability of assays after changes in a  
378 validated test method, experimental challenge studies often include repeated sampling of individual animals  
379 to determine the progression of disease, but this is a different objective ~~than~~ to comparing performance  
380 characteristics that would be associated with diagnostic sensitivity (DSe) and diagnostic specificity (DSp) of a  
381 test method. Serially drawn samples, taken on different days from the same animal, cannot be used as  
382 representative of individual animals in populations targeted by the assay, because such samples violate the  
383 rule of independence of samples required for such studies.



384 Care must be taken in choosing the reference samples and the standard (independent) method used in this  
385 type of comparison to ensure that the analytes being detected (if different) demonstrate the same type of  
386 pathogenic profile in terms of time of appearance after exposure to the infectious agent, and relative  
387 abundance in the test samples chosen.

388 **1. Standard method comparison and provisional recognition (~~WOAH Validation Standard,~~**  
389 **Chapter 1.1.6, Sections B.2.6-5 and B.2.6)**

390 There are situations where it is not possible or desirable to fulfil Stage 2 of the Validation Pathway because  
391 appropriate samples from the target population are scarce and animals are difficult to access (such as for  
392 exotic diseases). However, a small but select panel of highly characterised test samples representing the  
393 range of analyte concentration should be run in parallel in the candidate assay method and ~~by a~~ WOA  
394 standard method, as published in the WOA *Manuals*. Biobanks may be a useful resource in this context,  
395 providing well-characterised samples supported with metadata to enhance transparency and provenance of  
396 samples used in method comparisons (Watson et al., 2021). If the methods are deemed to be comparable  
397 (Chapter 2.2.8), and depending on the intended application of the assay, the choice may be made that further  
398 diagnostic validation is not required. For example, if the intended application is for screening of imported  
399 animals or animal products for exotic pathogens or confirmation of clinical signs, full validation beyond a test  
400 method comparison may not be feasible or warranted.

401 Experience has shown that the greatest obstacle to continuing through Stage 2 of the Validation Pathway is  
402 the number of defined samples required to estimate diagnostic performance parameters with a high degree of  
403 certainty (~~WOAH Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6,~~ Section B.2). In some cases, provisional recognition by  
404 international, national or local authorities may be granted for an assay that has not been completely evaluated  
405 past analytical stages. The different rationales for provisional acceptance are well explained in ~~the WOA~~  
406 Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6. In all cases however, sound evidence must exist for comparative estimates  
407 of DSp and DSe based on a small select panel of well-characterised samples containing the targeted analyte.

408 Ideally, for both comparison with a standard method or provisional recognition, a panel of, for example,  
409 60 samples could be assembled to ensure sufficient sample size for statistical analysis of the resulting data.  
410 This would include 30 'true' negatives and 30 'true' positives. Wherever possible, the positives should reflect  
411 the range of analyte concentrations or activities expected in the target population. As mentioned above, each  
412 sample in this panel must represent an individual animal. Consult Chapter 2.2.5 for statistical approaches to  
413 determining methods comparability using diagnostic samples.

414 **2. Biological modifications (~~WOAH Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6,~~ Section B.5.2.2)**

415 There may be situations where changes to some of the biologicals used in the assay may be necessary and/or  
416 warranted. This may include changes to reagents themselves or a change to a different type of specimen  
417 which contains the same analyte as targeted in the original validated assay (e.g. from serum to saliva). At the  
418 very least, all of the analytical criteria of the validation pathway must be re-assessed before proceeding. If the  
419 analytical requisites are met, the remaining question relates to whether or not a full diagnostic validation is  
420 required. A similar approach to the above using a panel of 60 individual reference samples may be considered.  
421 However, in this case the original test method would be considered as the standard (independent) test and the  
422 modified method would be considered the candidate. Consult Chapter 2.2.5 for statistical approaches to  
423 determining methods comparability using diagnostic samples.

424 **E. GROUP E**

425 Reference animals and reference samples in this Group E are well described in ~~the WOA~~ Validation  
426 Standard, chapter 1.1.6, Section B.2.1). However, there are a few points that are worth re-iterating here.



427 **1. ‘Gold standard’<sup>2</sup> – diagnostic specificity and diagnostic sensitivity (WOAH Validation**  
428 **Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.2.1)**

429 For conventional estimates of DSp, negative reference samples refer to true negative samples, from animals  
430 that have had no possible infection or exposure to the agent. In some situations, where the disease has never  
431 been reported in a country or limited to certain regions of a country, identification of true negative reference  
432 samples is usually not a problem. However, where the disease is endemic, samples such as these may be  
433 difficult to locate. It is often possible to obtain these samples from regions within a large country or perhaps  
434 different countries where the disease in question does not occur or has either been eradicated or has never  
435 had the disease in question.

436 ~~Again~~ For conventional estimates of DSe, positive reference samples refer to true positives. Care must be  
437 taken to ensure that the sample population is representative of the population that will be the target of the  
438 validated assay. It is generally problematic to find sufficient numbers of true positive reference animals, as  
439 determined by isolation of the organism. It may be necessary to resort to samples from animals that have been  
440 tested by a combination of methods that unequivocally classify animals as infected/exposed as discussed in  
441 the WOAH Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6.

442 ~~The important point here is that~~ All samples, irrespective of origin, must be documented as they would for any  
443 other reference sample ~~so as to~~ unequivocally ~~to~~ classify animals as infected or exposed, dependent on the  
444 fitness for purpose and proposed use of the test. As mentioned in Section A, and summarised in Figure 2, of  
445 this chapter, all reference samples should be well characterised. ~~This includes documentation on both the~~  
446 ~~pathogen and donor host. For pathogens, this may include details related~~ and data documented to strain,  
447 ~~serotype, genotype, lineage, etc. The source of the host material should be well described with respect to~~  
448 ~~species, breed, age, sex, reproductive status, vaccination history, herd history, etc. Wherever possible, the~~  
449 ~~phase of infection should be noted. This could include details related~~ clinical signs, antibody profiles, pathogen  
450 ~~load or shedding, etc. In some cases, experimental infection/exposure may be the only viable option~~ ensure  
451 appropriate sample selection for the production of reference material (see the OIE Validation Standard, Section  
452 B.2.3). ~~In this case, all of the above and the experimental protocol should be detailed~~ intended purpose.

453 Particularly relevant to these reference samples, the tests that are used to determine their so called ‘true’  
454 disease/infection status need to be well documented in order to assess potential errors in estimates that may  
455 be carried over into the estimates for the candidate assay. Indeed, when using imperfect standard assays to  
456 define reference animal or sample status, the DSe and DSp performance estimates of the candidate assay  
457 may be flawed and often overestimated. Consult Chapter 2.2.5 for statistical considerations. Situations where  
458 a perfect reference is available for either positive or negative animals, and one where the reference is perfect  
459 for both are described for diagnostic test validation by Heuer & Stevenson (2021).

460 **F. GROUP F**

461 **1. Animals of unknown status – diagnostic specificity and diagnostic sensitivity (WOAH**  
462 **Validation Standard, Chapter 1.1.6, Section B.2.2)**

463 Latent-class models are introduced in ~~the WOAH Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6.~~ They do not rely on the  
464 assumption of a perfect reference (standard or independent) test but rather estimate the accuracy of the  
465 candidate test and the reference standard with the combined test results. Because these statistical models are  
466 complex and require critical assumptions, statistical assistance should be sought to help guide the analysis  
467 and describe the sampling from the target population(s), the characteristics of other tests included in the  
468 analysis, the appropriate choice of model and the estimation methods based on peer-reviewed literature.  
469 Consult Chapter 2.2.5 for statistical considerations.

470 Reference populations, not individual reference samples, used in latent-class studies need to be well  
471 described. ~~This includes documentation on both the pathogen and donor host. For pathogens, this may include~~  
472 ~~details related to strain, serotype, genotype, lineage, etc., that may be circulating in the population. The source~~  
473 ~~of the host material should be well described with respect to species, breed, age, sex, reproductive status,~~

---

<sup>2</sup> The term “Gold Standard” is limited to a perfect reference standard as described in ~~the WOAH Validation Standard, chapter 1.1.6,~~  
Section B.2.1.2, and Chapter 2.2.5 *Statistical approaches to validation*, Introduction and Figure 1.

474 vaccination history, herd history, etc. as summarised in Figure 2. Wherever possible, the phase of infection in  
475 the populations should be noted with respect to morbidity or mortality events, recovery, etc.

476 As a special note, if latent class models are to be used to ascribe estimates of DSe and DSp and include  
477 multiple laboratories in the design, it is possible to incorporate an assessment of reproducibility into the  
478 assessment. ~~As stated above, statistical advice should be sought in this respect.~~ Bayesian analysis of latent  
479 class models are complex and require adherence to critical assumptions. Statistical assistance should be  
480 sought to help guide the analysis and describe the sampling from the target population(s), the characteristics  
481 of other tests included in the analysis, the appropriate choice of model and the estimation methods (based on  
482 peer-reviewed literature). See chapter 2.2.5 for details and Cheung *et al.*, 2021.

### 483 FURTHER READING

484 BOWDEN T.R., CROWTHER J.R. & WANG J. (2021). Review of critical factors affecting analytical characteristics  
485 of serological and molecular assays. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, 40, 53–73. doi:10.20506/rst.40.1.3208.

486 CHEUNG A., DUFOUR S., JONES G., KOSTOULAS P., STEVENSON M.A., SINGANALLUR N.B. & FIRESTONE S.M.  
487 (2021). Bayesian latent class analysis when the reference test is imperfect. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, 40,  
488 271–286. doi:10.20506/rst.40.1.3224

489 JOHNSON P. & CABUANG I. (2021). Proficiency testing and ring trials. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, 40, 189–  
490 203. <https://doi.org/10.20506/rst.40.1.3217>

491 HEUER C. & STEVENSON M.A. (2021). Diagnostic test validation studies when there is a perfect reference  
492 standard. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, 40, 261–270. doi:10.20506/rst.40.1.3223

493 REISING M.M., TONG C., HARRIS B., TOOHEY-KURTH K.L., CROSSLEY B., MULROONEY D., TALLMADGE R.L.,  
494 SCHUMANN K.R., LOCK, A.B. & LOIACONO C.M. (2021). A review of guidelines for evaluating a minor modification  
495 to a validated assay. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz.*, 40, 217–226. doi:10.20506/rst.40.1.3219

496 WATSON J.W., CLARK G.A. & WILLIAMS D.T. (2021). The value of virtual biobanks for transparency purposes  
497 with respect to reagents and samples used during test development and validation. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int.*  
498 *Epiz.*, 40, 253–259. doi:10.20506/rst.40.1.3222.

499 WAUGH C. & CLARK G. (2021). Factors affecting test reproducibility among laboratories. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off.*  
500 *Int. Epiz.*, 40, 131–143. doi:10.20506/rst.40.1.3213

501 \*  
502 \* \*

503 **NB:** There is a WOAHA Collaborating Centre for  
504 Diagnostic Test Validation Science in the Asia-Pacific Region (please consult the WOAHA Web site:  
505 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/collaborating-centres/#ui-id-3>).  
506 Please contact the WOAHA Collaborating Centre for any further information on validation.

507 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 2014.

## Annexe 8. Chapter 3.1.5. 'Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever'

### CHAPTER 3.1.5.

## CRIMEAN–CONGO HAEMORRHAGIC FEVER

---

### SUMMARY

*Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever virus (CCHFV) of the genus Orthonairovirus of the family Nairoviridae causes a zoonotic disease in many countries of Asia, Africa, the Middle East and south-eastern Europe. As the distribution of CCHFV coincides with the distribution of its main vector, ticks of the genus Hyalomma, the spread of infected ticks into new, unaffected areas facilitates the spread of the virus. The virus circulates in a tick–vertebrate–tick cycle, but can also be transmitted horizontally and vertically within the tick population. Hyalomma ticks infest a wide spectrum of different wildlife species, e.g. deer and hares, and free-ranging livestock animals, e.g. goat, cattle, and sheep. Many birds are resistant to infection, but ostriches appear to be more susceptible. Viraemia in livestock is short-lived, and of low intensity. These animals play a crucial role in the life cycle of ticks, and in the transmission and amplification of the virus and are, therefore, in the focus of veterinary public health. As animals do not develop clinical signs, CCHFV infections have no effect on the economic burden regarding livestock animal production. In contrast to animals, infections of humans can result in the development of a severe disease, Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever (CCHF).*

*Every year, more than 1000 human CCHF cases are reported with case fatality rates of 5–80% depending on the virus strain and other local factors. The pathogenesis of the disease in humans is not well understood. Most people become infected by tick bites and by crushing infected ticks, but infection is also possible through contact with blood and other body fluids of viraemic animals, for example in slaughterhouses. As CCHFV also has the potential to be transmitted directly from human-to-human, nosocomial outbreaks have been reported.*

*There is no approved CCHF vaccine available and therapy is restricted to treatment of the symptoms. Health education and information on prevention and behavioural measures are most important in order to enhance public risk perception and, therefore, decrease the probability of infections. Thus the identification of endemic areas is crucial for focused and targeted implementation of public health measures. Serological screening of ruminants allows CCHFV-affected areas to be identified, as antibody prevalence in animals is a good indicator of local virus circulation. Treatment with tick repellents can be quite effective in reducing the tick infestation of animals. To protect laboratory staff, handling of CCHFV infectious materials should only be carried out at an appropriate biocontainment level.*

**Detection and identification of agent:** *Only a single virus serotype is known to date although sequencing analysis indicates considerable genetic diversity. CCHFV has morphological and physiochemical properties typical of the family Nairoviridae. The virus has a single-stranded, negative-sense RNA genome consisting of three segments: L (large), M (medium) and S (small), each of which is contained in a separate nucleocapsid within the virion. The virus can be isolated from serum or plasma samples collected during the febrile or viraemic stage of infection, or from liver of infected animals. Primary isolations are made by inoculation of several tissue cultures, commonly African green monkey kidney (Vero) cells. For identification and characterisation of the virus, conventional and real-time reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (PCR) can be used. As infections of animals remain clinically unapparent, the likelihood of isolating virus from a viraemic animal is very low.*

44 **Serological tests:** Type-specific antibodies are demonstrable by indirect immunofluorescence  
45 test or by IgG-sandwich and IgM-capture enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. Commercial test  
46 systems are available for animal health; in addition a few in-house systems have been published  
47 or kits are used replacing the conjugate provided in kit with one that is suitable for the animal  
48 species to be screened for CCHFV-specific antibodies.

49 **Requirements for vaccines:** There is no vaccine available for animals.

## 50 A. INTRODUCTION

51 Crimean-Congo haemorrhagic fever (CCHF) is a zoonotic disease caused by a primarily tick-borne CCHF  
52 virus (CCHFV) of the genus *Orthonairovirus* of the family *Nairoviridae*, order *Bunyavirales*. CCHFV possesses  
53 a negative-sense RNA genome consisting of three segments, L (large), M (medium) and S (small) each  
54 contained in a separate nucleocapsid within the virion. All orthonairoviruses are believed to be transmitted by  
55 either ixodid or argasid ticks, and only three are known to be pathogenic to humans, namely CCHF, Dugbe  
56 and Nairobi sheep disease viruses (Swanepoel & Burt, 2004; Swanepoel & Paweska, 2011; Whitehouse,  
57 2004). CCHFV can be grown in several tick cell lines derived from both a natural vector (*Hyalomma anatolicum*)  
58 and other tick species not implicated in natural transmission of the virus (Bell-Sakyiet *et al.*, 2012).

59 The virus from an outbreak of “Crimean haemorrhagic fever” in the Crimean Peninsula in 1944 was not isolated  
60 or characterised until 1967. “Congo haemorrhagic fever” virus, isolated from a patient in the former Zaire (now  
61 Democratic Republic of the Congo) in 1956, was shown in 1969 to be the same virus. As a consequence the  
62 names of both countries have been used in combination to describe the disease (Hoogstraal, 1979).  
63 Distribution of the virus reflects the broad distribution of *Hyalomma* ticks, the predominant vector of the virus  
64 (Avsic-Zupanc, 2007; Grard *et al.*, 2011; Papa *et al.*, 2011; Swanepoel & Paweska, 2011).

65 The natural cycle of CCHFV includes transovarial and transstadial transmission among ticks and a tick-  
66 vertebrate-tick cycle involving a variety of wild and domestic animals. Infection can also be transferred between  
67 infected and uninfected ticks during co-feeding on a host; so called ‘non-viraemic transmission’ phenomenon.  
68 *Hyalomma* ticks feed on a variety of domestic ruminants (sheep, goats, and cattle), and wild herbivores, hares,  
69 hedgehogs, and certain rodents. CCHFV infection in animals was reviewed by Nalca & Whitehouse (2007).  
70 Experimental infections of wild animals and livestock with CCHFV were reviewed by Spengler *et al.* (2016).  
71 Although animal infections are generally subclinical, the associated viraemia levels are sufficient to enable  
72 virus transmission to uninfected ticks (Swanepoel & Burt, 2004; Swanepoel & Paweska, 2011). Many birds are  
73 resistant to infection, but ostriches appear to be more susceptible than other bird species (Swanepoel *et al.*,  
74 1998). Although they do not appear to become viraemic, ground feeding birds may act as a vehicle for spread  
75 of CCHFV infected ticks. Results from serological surveys conducted in Africa and Eurasia indicate extensive  
76 circulation of the virus in livestock and wild vertebrates (Swanepoel & Burt, 2004).


77 Humans acquire infection from tick bites, or from contact with infected blood or tissues from livestock or human  
78 patients. After incubation humans can develop a severe disease with a prehaemorrhagic phase, a  
79 haemorrhagic phase, and a convalescence period. Haemorrhagic manifestations can range from petechiae to  
80 large haematomas. Bleeding can be observed in the nose, gastrointestinal system, uterus and urinary tract,  
81 and the respiratory tract, with a case fatality rate ranging from 5% to 80% (Ergonul, 2006; Yen *et al.*, 1985;  
82 Yilmaz *et al.*, 2008). The severity of CCHF in humans highlights the impact of this zoonotic disease on public  
83 health. Although CCHFV has no economic impact on livestock animal production, the serological screening of  
84 animal serum samples for CCHFV-specific antibodies is very important. As seroprevalence in animals is a  
85 good indicator for local virus circulation, such investigations allow identification of high-risk areas for human  
86 infection (Mertens *et al.*, 2013). Slaughterhouse workers, veterinarians, stockmen and others involved with the  
87 livestock industry should be made aware of the disease. They should take practical steps to limit or avoid  
88 exposure of naked skin to fresh blood and other animal tissues, and to avoid tick bites and handling ticks.  
89 Experiences from South Africa demonstrated that the use of repellents on animals before slaughter could  
90 reduce the numbers of infected slaughterhouse workers (Swanepoel *et al.*, 1998). The treatment of livestock  
91 in general can reduce the tick density among these animals and thus reduce the risk of tick bite in animal  
92 handlers (Mertens *et al.*, 2013). Such tick control by the use of acaricides is possible to some extent, but may  
93 be difficult to implement under extensive farming conditions. Inactivated mouse brain vaccine for the prevention  
94 of human infection has been used on a limited scale in Eastern Europe and the former USSR (Swanepoel &

95 Paweska, 2011). Progress in CCHFV vaccine development is being made with several different approaches  
 96 trialled to overcome current challenges (Dowall *et al.*, 2017).

97 Infectivity of CCHFV is destroyed by boiling or autoclaving and low concentrations of formalin or beta-  
 98 propriolactone. The virus is sensitive to lipid solvents. It is labile in infected tissues after death, presumably  
 99 due to a fall in pH, but infectivity is retained for a few days at ambient temperature in serum, and for up to 3  
 100 weeks at 4°C. Infectivity is stable at temperatures below –60°C (Swanepoel & Paweska, 2011). CCHFV should  
 101 be handled with appropriate biocontainment measures determined by risk analysis as described in Chapter  
 102 1.1.4 *Biosafety and biosecurity: Standard for managing biological risk in the veterinary laboratory and animal*  
 103 *facilities* (Palmer, 2011; Whitehouse, 2004).

## 104 B. DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES

105 **Table 1.** Diagnostic test formats for Crimean-Congo haemorrhagic fever virus infections in animals

| Method   | Purpose                                     |  |   |   |  |  |
|--|---|--|---|---|--|--|
|  | Populatio<br>n freedom<br>from<br>infection | Individual<br>animal freedom<br>from infection<br>prior to<br>movement               | Contribute<br>to<br>eradication<br>policies | Confirmatio<br>n of clinical<br>cases in<br>animals | Prevalence of<br>infection –<br>surveillance | Immune status in<br>individual animals<br>or populations<br>post-vaccination |
| <b>Detection and identification of the agent<sup>(a)</sup></b> |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| Real-time<br>RT-PCR  | –   | ++  | –   | +++ <sup>(b)</sup>                                  | + <sup>(c)</sup>                             | –  |
| Virus isolation in<br>cell culture                             | –   | –  | –   | + <sup>(b)</sup>                                    | –  | –  |
| <b>Detection of immune response</b>                            |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| IgG ELISA  | +++   | +  | –   | ++ <sup>(d)</sup>                                   | +++  | –  |
| Competitive ELISA  | +++   | +  | –   | ++ <sup>(d)</sup>                                   | +++  | –  |
| IgM ELISA  | –   | ++   | –   | ++ <sup>(e)</sup>                                   | –  | –  |

106 Key: +++ = recommended for this purpose; ++ recommended but has limitations;  
 107 + = suitable in very limited circumstances; – = not appropriate for this purpose.

108 RT-PCR = reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction; ELISA = enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay.

109 <sup>(a)</sup>A combination of agent identification methods applied on the same clinical sample is recommended.

110 <sup>(b)</sup>Molecular testing/isolation can be used to confirm acute infection in rare cases in animals showing  
 111 clinical signs as viraemia tends to be transient.

112 <sup>(c)</sup>RT-PCR is used for the screening of tick populations in the context of surveillance studies.

113 <sup>(d)</sup>Serological evidence of active infection with CCHFV has been demonstrated by seroconversion based on a rise in total or IgG  
 114 antibody titres on samples taken at 2–4 weeks apart.

115 <sup>(e)</sup>Serological evidence of active infection with CCHFV has been demonstrated by the detection of IgM antibodies specific to

116 CCHFV infection causes only a mild fever in domestic and wild vertebrate animals with a detectable viraemia  
 117 of up to 2 weeks (Gonzalez *et al.*, 1998; Gunes *et al.*, 2011). Similarly infected ostriches develop only low and  
 118 short-lived viraemia and no clinical signs (Swanepoel & Burt, 2004). Therefore, recent infections in animals  
 119 are rarely diagnosed and methods such as polymerase chain reaction (PCR), virus isolation in cell culture and  
 120 IgM detection by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) are mainly used in human CCHF diagnostics  
 121 or in the special case that an animal has to be classified as CCHFV free. For prevalence analysis and for  
 122 determination of whether CCHFV is circulating in a country, methods for the detection of IgG antibodies are  
 123 preferred (Table 1). If there is any possibility or suspicion that diagnostic samples could be contaminated with  
 124 CCHFV, they should be handled under an adequate biosafety level and all persons dealing with those samples  
 125 should be aware of the possible risk and should use personal protective equipment to avoid human infections.



## 126 **1. Detection and identification of the agent**

127 For testing animals for viraemia, rapid diagnosis can be achieved by detection of viral nucleic acid in serum or  
128 plasma using conventional (Burt *et al.*, 1998) or real-time reverse transcription (RT-) PCR (Drosten *et al.*, 2002;  
129 Duh *et al.*, 2006; Koehler *et al.*, 2018; Negredo *et al.*, 2017; Sas *et al.*, 2018; Wolfel *et al.*, 2007), or by  
130 demonstration of viral antigen (Shepherd *et al.*, 1988). Specimens to be submitted for laboratory confirmation  
131 of CCHF include blood and liver samples. Because of the risk of laboratory-acquired infections, work with  
132 CCHFV should be conducted in appropriate biosafety facilities.

133 The virus can be isolated from serum and organ suspensions in a wide variety of cell cultures, including Vero,  
134 LLC-MK2, SW-13, BSR-T7/5, CER and BHK21 cells, and identified by immunofluorescence using specific  
135 antibodies. Isolation and identification of virus can be achieved in 1–5 days, but cell cultures lack sensitivity  
136 and usually only detect high concentrations of virus present in the blood.

### 137 **1.1. Virus isolation in cell culture**

138 CCHFV can be isolated in mammalian cell cultures. Vero cells are commonly used, usually yielding  
139 an isolate between 1 and 5 days post-inoculation (p.i). CCHFV is poorly cytopathic and thus infectivity  
140 is titrated by demonstration of immunofluorescence in infected cells (Shepherd *et al.*, 1986). SW-13  
141 cell line has also been used extensively for virus isolation, producing plaques within 4 days (p.i.).  
142 Identification of a CCHFV isolate has to be confirmed by immunofluorescence or molecular  
143 techniques (Burt *et al.*, 1998; Shepherd *et al.*, 1986).

#### 144 **1.1.1. Test procedure**

- 145 i) Susceptible cell lines include Vero-E6, BHK-21, LLC-MK2 and SW-13 cells. Inoculate  
146 80% confluent monolayers of the preferred cell line with the specimen. The volume of  
147 specimen to be used depends on the size of the culture vessel (i.e. 25 cm<sup>2</sup> culture flask  
148 or 6- or 24-well tissue culture plate). The specimen volume should be sufficient to cover  
149 the cell monolayer. Samples of insufficient volumes can be diluted with tissue culture  
150 medium to prepare sufficient inoculation volume.
- 151 ii) Adsorb the specimen for 1 hour at 37°C.
- 152 iii) Remove inoculum. Add fresh tissue culture medium containing 2% fetal calf serum and  
153 other required additives, as per specific medium and cell line requirements.
- 154 iv) Incubate at 37°C and 5% CO<sub>2</sub> for 4–7 days.
- 155 v) Test supernatant for presence of CCHFV viral RNA using real-time RT-PCR as described  
156 below, or perform immunofluorescence assay on cell scrapings.
- 157 vi) Isolates of CCHFV from clinical specimens cause no microscopically recognisable  
158 cytopathic effects (CPE) in most of these cell lines.

### 159 **1.2. Nucleic acid detection**

160 Molecular-based diagnostic assays, such as RT-PCR, serve as the front-line tool in the diagnosis of  
161 CCHF, as well as other viral haemorrhagic fevers (Drosten *et al.*, 2003). The benefit of molecular  
162 diagnostic assays is their rapidity compared to virus culture, often allowing a presumptive diagnosis to  
163 be reported within a few hours after receiving a specimen (Burt *et al.*, 1998). The RT-PCR is a sensitive  
164 method for diagnosis, but because of the genetic diversity of CCHFV, there might be some challenges  
165 with regard to design of primers or probes that allow detection of all circulating strains of the virus.  
166 Indeed, based on geographical origin and phylogenetic analyses of the S gene segment, CCHFV has  
167 previously been classified into nine geographical clades – four predominantly diffused in Africa, three  
168 in Europe, and two in Asia. Several real-time RT-PCR assays that detect strains from different  
169 geographical locations have been evaluated (Gruber *et al.*, 2019). While some assays have been  
170 shown to be highly sensitive, detecting as little as 10 viral RNA copies per ml of plasma, it is necessary  
171 to combine at least two molecular assays to ensure detection of the different CCHFV clades (Gruber  
172 *et al.*, 2019). The best assay combination(s) with the best detection efficacy for each CCHFV clade,  
173 on the basis of all CCHFV sequences known at the time of the study, are shown in Table 2. In  
174 addition, a low-density macroarray has been extensively validated in clinical specimens collected from



175  
176

confirmed cases of CCHF over 20 years by a WHO reference laboratory. It was shown to detect as few as 6.3 genome copies per reaction (Wolfel *et al.*, 2009).

177

**Table 2. Molecular assay combinations for the detection of CCHFV-specific nucleic acid**

| Clade    | Molecular assay combinations | Primer and probe names (5' → 3' sequence)   |
|----------|------------------------------|---|
| Africa 1 | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCRRealP1 (TCT-TYG-CHG-ATG-AYT-CHT-TYC)<br>Rev CCRRealP2 (GGG-ATK-GTY-CCR-AAG-CA)<br>Probe (ACA-SRA-TCT-AYA-TGC-AYC-CTG-C)  |
| Africa 2 | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCRRealP1 (TCT-TYG-CHG-ATG-AYT-CHT-TYC)<br>Rev CCRRealP2 (GGG-ATK-GTY-CCR-AAG-CA)<br>Probe (ACA-SRA-TCT-AYA-TGC-AYC-CTG-C)  |
|          | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCHF-SF2 (GGA-VTG-GTG-VAG-GGA-RTT-TG)<br>Rev CCHF-SR2 (CAD-GGT-GGR-TTG-AAR-GC)<br>Fwd CCHF-N2 (CAA-RGG-CAA-RTA-CAT-MAT)   |
| Africa 3 | Nested RT-PCR                | Fwd CCHF1 (CTG-CTC-TGG-TGG-AGG-CAA-CAA)<br>Rev CCHF2_5 (TGG-GTT-GAA-GGC-CAT-GAT-GTA-T)<br>Nested Fwd CCHFn15 (AGG-TTT-CCG-TGT-CAA-TGC-AAA)<br>Nested Rev CCHFn25 (TTG-ACA-AAC-TCC-CTG-CAC-CAG-T)                                    |
|          | Nested RT-PCR                | Fwd CrCon1+ (RWA-AYG-GRC-TTR-TGG-AYA-CYT-TCA-C)<br>Rev CrCon1- (TRG-CAA-GRC-CKG-TWG-CRA-CWA-GWG-C)<br>Nested Fwd CriCon2+ (ART-GGA-GRA-ARG-AYA-TWG-GYT-TYC-G)<br>Nested Rev CriCon2- (CYT-TGA-YRA-AYT-CYC-TRC-ACC-ABT-C)            |
| Africa 4 | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCRRealP1 (TCT-TYG-CHG-ATG-AYT-CHT-TYC)<br>Rev CCRRealP2 (GGG-ATK-GTY-CCR-AAG-CA)<br>Probe (ACA-SRA-TCT-AYA-TGC-AYC-CTG-C)  |
|          | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCHF-III (CAA-GAG-GTA-CCA-AGA-AAA-TGA-AGA-AGG-C)<br>Rev CCHF-III-r (GCC-ACG-GGG-ATT-GTC-CCA-AAG-CAG-AC)<br>Probe CCHFprobe-1 (ATC-TAC-ATG-CAC-CCT-GCY-GTG-YTG-ACA)<br>Probe CCHFprobe-2 (TTC-TTC-CCC-CAC-TTC-ATT-GGR-GTG-CTC-A) |
|          | Nested PCR                   | Fwd CCF-115F (AAR-GGA-AAT-GGA-CTT-RTG-GA)<br>Fwd CCF-131F (TGG-AYA-CYT-TCA-CAA-ACT-CC)<br>Rev CCF-759R (GCA-AGG-CCT-GTW-GCR-ACA-AGT-GC)   |
| Asia 1   | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CC1a_for (GTG-CCA-CTG-ATG-ATG-CAC-AAA-AGG-ATT-CCA-TCT)<br>Rev CC1a_rev (GTG-CCA-CTG-ATG-ATG-CAC-AAA-AGG-ATT-CCA-TCT)<br>Probe CCHF-01 (CAA-CAG-GCT-GCT-CTC-AAG-TGG-AG)  |
|          | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCHF-SF2 (GGA-VTG-GTG-VAG-GGA-RTT-TG)<br>Rev CCHF-SR2 (CAD-GGT-GGR-TTG-AAR-GC)<br>Probe CCHF-N2 (CAA-RGG-CAA-RTA-CAT-MAT)   |
|          | Nested PCR                   | Fwd CCF-115F (AAR-GGA-AAT-GGA-CTT-RTG-GA)<br>Fwd CCF-131F (TGG-AYA-CYT-TCA-CAA-ACT-CC)<br>Rev CCF-759R (GCA-AGG-CCT-GTW-GCR-ACA-AGT-GC)   |
| Asia 2   | Sybrgreen Real-time RT-PCR   | Fwd (GAT-GAG-ATG-AAC-AAG-TGG-TTT-GAA-GA)<br>Rev (GTA-GAT-GGA-ATC-CTT-TTG-TGC-ATC-AT)  |
|          | RT-PCR                       | Fwd CCS (ATG-CAG-GAA-CCA-TTA-ART-CTT-GGG-A)<br>Rev 1 CCAS1 (CTA-ATC-ATA-TCT-GAC-AAC-ATT-TC)<br>Rev 2 CCAS2 (CTA-ATC-ATG-TCT-GAC-AGC-ATC-TC)   |
| Europe 1 | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCRRealP1 (TCT-TYG-CHG-ATG-AYT-CHT-TYC)<br>Rev CCRRealP2 (GGG-ATK-GTY-CCR-AAG-CA)<br>Probe (ACA-SRA-TCT-AYA-TGC-AYC-CTG-C)  |
|          | Nested RT-PCR                | Fwd CCF-115F (AAR-GGA-AAT-GGA-CTT-RTG-GA)   |

| Clade    | Molecular assay combinations | Primer and probe names (5' → 3' sequence)   |
|----------|------------------------------|---|
|          |                              | Fwd CCF-131F (TGG-AYA-CYT-TCA-CAA-ACT-CC)<br>Rev CCF-759R (GCA-AGG-CCT-GTW-GCR-ACA-AGT-GC)  |
| Europe 2 | Nested RT-PCR                | Fwd CrCon1+ (RWA-AYG-GRC-TTR-TGG-AYA-CYT-TCA-C)<br>Rev CrCon1- (TRG-CAA-GRC-CKG-TWG-CRA-CWA-GWG-C)<br>Fwd CriCon2+ (ART-GGA-GRA-ARG-AYA-TWG-GYT-TYC-G)<br>Rev CriCon2- (CYT-TGA-YRA-AYT-CYC-TRC-ACC-ABT-C)            |
| Europe 3 | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCRRealP1 (TCT-TYG-CHG-ATG-AYT-CHT-TYC)<br>Rev CCRRealP2 (GGG-ATK-GTY-CCR-AAG-CA)<br>Probe (ACA-SRA-TCT-AYA-TGC-AYC-CTG-C)  |
|          | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCRRealP1 (TCT-TYG-CHG-ATG-AYT-CHT-TYC)<br>Rev CCRRealP2 (GGG-ATK-GTY-CCR-AAG-CA)<br>Probe (ACA-SRA-TCT-AYA-TGC-AYC-CTG-C)  |
|          | Nested RT-PCR                | Fwd CrCon1+ (RWA-AYG-GRC-TTR-TGG-AYA-CYT-TCA-C)<br>Rev CrCon1- (TRG-CAA-GRC-CKG-TWG-CRA-CWA-GWG-C)<br>Rev Fwd CriCon2+ (ART-GGA-GRA-ARG-AYA-TWG-GYT-TYC-G)<br>Nested Rev CriCon2- (CYT-TGA-YRA-AYT-CYC-TRC-ACC-ABT-C) |
| All      | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CCHF-SF2 (GGA-VTG-GTG-VAG-GGA-RTT-TG)<br>Rev CCHF-SR2 (CAD-GGT-GGR-TTG-AAR-GC)<br>Probe CCHF-N2 (CAA-RGG-CAA-RTA-CAT-MAT)   |
|          | RT-PCR                       | Fwd CCS (ATG-CAG-GAA-CCA-TTA-ART-CTT-GGG-A)<br>Rev 1 CCAS1 (CTA-ATC-ATA-TCT-GAC-AAC-ATT-TC)<br>Rev 2 CCAS2 (CTA-ATC-ATG-TCT-GAC-AGC-ATC-TC)   |
|          | Real-time RT-PCR             | Fwd CC1a_for (GTG-CCA-CTG-ATG-ATG-CAC-AAA-AGG-ATT-CCA-TCT)<br>Rev CC1a_rev (GTG-CCA-CTG-ATG-ATG-CAC-AAA-AGG-ATT-CCA-TCT)<br>Probe CCHF-01 (CAA-CAG-GCT-GCT-CTC-AAG-TGG-AG)  |

178 (Data and table modified from Gruber *et al.* 2019)

## 179 2. Serological tests

180 Virus neutralisation assays, generally considered to be highly specific, are rarely used for CCHFV diagnosis.  
181 Members of the *Orthonaviridae* genus generally induce a weaker neutralising antibody response than  
182 members of other genera in the family *Nairoviridae*. Another drawback is the necessity to perform this assay  
183 in high biosafety containment because it uses live virus (Burt *et al.*, 1994; Rodriguez *et al.*, 1997).

184 Currently, there are only a few CCHFV commercial kits for IgM or IgG by ELISA or immunofluorescence (IFA).  
185 These are all designed for the human diagnostic market. However, it is possible to adapt these commercial  
186 ELISAs and IFAs for serological testing in animals. In addition, some in-house ELISAs have been published  
187 for the detection of CCHFV-specific antibodies in animals.

188 Diagnostic performance for humans have been compared between the methods using sensitivity, specificity,  
189 concordance and degree of agreement with particular focus on the phase of the infection (Emmerich *et al.*,  
190 2021). Available serological test systems detect anti-CCHFV IgM and IgG antibodies accurately, but their  
191 diagnostic performance varies with respect to the phase of the infection. In the early and convalescent phases  
192 of infection, the sensitivity for detecting specific IgG antibodies differed for the ELISA. Both test systems based  
193 on immunofluorescence showed an identical sensitivity for detection of anti-CCHFV IgM antibodies in acute  
194 and convalescent phases of infection.

195 IgM antibodies in livestock (sheep, goat and cattle) can be detected by using an IgM-capture ELISA. IgG  
196 antibodies can be detected by an IgG-sandwich or indirect ELISA, and total antibodies can be detected by  
197 competition ELISA. The benefit of competitive ELISA is the capacity to investigate different animal species,  
198 because they are host species independent. Commercial kits for the detection of CCHFV-specific antibodies  
199 or the detection of viral antigen are available. The limiting factor for the replication of these protocols in other  
200 laboratories is the availability of antigens and (where relevant) specified monoclonal antibodies. Most of the

201 tests described for livestock and wild animals have not undergone a formal validation process (Mertens *et al.*,  
202 2013). One of the biggest challenges for such validation studies is the availability of an adequate number of  
203 positive well characterised control samples.

204 For information on the availability of reference reagents for use in veterinary diagnostic laboratories, contact  
205 the WOAHC Collaborating Centres for Zoonoses in Europe and in Asia-Pacific.

## 206 C. REQUIREMENTS FOR VACCINES

207 There is no vaccine available for animals.

## 208 REFERENCES

209 AVSIC-ZUPANC T. (2007). Epidemiology of Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever in the Balkans. *In: Crimean–*  
210 *Congo Hemorrhagic Fever, a Global Perspective*, Ergonul O. & Whitehouse C.A., eds. Springer: Dordrecht,  
211 Netherlands, 75–88.

212 BELL-SAKYI L., KOHL D., BENTE D.A. & FAZAKERLEY J.F. (2012). Tick cell lines for study of Crimean–Congo  
213 hemorrhagic fever virus and other arboviruses. *Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis.*, **12**, 769–781.

214 BURT F.J., LEMAN P.A., ABBOTT J.C. & SWANEPOEL R. (1994). Serodiagnosis of Crimean-Congo haemorrhagic  
215 fever. *Epidemiol. Infect.*, **113**, 551–562. Doi: 10.1017/s0950268800068576

216 BURT F.J., LEMAN P.A., SMITH J.F. & SWANEPOEL R. (1998). The use of a reverse transcription-polymerase chain  
217 reaction for the detection of viral nucleic acid in the diagnosis of Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever. *J. Virol.*  
218 *Methods*, **70**, 129–37.

219 DROSTEN C., GOTTING S., SCHILLING S., ASPER M., PANNING M., SCMITZ H. & GUNTER S. (2002). Rapid detection  
220 and quantification of RNA of Ebola and Marburg viruses, Lassa virus, Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever  
221 virus, Rift Valley fever virus, dengue virus, and yellow fever virus by real-time transcription-PCR. *J. Clin.*  
222 *Microbiol.*, **40**, 2323–2340.

223 DROSTEN C., KUMMERER B.M., SCMITZ H. & GUNTER S. (2003). Molecular diagnosis of viral hemorrhagic fevers.  
224 *Antiviral Res.*, **57**, 61–87.

225 DUH D., SAKSIDA A., PETROVEC M., DEDUSHAJ I. & AVSIC-ZUPANC T. (2006). Novel one-step real-time RT-PCR  
226 assay for rapid and specific diagnosis of Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever encountered in the Balkans. *J.*  
227 *Virol. Methods*, **133**, 175–179.

228 EMMERICH P., MIKA A., VON POSSEL R., RACKOW A., LIU Y., SCHMITZ H., GÜNTHER S., SHERIFI K., HALILI B., JAKUPI  
229 X., BERISHA L., AHMETI S. & DESCHERMEIER C. (2018). Sensitive and specific detection of Crimean–Congo  
230 Hemorrhagic Fever  
231 Virus (CCHFV)-Specific IgM and IgG antibodies in human sera using recombinant CCHFV nucleoprotein as  
232 antigen in  $\mu$ -capture and IgG immune complex (IC) ELISA tests. *PLoS Negl. Trop. Dis.*, **12**(3):e0006366. doi:  
233 10.1371/journal.pntd.0006366.

234 EMMERICH P., VON POSSEL R., DESCHERMEIER C., AHMETI S., BERISHA L., HALILI B., JAKUPI X., SHERIFI K.,  
235 MESSING C. & BORCHARDT-LOHÖLTER V. (2021). Comparison of diagnostic performances of ten different  
236 immunoassays detecting anti-CCHFV IgM and IgG antibodies from acute to subsided phases of Crimean–  
237 Congo hemorrhagic fever. *PLoS Negl. Trop. Dis.*, **15** (3):e0009280.

238 ERGONUL O. (2006). Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever. *Lancet Infect. Dis.*, **6**, 203–214.

239 GONZALEZ J.-P., CAMICAS J.-L., COMET J.-P. & WILSON M.L. (1998). Biological and clinical responses of West  
240 African sheep to Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever virus experimental infection. *Res. Virol.*, **149**, 445–455.

- 241 GUNES T., POYRAZ O., VATANSEVER Z. (2011). Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever virus in ticks collected from  
242 humans, livestock, and picnic sites in the hyperendemic region of Turkey. *Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis.*, **11**,  
243 1411–1416.
- 244 GRARD G., DREXLER J.F., FAIR J., MUYEMBE J.-J., WOLFE N.D., DROSTEN C. & LEROY E.M. (2011). Re-emergence  
245 of  
246 Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever virus in Central Africa. *PLoS Negl. Trop. Dis.*, **5**(10): e1350.  
247 doi:10.1371/journal.pntd.0001350.
- 248 GRUBER C., BARTOLINI B., CASTILLETI C., MIRAZIMI A., HEWSON R., CHRISTOVA I., AVŠIČ T., GRUNOW R., PAPA A.,  
249 SÁNCHEZ-SECO M. P., KOPMANS M., IPPOLITO G., CAPOBIANCHI M. R., REUSKEN C. & DI CARO A. (2019).  
250 Geographical Variability Affects CCHFV Detection by RT-PCR: A Tool for *In-Silico* Evaluation of Molecular  
251 Assays. *Viruses*, **11**, 953.
- 252 GULCE-İZ S., ELALDI N., CAN H Şahar E.A., Karakavuk M., Gül A., Kumoğlu G.Ö., Döşkaya A.D., Gürüz A.Y.,  
253 Özdarendeli A., Felgner P.L., Davies H. & Döşkaya M. (2021). Development of a novel recombinant ELISA for  
254 the detection of Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever virus IgG antibodies. *Sci. Rep.*, **11**, 5936.  
255 doi:10.1038/s41598-021-85323-1.
- 256 HOOGSTRAAL H. (1979). The epidemiology of tick-borne Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever in Asia, Europe  
257 and Africa. *J. Med. Entomol.*, **15**, 307–417.
- 258 KOEHLER J.W., DELP K.L., HALL A.T., OLSCHNER S.P., KEARNEY B.J., GARRISON A.R., ALTAMURA L.A., ROSSI C.A.  
259 & MINOGUE T.D. (2018). Sequence Optimized Real-Time Reverse Transcription Polymerase Chain Reaction  
260 Assay for Detection of Crimean–Congo Hemorrhagic Fever Virus. *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, **98**, 211–215.
- 261 MERTENS M., SCHMIDT K., OZKUL A. & GROSCUP M.H. (2013). The impact of Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic  
262 fever virus on public health. *Antiviral Res.*, **98**, 248–260.
- 263 NALCA A. & WHITEHOUSE C.A. (2007). Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever virus infection among animals. *In*:  
264 Crimean–Congo Hemorrhagic Fever: A Global Perspective, Ergonul O. & Whitehouse C.A., eds. Springer:  
265 Dordrecht, Netherlands, 155–165.
- 266 NEGREDO A., DE LA CALLE-PRieto F., PALENCIA-HERREJÓN E., MORA-RILLO M., ASTRAY-MOCHALES J., SÁNCHEZ-  
267 SECO M.P., BERMEJO LOPEZ E., MENÁRGUEZ J., FERNÁNDEZ-CRUZ A., SÁNCHEZ-ARTOLA B., KEOUGH-DELGADO E.,  
268 RAMÍREZ DE ARELLANO E., LASALA F., MILLA J., FRAILE J.L., ORDOBÁS GAVÍN M., MARTINEZ DE LA GÁNDARA A.,  
269 LÓPEZ PEREZ L., DIAZ-DIAZ D., LÓPEZ-GARCÍA M.A., DELGADO-JIMENEZ P., MARTÍN-QUIRÓS A., TRIGO E., FIGUEIRA  
270 J.C., MANZANARES J., RODRIGUEZ-BAENA E., GARCIA-COMAS L., RODRÍGUEZ-FRAGA O., GARCÍA-ARENZANA N.,  
271 FERNÁNDEZ-DÍAZ M.V., CORNEJO V.M., EMMERICH P., SCHMIDT-CHANASIT J., ARRIBAS J.R., CRIMEAN CONGO  
272 HEMORRHAGIC FEVER@MADRID WORKING GROUP (2017). Autochthonous Crimean–Congo Hemorrhagic Fever  
273 in Spain. *N. Engl. J. Med.*, **377**, 154–161. 10.1056/NEJMoa1615162.
- 274 PALMER S. (2011). Deliberate release of zoonotic agents. *In*: Oxford Textbook of Zoonosis: Biology, Clinical  
275 Practise and Public Health Control, Second Edition, Palmer S.R., Soulsby L., Torgerson P.R. & Brown D.W.G.,  
276 eds. Oxford University Press, UK, p. 1214.
- 277 PAPA A., TZALA E. & MALTEZOU H. (2011). Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever virus, Northeastern Greece.  
278 *Emerg. Infect. Dis.*, **17**, 141–143.
- 279 RODRIGUEZ L.L., MAUPIN G.O., KSIAZEK T.G., ROLLIN P.E., KHAN A.S., SCHWARZ T.F., LOFTS R.S., SMITH J.F.,  
280 NOOR A.M., PETERS C.J. & NICHOL S.T. (1997). Molecular investigation of a multisource outbreak of Crimean–  
281 Congo hemorrhagic fever in the United Arab Emirates. *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, **57**, 512–518.
- 282 SAS M.A., VINA-RODRIGUEZ A., MERTENS M., EIDEN M., EMMERICH P., CHAINTOUTIS S.C., MIRAZIMI A. & GROSCUP  
283 M.H. (2018). A one-step multiplex real-time RT-PCR for the universal detection of all currently known CCHFV  
284 genotypes. *J. Virol. Methods*, **255**, 38–43.

- 285 SHEPHERD A.J., SWANEPOEL R. & GILL D.E. (1988). Evaluation of enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and  
 286 reversed passive hemagglutination for detection of Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever virus antigen. *J. Clin.*  
 287 *Microbiol.*, **26**, 347–353.
- 288 SHEPHERD A.J., SWANEPOEL R., LEMAN P.A. & SHEPHERD S.P. (1986). Comparison of methods for isolation and  
 289 titration of Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **24**, 654–656.
- 290 SPENGLER J.R., ESTRADA-PEÑA A., GARRISON A.R., SCHMALJOHN C., SPIROPOULOU C.F., BERGERON É. & BENTE  
 291 D.A. (2016). A chronological review of experimental infection studies of the role of wild animals and livestock  
 292 in the maintenance and transmission of Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus. *Antiviral Res.*, **135**, 31–47.  
 293 doi: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2016.09.013.
- 294 SWANEPOEL R & BURT F.J. (2004). Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever. Second Edition. *In: Infectious*  
 295 *diseases of livestock with special reference to South Africa*, Coetzer J.A.W, Tustin R.C., eds. Cape Town:  
 296 Oxford University Press Southern Africa, pp. 1077–1085.
- 297 SWANEPOEL R., LEMAN P.A., BURT, F.J., JARDINE J., VERWOERD D.J., CAPUA I., BRUCKNER G.K. & BURGER W.P.  
 298 (1998). Experimental infection of ostriches with Crimean-Congo haemorrhagic fever virus. *Epidemiol. Infect.*,  
 299 **121**, 427–432.
- 300 SWANEPOEL R. & PAWESKA J.T. (2011). Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever. *In: Oxford Textbook of Zoonosis:*  
 301 *Biology, Clinical Practise and Public Health Control*, Second Edition. Palmer S.R., Soulsby L., Torgerson P.R.  
 302 & Brown D.W.G., eds. Oxford University Press, UK, pp. 287–293.
- 303 WHITEHOUSE C.A. (2004). Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever. *Antivir. Res.*, **64**, 145–160.
- 304 WOLFEL R., PAWESKA J.T., PETERSEN N., GROBBELAAR A.G., LEMAN P.A., HEWSON R., GEORGES-COURBOT, M.,  
 305 PAPA, A., GÜNTNER S. & DROSTEN C. (2007). Virus detection and monitoring of viral load in Crimean-Congo  
 306 hemorrhagic fever virus patients. *Emerg. Infect. Dis.*, **13**, 1097–1100.
- 307 WOLFEL R., PAWESKA J.T., PETERSEN N., GROBBELAAR A.G., LEMAN P.A., HEWSON R., GEORGES-COURBOT M.,  
 308 PAPA, A., HEISER V., PANNING M., GUNTER S. & DROSTEN C. (2009). Low-density microarray for rapid detection  
 309 and identification of Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever virus. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **47**, 1025–1030.
- 310 YEN Y.C., KONG L.X., LEE L., ZHANG Y.Q., LI F., CAI B.J. & GAO S.Y. (1985). Characteristics of Crimean–Congo  
 311 hemorrhagic fever virus (Xinjiang strain) in China. *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, **34**, 1179–1182.
- 312 YILMAZ G.R., BUZGAN T., TORUNOGLU M.A., SAFRAN A., IRMAK H., COM S., UYAR Y., CARHAN A., OZKAYA E. &  
 313 ERTEK M. (2008). A preliminary report on Crimean–Congo haemorrhagic fever in Turkey, March–June 2008.  
 314 *Euro Surveill.*, **13**.

315 \*

316 \* \*

317 **NB:** At the time of publication (2023) there was no WOA Reference Laboratory for Crimean–Congo  
 318 haemorrhagic fever (please consult the WOA Web site:  
 319 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3>).

320 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 2014. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED 2023.

## Annexe 9. Chapter 3.3.6. 'Avian tuberculosis'

### CHAPTER 3.3.6.

## AVIAN TUBERCULOSIS

---

Although the whole chapter was annexed, only Section C. 'Requirements for diagnostic biologicals' should have been. **NB:** as avian tuberculosis is not a listed disease, this chapter will be removed from the *Terrestrial Manual*; once adopted, the information on avian tuberculin production will be moved to Chapter 3.1.13 'Mammalian tuberculosis (infection with tuberculosis complex)'.

### C. REQUIREMENTS FOR DIAGNOSTIC BIOLOGICALS

#### 1. Background

No vaccines are available.

Avian tuberculin is a preparation of purified protein derivatives (PPD-A) made from the heat-treated products of growth of *M. a. avium*. It is used by intradermal injection to reveal delayed hypersensitivity ~~as a means of identifying to identify~~ birds infected with or sensitised to the same species of tubercle bacillus *Mycobacterium*. Importantly it is also used as an aid to differential diagnosis in the comparative intradermal tuberculin test for bovine tuberculosis (see Chapter 3.1.13). An international standard preparation of PPD-A is being developed by WOAH to replace the former WHO Standard<sup>1</sup>.

The general principles ~~as given~~ in Chapter 1.1.8 *Principles of veterinary vaccine production*, should be followed for injectable diagnostic biologicals such as tuberculin. The standards ~~set out~~ here and in chapter 1.1.8 are intended to be general in nature and may be supplemented by national and regional requirements.

#### 2. Outline of production and minimum requirements for tuberculin production

##### 2.1. Characteristics of the seed

##### 2.1.1. Biological characteristics of the master seed

Strains of *M. a. avium* used to prepare seed cultures should be purchased from a culture collection and identified as to species by appropriate tests. Several strains are recommended by for this purpose in different countries. For example, in the European Union (EU), for example, are, D4ER and TB56. Reference may also be made to are recommended. The relevant national recommendations should be followed. Globally there are commercial sources for PPD-A.

---

<sup>1</sup> PPD of *M. avium* tuberculin. WHO (1955) Technical Report Series, no.96, 11.



29 **2.1.2. Quality criteria (sterility, purity, freedom from extraneous agents)**

30 Seed cultures should be shown to be free from contaminating organisms and to be capable of  
31 producing tuberculin ~~with~~of sufficient potency. The necessary tests are described below.

32 **2.2. Method of manufacture**

33 **2.2.1. Procedure**

34 The seed material is kept as a stock of freeze-dried cultures. If the cultures have been grown  
35 on solid media, it will be necessary to adapt the organism to grow as a floating culture. This is  
36 most easily accomplished by incorporating a piece of potato in the flasks of liquid medium (e.g.  
37 Watson Reid's medium). When the culture has been adapted to a liquid medium, it can be  
38 maintained by a passage at 2–4-week intervals (Angus, 1978; Haagsma & Angus, 1995).

39 The organism is cultivated in modified Dorset-Henley's synthetic medium, then killed by  
40 heating in flowing steam and filtered to remove cells. The protein in the filtrate is precipitated  
41 chemically (ammonium sulphate or trichloroacetic acid ~~[TCA]~~ are used), washed, and  
42 resuspended. An antimicrobial preservative that does not give rise to false-positive reactions,  
43 such as phenol (not more than 0.5% [w/v]), may be added. Mercurial derivatives should not  
44 be used. Glycerol (not more than 10% [w/v]) or glucose (2.2% [w/v]) may be added as a  
45 stabiliser. The product is dispensed aseptically into sterile neutral glass containers, ~~which are~~  
46 then sealed to prevent contamination. The product may be freeze-dried.

47 **2.2.2. Requirements for ingredients**

48 The production culture substrate must be shown to ~~be capable of producing produce~~ a product  
49 that conforms to the ~~standards of the European Pharmacopoeia (2000–2024<sup>2</sup>)~~ standards or  
50 other international standards such as the WHO (WHO, 1987). It must be free from ingredients  
51 known to cause toxic or allergic reactions.

52 **2.2.3. In-process controls**

53 The production flasks, inoculated from suitable seed cultures, are incubated for the appropriate  
54 time period. Any flasks showing contamination or grossly abnormal growth should be  
55 discarded after autoclaving. As incubation proceeds, the surface growth of many cultures  
56 becomes moist and may sink into the medium or to the bottom of the flask. In PPD-A  
57 tuberculin, the pH of the dissolved precipitate (the so-called concentrated tuberculin) should  
58 be pH 6.6–6.7. The Kjeldahl method determines the protein level (total organic nitrogen) of the  
59 PPD-A concentrate ~~is determined by the Kjeldahl method~~. Total nitrogen and trichloroacetic  
60 acid precipitable nitrogen are usually compared.

61 **2.2.4. Final product batch tests**

62 i) Sterility

63 Sterility testing is generally performed according to the European Pharmacopoeia (~~2000~~  
64 2024) or other guidelines (see ~~also~~ Chapter 1.1.9 *Tests for sterility and freedom from*  
65 *contamination of biological materials intended for veterinary use*).

66 ii) Identity

67 One or more batches of tuberculin may be tested for specificity together with a standard  
68 preparation of bovine tuberculin by comparing the reactions produced in guinea-pigs  
69 sensitised with *M. bovis* using a procedure similar to that described in Section C.2.2.4.iv.  
70 ~~In guinea pigs sensitised with *M. bovis*~~. The potency of the preparation of avian tuberculin  
71 must be shown to be not more than 10% of the potency of the standard preparation of  
72 bovine tuberculin used in the potency test. The use of animals for this purpose should be  
73 reviewed and approved by your institution's ethical committee.

<sup>2</sup> [https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/234640?p\\_l\\_back\\_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dpurified%2Bprotein%2Bderivative](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/234640?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dpurified%2Bprotein%2Bderivative)

74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
  
94  
95  
96  
  
97  
98  
99  
100  
101  
102  
103  
104  
105  
106  
  
107  
  
108  
109  
  
110  
111  
112  
113  
114  
115  
116  
117  
118  
119  
120  
121  
  
122  
123  
124  
125

iii) Safety

Tuberculin PPD-A can be examined for freedom from living mycobacteria using the culture method described previously. This culture method, which does not require the use of animals, is used in many laboratories, and its use is encouraged over the use of animals for this purpose. ~~The following is the previously described method, using experimental animals to evaluate the safety of PPD. The use of animals for this purpose should be reviewed and approved by the institution's ethics committee. Two guinea-pigs, each weighing not less than 250 g and that have not been treated previously treated with any material that will interfere with the test, are injected subcutaneously with 0.5 ml of the tuberculin under test. No abnormal effects should occur within 7 days.~~

Tests on tuberculin for living mycobacteria may be performed either on the tuberculin immediately before it is dispensed into final containers or on samples taken from the final containers themselves. A sample of at least 10 ml must be taken and ~~this must be injected~~ intraperitoneally or subcutaneously into at least two guinea-pigs, dividing the volume to be tested equally between the guinea-pigs. It is desirable to take a larger sample, 50 ml, and to concentrate any residual mycobacteria by centrifugation or membrane filtration. The guinea-pigs are observed for at least 42 days and are examined macroscopically at post-mortem. Any lesions found are examined microscopically and by culture. Each filled container must be inspected before it is labelled, and any showing abnormalities must be discarded.

A test for the absence of toxic or irritant properties must be ~~carried out conducted~~ according to the ~~specifications of the~~ European Pharmacopoeia (2000–2024) specifications or the equivalent regulatory documents for each country or region.

To test for lack of sensitising effect, three guinea-pigs that have not previously been treated with any material that could interfere with the test are each injected intradermally on ~~each of three~~ occasions with the equivalent of 500 IU International units – one IU is equal to the biological activity 0.02 µg of PPD – of the preparation under test in a 0.1 ml volume. In the USA and Canada, the potency of the tuberculin is expressed as tuberculin unit (TU) rather than IU. One TU is also defined as 0.02 µgs of PPD. Each guinea-pig, together with ~~each of the~~ three control guinea-pigs that have not been injected previously, is injected intradermally 15–21 days after the third injection with the same dose of ~~the same~~ tuberculin. The reactions of the two groups of guinea-pigs should not be significantly different when measured 24–28 hours later.

iv) Batch potency

The potency of avian tuberculin is determined in guinea-pigs sensitised with *M. a. avium*, ~~by comparison compared~~ with a standard preparation calibrated in IU or TU.

Use no fewer than nine albino guinea-pigs, each weighing 400–600 g. Sensitise the guinea-pigs by administering ~~to each, by deep intramuscular injection, a suitable dose of inactivated or live M. a. avium to each by deep intramuscular injection.~~ The test is performed between 4 and 6 weeks later ~~as follows: Shave. Briefly, have~~ the guinea-pigs' flanks shaved (an area large enough so as to provide space for three-to-four injections on each side). Prepare at least three dilutions of the tuberculin under test and at least three dilutions of the standard preparation in an isotonic buffer solution containing 0.0005% (w/v) polysorbate 80 (Tween 80). Choose the dilutions so that the reactions produced have diameters of not less than 8 mm and not more than 25 mm. Allocate the dilutions to the injection sites randomly ~~according to using~~ a Latin square design. The dilutions correspond to 0.001, 0.0002, and 0.00004 mg of protein in a final dose of 0.2 ml, injected intradermally.

At 24 hours, the reactions' diameters ~~of the reactions~~ are measured, and the results are calculated using standard statistical methods, taking the diameters to be directly proportional to the logarithms of the concentrations of the tuberculins. The estimated potency must be not less than 75% and not more than 133% of the potency stated on the

126 label. The test is not valid unless the fiducial limits of error ( $p = 0.95$ ) are not less than  
127 50% and not more than 200% of the estimated potency. If the batch fails a potency test,  
128 the test may be repeated one or more times, provided that the final estimate of potency  
129 and of fiducial limits is based on the combined results of all the tests.

130 It is recommended that avian tuberculin should contain the equivalent of at least  
131 25,000 IU/ml or approximately 0.5 mg protein per ml, giving a dose for practical use of  
132 2500 IU/0.1 ml.

### 133 3. Requirements for authorisation/registration/licensing

#### 134 3.1. Manufacturing process

135 The manufacturing process should follow the requirements of European Pharmacopoeia (2000-2024)  
136 or other international standards.

#### 137 3.2. Safety requirements

##### 138 3.2.1. Target and non-target animal safety

139 Antimicrobial preservatives or other substances that may be added to a tuberculin must have  
140 been shown not to impair the safety and effectiveness of the product. The maximum permitted  
141 concentrations for phenol is 0.5% (w/v), and for glycerol, it is 10% (v/v). The pH should be  
142 between 6.5 and 7.5.

##### 143 3.2.2. Precautions (hazards)

144 Experience both in humans and animals led to the observation that appropriately diluted  
145 tuberculin injected intradermally results in a localised reaction at the injection site without  
146 generalised manifestations. Even in very sensitive persons, severe, generalised reactions are  
147 extremely rare and limited.

#### 148 3.3. Stability

149 During storage, liquid avian tuberculin should be protected from the light and held at a temperature  
150 of 5°C ( $\pm 3^\circ\text{C}$ ). Freeze-dried preparations may be stored at higher temperatures (but not exceeding  
151 25°C) and protected from the light. During use, periods of exposure to higher temperatures or to  
152 direct sunlight should be kept at a minimum.

153 ~~Provided the tuberculins are~~ Following accepted practice, tuberculin should be stored at a  
154 temperature of between 2°C and 8°C and protected from light; they may be used up to the end of  
155 the following periods ~~subsequent to~~ after the last satisfactory potency test: Liquid PPD tuberculins:  
156 2 years; lyophilised PPD-A tuberculins: 8 years; HCSM (heat-concentrated synthetic-medium)  
157 tuberculins diluted: 2 years. Recent research on the temperature stability of human, bovine, and  
158 avian tuberculin solutions has shown that they are stable for a year at 37°C. This should be further  
159 explored as these products are used in the field in remote areas of the world where maintaining  
160 temperature control is very difficult (Maes et al., 2011).

### 161 REFERENCES

162 ANGUS R.D. (1978). Production of Reference PPD tuberculins for Veterinary use in the United States. *J. Biol.*  
163 *Stand.*, **6**, 221.

164 ARAHAL D.R., BULL C.T., BUSSE H.J., CHRISTENSEN H., CHUVOCHINA M., DEDYSH S.N., FOURNIER P.E.,  
165 KONSTANTINIDIS K.T., PARKER C.T., ROSSELLO-MORA R., VENTOSA A. & GOKER M. (2023). Guidelines for  
166 interpreting the International Code of Nomenclature of Prokaryotes and for preparing a Request for an Opinion.  
167 *Int. J. Syst. Evol. Microbiol.*, **73**.

168 BUCKWALTER S.P., OLSON S.L., CONNELLY B.J., LUCAS B.C., RODNING A.A., WALCHAK R.C., DEMI S.M., WOHLFIEL  
169 S.L. & WENGENACK N.L. (2016). Evaluation of Matrix-Assisted Laser Desorption Ionization-Time of Flight Mass  
170 Spectrometry for Identification of *Mycobacterium* species, *Nocardia* species, and Other Aerobic  
171 *Actinomycetes*. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **54**, 376–384.

172 ~~COUSINS D., FRANCIS B. & DAWSON D. (1996). Multiplex PCR provides a low-cost alternative to DNA probe~~  
173 ~~methods for rapid identification of *Mycobacterium avium* and *Mycobacterium intracellulare*. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*,~~  
174 ~~**34**, 2331–2333.~~

175 COWMAN S., VAN INGEN J., GRIFFITH D.E. & LOEBINGER M.R. (2019). Non-tuberculous mycobacterial pulmonary  
176 disease. *Eur. Respir. J.*, **54**(1).

177 ~~DVORSKA L., BULL T.J., BARTOS M., MATLOVA L., SVASTOVA P., WESTON R.T., KINTR J., PARMOVA I., VAN~~  
178 ~~SOOLINGEN D. & PAVLIK I. (2003). A standardised restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) method for~~  
179 ~~typing *Mycobacterium avium* isolates links IS901 with virulence for birds. *J. Microbiol. Methods*, **55**, 11–27.~~

180 DVORSKA L., MATLOVA L., AYELE W. Y., FISCHER O. A., AMEMORI T., WESTON R. T., ALVAREZ J., BERAN V.,  
181 MORAVKOVA M. & PAVLIK I. (2007). Avian tuberculosis in naturally infected captive water birds of the Ardeidae  
182 and Threskiornithidae families studied by serotyping, IS901 RFLP typing and virulence for poultry. *Vet.*  
183 *Microbiol.*, **119**, 366–374.

184 DVORSKA L., MATLOVA L., BARTOS M., PARMOVA I., BARTL J., SVASTOVA P., BULL T. J. & PAVLIK I. (2004). Study of  
185 *Mycobacterium avium* complex strains isolated from cattle in the Czech Republic between 1996 and 2000.  
186 *Vet. Microbiol.*, **99**, 239–250.

187 ~~DVORSKA L., PARMOVA I., LAVICKOVA M., BARTL J., VRBAS V. & PAVLIK I. (1999). Isolation of *Rhodococcus equi*~~  
188 ~~and atypical mycobacteria from lymph nodes of pigs and cattle in herds with the occurrence of tuberculoid~~  
189 ~~gross changes in the Czech Republic over the period of 1996–1998. *Veterinarni Medicina*, **44**, 321–330.~~

190 EUROPEAN PHARMACOPOEIA (2000–2024). Purified protein derivative (avian). In: European Pharmacopoeia,  
191 Eleventh Edition. Editions of the Council of Europe, Strasbourg, France,  
192 [https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/234640?p\\_l\\_back\\_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dpurified%2Bprotein%2Bderivative](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/234640?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dpurified%2Bprotein%2Bderivative)  
193 [ative](https://www.edqm.eu/en/d/234640?p_l_back_url=%2Fen%2Fsearch%3Fq%3Dpurified%2Bprotein%2Bderivative)

194 FERNÁNDEZ-ESGUEVA M., FERNÁNDEZ-SIMON R., MONFORTE-CIRAC M.L., LÓPEZ-CALLEJA A.I., FORTUNO B. &  
195 VINUELAS-BAYON J. (2021). Use of MALDI-TOF MS (Bruker Daltonics) for identification of *Mycobacterium*  
196 species isolated directly from liquid medium. *Enferm. Infecc. Microbiol. Clin. (Engl. Ed.)* **39**, 241–243. doi:  
197 10.1016/j.eimc.2020.05.011.

198 GUERRERO C., BERNASCONI C., BURKI D., BODMER T. & TELENTI A. (1995). A novel insertion element from  
199 *Mycobacterium avium*, IS1245, is a specific target for analysis of strain relatedness. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **33**,  
200 304–307.

201 HAAGSMA J. & ANGUS R.D. (1995). Tuberculin production. In: *Mycobacterium bovis* Infections in Humans and  
202 Animals, Steele J.H. & Thoen C.O., eds. Iowa State University Press, Ames, USA, 73–84.

203 HALL L., DOERR K.A., WOHLFIEL S.L. & ROBERTS G.D. (2003). Evaluation of the MicroSeq system for  
204 identification of mycobacteria by 16S ribosomal DNA sequencing and its integration into a routine clinical  
205 mycobacteriology laboratory. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **41**, 1447–1453.

206 HOOP R. (2002). *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection in a canary (*Serinus canaria* L.) and a blue-fronted  
207 Amazon parrot (*Amazona amazona aestiva*). *Avian Dis.*, **46**, 502–504.

208 INDERLIED C.B., KEMPER C.A. & BERMUDEZ L.E.M. (1993). The *Mycobacterium avium* complex. *Clin. Microbiol.*  
209 *Rev.*, **6**, 266–310.

210 KAEVSKA M., SLANA I., KRALIK P. & PAVLIK I. (2010). Examination of *Mycobacterium avium* subsp. *avium*  
211 distribution in naturally infected hens by culture and triplex quantitative real time PCR. *Veterinarni Medicina*,  
212 **55**, 325–330.

- 213 KAZDA J., PAVLIK I., FALKINHAM J. & HRUSKA K. (2009). The Ecology of *Mycobacteria*: Impact on Animal's and  
214 Human's Health, First Edition, Springer Science+Business Media BV, 520 pp. ISBN 978-1-4020-9412-5.
- 215 KUNZE Z.M., PORTAELS F. & MCFADDEN J.J. (1992). Biologically distinct subtypes of *Mycobacterium avium* differ  
216 in possession of insertion sequence IS901. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **30**, 2366–2372.
- 217 KIRSCHNER P., MEIER P.A. & BOTTGER E.C. (1993). Genotypic identification and detection of mycobacteria. *In*:  
218 Diagnostic Molecular Microbiology, Persing D.H., Smith T.F., Tenover F.C. & White T.C., eds. American  
219 Society for Microbiology, Washington DC, USA, 173–190.
- 220 LANTERI G., MARINO F., REALE S., VITALE F., MACRI F. & MAZZULLO G. (2011). *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in a  
221 red-crowned parakeet (*Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae*). *J. Avian Med. Surg.*, **25**, 40–43.
- 222 MAES M., GIMÉNEZ J.F., D'ALESSANDRO A. & DE WAARD J.H. (2011). The stability of human, bovine and avian  
223 tuberculin purified protein derivative (PPD). *J. Infect. Dev. Ctries*, **5**, 781–785.
- 224 MIJS W., DE HAAS P., ROSSAU R., VAN DER LAAN T., RIGOUTS L., PORTAELS F. & VAN SOOLINGEN D. (2002).  
225 Molecular evidence to support a proposal to reserve the designation *Mycobacterium avium* subsp. *avium* to  
226 bird-type isolates and *M. avium* subsp. *hominissuis* for the human/porcine type of *M. avium*. *Int. J. Syst. Evol.*  
227 *Microbiol.*, **52**, 1505–1518.
- 228 MORAVKOVA M., HLOZEK P., BERAN V., PAVLIK I., PREZIUSSO S., CUTERI V. & BARTOS M. (2008). Strategy for the  
229 detection and differentiation of *Mycobacterium avium* species in isolates and heavily infected tissues. *Res.*  
230 *Vet. Sci.*, **85**, 257–264.
- 231 NARSANA N., ALEJANDRA PEREZ M. & SUBRAMANIAN A. (2023). Mycobacteria in Organ Transplant Recipients.  
232 *Infect. Dis. Clin. North Am.*, S0891-5520(23)00040-5. doi: 10.1016/j.idc.2023.04.004.
- 233 PAVLIK I., MATLOVA L., DVORSKA L., BARTL J., OKTABCOVA L., DOCEKAL J. & PARMOVA I. (2003). Tuberculous  
234 lesions in pigs in the Czech Republic during 1990–1999: occurrence, causal factors and economic losses.  
235 *Veterinarni Medicina*, **48**, 113–125.
- 236 PAVLIK I., MATLOVA L., DVORSKA L., SHITAYE J. E. & PARMOVA I. (2005). Mycobacterial infections in cattle and  
237 pigs caused by *Mycobacterium avium* complex members and atypical mycobacteria in the Czech Republic  
238 during 2000–2004. *Veterinarni Medicina*, **50**, 281–290.
- 239 PAVLIK I., SVASTOVA P., BARTL J., DVORSKA L. & RYCHLIK I. (2000). Relationship between IS901 in the  
240 *Mycobacterium avium* complex strains isolated from birds, animals, humans, and the environment and  
241 virulence for poultry. *Clin. Diagn. Lab. Immunol.*, **7**, 212–217.
- 242 PETERS M., PRODINGER W.M., GUMMER H., HOTZEL H., MOBILIUS P. & MOSER I. (2007). *Mycobacterium*  
243 *tuberculosis* infection in a blue-fronted amazon parrot (*Amazona aestiva aestiva*). *Vet. Microbiol.*, **122**, 381–  
244 383.
- 245 POCKNELL A.M., MILLER B.J., NEUFELD J.L. & GRAHN B.H. (1996). Conjunctival mycobacteriosis in two emus  
246 (*Dromaius novaehollandiae*). *Vet. Pathol.*, **33**, 346–348.
- 247 REALINI L., DE RIDDER K., HIRSCHEL B. & PORTAELS F. (1999). Blood and charcoal added to acidified agar media  
248 promote the growth of *Mycobacterium genavense*. *Diagn. Microbiol. Infect. Dis.*, **34**, 45–50.
- 249 RIOJAS M.A., FRANK A.M., GREENFIELD S.R., KING S.P., MEEHAN C.J., STRONG M., WATTAM A.R. & HAZBÓN M.H.  
250 (2021). Identification and Characterization of Mycobacterial Species Using Whole-Genome Sequences.  
251 *Methods Mol. Biol.*, **2314**, 399–457.
- 252 RITACCO V., KREMER K., VAN DER LAAN T., PIJNENBURG J.E.M., DE HAAS P.E.W. & VAN SOOLINGEN D. (1998).  
253 Use of IS901 and IS1245 in RFLP typing of *Mycobacterium avium* complex: relatedness among serovar  
254 reference strains, human and animal isolates. *Int. J. Tuberculosis Lung Dis.*, **2**, 242–251.
- 255 ROZANSKA M. (1965). Preparation of antigen for whole blood rapid agglutination test and its specificity for  
256 diagnosis of avian tuberculosis. *Bull. Vet. Inst. Pulawy*, **9**, 20–25.



- 257 SAITO H., TOMIOKA H., SATO K., TASAKA H. & DAWSON D.J. (1990). Identification of various serovar strains of  
258 *Mycobacterium avium* complex by using DNA probes specific for *Mycobacterium avium* and *Mycobacterium*  
259 *intracellulare*. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **28**, 1694–1697.
- 260 SALAMATIAN I., GHANIEI A., MOSAVARI N., NOURANI H., KESHAVARZ R. & ESLAMPANAH M. (2020). Outbreak of avian  
261 mycobacteriosis in a commercial turkey breeder flock. *Avian Pathol.*, **49**, 296–304.
- 262 SATTAR A., ZAKARIA Z., ABU J., AZIZ S.A. & ROJAS-PONCE G. (2021). Isolation of *Mycobacterium avium* and other  
263 nontuberculous mycobacteria in chickens and captive birds in peninsular Malaysia. *BMC Vet. Res.*, **17**, 13.
- 264 SCHMIDT V., KOHLER H., HEENEMANN K. & MOBIUS P. (2022). Mycobacteriosis in Various Pet and Wild Birds from  
265 Germany: Pathological Findings, Coinfections, and Characterization of Causative Mycobacteria. *Microbiol.*  
266 *Spectr.*, **10**(4): e0045222.
- 267 SCHMIDT V., SCHNEIDER S., SCHLOMER J., KRAUTWALD-JUNGHANNS M.E. & RICHTER E. (2008). Transmission of  
268 tuberculosis between men and pet birds: a case report. *Avian Pathol.*, **37**, 589–592.
- 269 SCHMITZ A., KORBEL R., THIEL S., WORLE B., GOHL C. & RINDER M. (2018a). High prevalence of *Mycobacterium*  
270 *genavense* within flocks of pet birds. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **218**, 40–44.
- 271 SCHMITZ A., RINDER M., THIEL S., PESCHEL A., MOSER K., REESE S. & KORBEL R. (2018b). Retrospective  
272 Evaluation of Clinical Signs and Gross Pathologic Findings in Birds Infected With *Mycobacterium genavense*.  
273 *J. Avian Med. Surg.*, **32**, 194–204.
- 274 SHITAYE J.E., GRYMOVA V., GRYM M., HALOUZKA R., HORVATHOVA A., MORAVKOVA M., BERAN V., SVOBODOVA J.,  
275 DVORSKA-BARTOSOVA L. & PAVLIK I. (2009). *Mycobacterium avium* subsp. *hominissuis* infection in a pet parrot.  
276 *Emerg. Inf. Dis.*, **15**, 617–619.
- 277 SHITAYE J.E., HALOUZKA R., SVOBODOVA J., GRYMOVA V., GRYM M., SKORIC M., FICTUM P., BERAN V., SLANY M.  
278 & PAVLIK I. (2010). First isolation of *Mycobacterium genavense* in blue headed parrot (*Pionus menstruus*)  
279 imported from Surinam (South America) to the Czech Republic: a case report. *Veterinarni Medicina*, **55**, 339–  
280 347.
- 281 SHITAYE J.E., MATLOVA L., HORVATHOVA A., MORAVKOVA M., DVORSKA-BARTOSOVA L., TREML F., LAMKA J. &  
282 PAVLIK I. (2008). *Mycobacterium avium* subsp. *avium* distribution studied in a naturally infected hen flock and  
283 in the environment by culture, serotyping and IS901 RFLP methods. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **127**, 155–164.
- 284 SHITAYE J.E., PARMOVA I., MATLOVA L., DVORSKA L., HORVATHOVA A., VRBAS V. & PAVLIK, I. (2006). Mycobacterial  
285 and *Rhodococcus equi* infections in pigs in the Czech Republic between the years 1996 and 2004: the causal  
286 factors and distribution of infections in the tissues. *Veterinarni Medicina*, **51**, 497–  
287 511. <http://www.vri.cz/docs/vetmed/51-11-497.pdf>
- 288 SLANA I., KAEVSKA M., KRALIK P., HORVATHOVA A. & PAVLIK, I. (2010). Distribution of *Mycobacterium avium*  
289 subsp. *avium* and *M. a. hominissuis* in artificially infected pigs studied by culture and IS901 and IS1245  
290 quantitative real time PCR. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **144**, 437–443.
- 291 SOINI H., EEROLA E. & VILJANEN M.K. (1996). Genetic diversity among *Mycobacterium avium* complex Accu-  
292 Probe-positive isolates. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **34**, 55–57.
- 293 TELL L.A., FOLEY J., NEEDHAM M.L. & WALKER R.L. (2003a). Comparison of four rapid DNA extraction techniques  
294 for conventional polymerase chain reaction testing of three *Mycobacterium* spp. that affect birds. *Avian Dis.*  
295 **47**, 1486–1490.
- 296 TELL L.A., LEUTENEGGER C.M., LARSEN R.S., AGNEW D.W., KEENER L., NEEDHAM M.L. & RIDEOUT B.A. (2003b).  
297 Real-time polymerase chain reaction testing for the detection of *Mycobacterium genavense* and  
298 *Mycobacterium avium* complex species in avian samples. *Avian Dis.*, **47**, 1406–1415.
- 299 TELL L.A., WOODS L. & CROMIE R.L. (2001). Mycobacteriosis in birds. *Rev. Sci. Tech.*, **20**, 180–203.
- 300 THOREL M.F., HUCHZERMAYER H. & MICHEL A.L. (2001). *Mycobacterium avium* and *M. intracellulare* infection in  
301 mammals. *Rev. sci. tech. Off. int. Epiz.*, **20**, 204–218.



302 THOREL M.F., HUCHZERMEYER H., WEISS R. & FONTAINE J.J. (1997). *Mycobacterium avium* infections in animals.  
 303 Literature review. *Vet. Res.*, **28**, 439–447.

304 THOREL M.F., KRICHEVSKY M. & LEVY-FREBAULT V.V. (1990). Numerical taxonomy of mycobactin-dependent  
 305 mycobacteria, emended description of *Mycobacterium avium*, and description of *Mycobacterium avium* subsp.  
 306 *avium* subsp. nov., *Mycobacterium avium* subsp. *paratuberculosis* subsp. nov., and *Mycobacterium avium*  
 307 subsp. *silvaticum* subsp. nov. *Int. J. Syst. Bacteriol.*, **40**, 254–260.

308 TORTOLI E., MEEHAN C.J., GROTTOLA A., FREGNI SERPINI G., FABIO A., TROVATO A., PECORARI M. & CIRILLO D.M.  
 309 (2019). Genome-based taxonomic revision detects a number of synonymous taxa in the genus  
 310 *Mycobacterium*. *Infect. Genet. Evol.*, **75**, 103983.

311 VAN INGEN J., AL HAJJOJ SAM., BOERE M., AL RABIAH F., ENAIMI M., DE ZWAAN R., TORTOLI E., DEKHUIJZEN R. &  
 312 VAN SOOLINGEN D. (2009). *Mycobacterium riyadhense* sp. nov.; a non-tuberculous species identified as  
 313 *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* by a commercial line-probe assay. *Int. J. Syst. Evol. Microbiol.*, **59**, 1049–1053.

314 VAN SOOLINGEN D., BAUER J., RITAGGO V., CARDOSO LEAO S., PAVLIH., VINCENT V., RASTOGI N., GORIA., BODMER  
 315 T., GARZELLI C. & GARCIA M.J. (1998). IS1245 restriction fragment length polymorphism typing of  
 316 *Mycobacterium avium* isolates: proposal for standardization. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **36**, 3051–3054.

317 WITTE C., FOWLER J.H., PFEIFFER W., HUNGERFORD L.L., BRAUN J., BURCHELL J., PAPENDICK R. & RIDEOUT B.A.  
 318 (2021). Social network analysis and whole-genome sequencing to evaluate disease transmission in a large,  
 319 dynamic population: A study of avian mycobacteriosis in zoo birds. *PLoS One*, **16**(6): e0252152.

320 WOLINSKY E. & SCHAEFER W.B. (1973). Proposed numbering scheme for mycobacterial serotypes by  
 321 agglutination. *Int. J. Syst. Bacteriol.*, **23**, 182–183.

322 WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION (WHO) (1987). Requirements for Biological Substances No. 16, Annex 1:  
 323 Requirement for Tuberculins. Technical Report Series No. 745, WHO, Geneva, Switzerland, 31–59.

324 \*  
 325 \* \*

326 **NB:** There is currently (2024) no WOAHA Reference Laboratory for avian tuberculosis  
 327 (please consult the WOAHA Web site for the current list:

328 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3http://www.oie.int/>).

329 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 1989 AS TUBERCULOSIS IN BIRDS. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2014.

## Annexe 10. Chapter 3.4.1. 'Bovine anaplasmosis'

### SECTION 3.4.

#### BOVINAE

---

### CHAPTER 3.4.1.

## BOVINE ANAPLASMOSIS

### SUMMARY

**Definition of the disease:** Bovine anaplasmosis results from infection with *Anaplasma marginale*. A second species, *A. centrale*, has long been recognised and usually causes benign infections. *Anaplasma marginale* is responsible for almost all outbreaks of clinical disease. *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* and *A. bovis*, which infect cattle, ~~have been recently~~ are also included within the genus but they are not reported to. *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* can cause clinical self-limiting disease in cattle. There are no reports of disease associated with *A. bovis* infection. The organism is classified in the genus *Anaplasma* belonging to the family Anaplasmataceae of the order Rickettsiales.

**Description of the disease:** Anaemia, jaundice in acute, severe cases and sudden unexpected death are characteristic signs of bovine anaplasmosis. Other signs include rapid loss of milk production and weight, but the clinical disease can only be confirmed by identifying the organism. Once infected, cattle may remain carriers for life, and identification of these animals depends on the detection of specific antibodies using serological tests, or of rickettsial DNA using molecular amplification techniques. The disease is typically transmitted by tick vectors, but mechanical transmission by biting insects or by needle can occur.

~~**Detection**~~ ~~**Identification of the agent:**~~ Microscopic examination of blood or organ smears stained with Giemsa stain is the most common method of identifying *Anaplasma* in clinically affected animals. In these smears, *A. marginale* organisms appear as dense, rounded, intraerythrocytic bodies approximately 0.3–1.0 µm in diameter situated on or near the margin of the erythrocyte. *Anaplasma centrale* is similar in appearance, but most of the organisms are situated toward the centre of the erythrocyte. It can be difficult to differentiate *A. marginale* from *A. centrale* in a stained smear, particularly with low levels of rickettsaemia. Commercial stains that give very rapid staining of *Anaplasma*  spp. are available in some countries. *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* can only be observed in infected granulocytes, mainly neutrophils and *A. bovis* can only be observed in infected monocytes infecting granulocytes, mainly neutrophils.

It is important that smears be well prepared and free from foreign matter. Smears from live cattle should preferably be prepared from blood drawn from the jugular vein or another large vessel. For post-mortem diagnosis, smears should be prepared from internal organs (including liver, kidney, heart and lungs) and from blood retained in peripheral vessels. The latter are particularly ~~desirable~~ useful if post-mortem decomposition is advanced.

**Serological tests:** A competitive enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (C-ELISA) has ~~been demonstrated to have~~ good sensitivity in detecting carrier animals. Card agglutination

40 is the next most frequently used assay. The complement fixation test (CFT) is no longer  
41 considered a reliable test ~~for disease certification of individual animals~~ due to variable  
42 sensitivity. Cross reactivity between *Anaplasma* spp. can complicate interpretation of  
43 serological tests. In general, the C-ELISA has the best specificity, with cross-reactivity  
44 described between *A. marginale*, *A. centrale*, *A. phagocytophilum* and *Ehrlichia* spp.  
45 Alternatively, an indirect ELISA using the CFT with modifications (I-ELISA) is a reliable test  
46 used in many laboratories and can be prepared in-house for routine diagnosis of  
47 anaplasmosis. Finally, a displacement double-antigen sandwich ELISA has been  
48 developed to differentiate between *A. marginale* and *A. centrale* antibodies.

49 **Nucleic-acid-based tests** have been used ~~are often used in diagnostic laboratories and~~  
50 ~~experimentally, and are capable of detecting the presence of low-level infection in carrier~~  
51 ~~cattle and tick vectors. A nested conventional polymerase chain reaction (PCR) reaction is~~  
52 ~~necessary has been used to identify low-level carriers using conventional polymerase chain~~  
53 ~~reaction (PCR), and although nonspecific amplification can occur. Recently, Real-time PCR~~  
54 ~~assays with have analytical sensitivity equivalent to nested conventional PCR have been~~  
55 ~~described and are preferable in a diagnostic setting to reduce the risk of amplicon~~  
56 contamination.

57 **Requirements for vaccines:** Live vaccines are used in several countries to protect cattle  
58 against ~~*A. marginale* infection~~ bovine anaplasmosis. A vaccine consisting of live *A. centrale*  
59 is most widely used and gives partial protection against challenge with virulent  
60 *A. marginale*. Vaccination with *A. centrale* leads to infection and long-term persistence in  
61 many cattle. Vaccinated cattle are typically protected from disease caused by *A. marginale*,  
62 but not infection.

63 *Anaplasma centrale* vaccine is provided in chilled or frozen forms. Quality control is very  
64 important as other blood-borne agents that may be present in donor cattle can contaminate  
65 vaccines and be disseminated broadly. For this reason, frozen vaccine is recommended  
66 as it allows thorough post-production quality control, which limits the risk of contamination  
67 with other pathogens.

68 *Anaplasma centrale* vaccine is not entirely safe. A practical recommendation is to restrict  
69 its use, as far as possible, to calves, as nonspecific immunity will minimise the risk of some  
70 vaccine reactions that may require treatment with tetracycline or imidocarb. Partial  
71 immunity develops in 6–8 weeks and lasts for several years after a single vaccination. In  
72 countries where *A. centrale* is exotic, it cannot be used as a vaccine against *A. marginale*.

## 73 A. INTRODUCTION

74 Outbreaks of bovine anaplasmosis are due to infection with *Anaplasma marginale*. *Anaplasma centrale*  
75 ~~is capable of producing~~ can produce a moderate degree of anaemia, but clinical outbreaks in the field  
76 are extremely rare. ~~New species of *Anaplasma*, Other members of the family Anaplasmataceae that~~  
77 infect cattle include *A. phagocytophilum* and *A. bovis* (Dumler *et al.*, 2001), with a primary reservoir,  
78 *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* has a broad host range and causes the diseases human granulocytic  
79 anaplasmosis (HGE), equine granulocytic anaplasmosis (EGA), and canine granulocytic anaplasmosis  
80 (CGA), in humans, horses, and dogs, respectively (Matei *et al.*, 2019). In northern Europe in rodents, *A.*  
81 *phagocytophilum* causes tick-borne fever, primarily affecting lambs. In cattle, *A. phagocytophilum*  
82 infections have been reported to infect cattle, but do not cause from many geographical regions,  
83 however the association with disease is less commonly reported. Naturally occurring clinical disease as  
84 reported in Germany was characterised by fever (39.5–41.7° C), sudden reduction in milk production,  
85 lower limb oedema, and stiffness with leukopenia, erythropenia, neutropenia, lymphocytopenia and  
86 monocytopenia. The affected animals recovered without antibiotic treatment (Dreher *et al.*, 2005;  
87 Hofmann-Lehmann *et al.*, 2004; Silaghi *et al.*, 2018).

88 The most marked clinical signs of bovine anaplasmosis are anaemia and jaundice, the latter occurring  
89 in acute severe, cases or late in the disease. Haemoglobinaemia and haemoglobinuria are not present,  
90 and this may assist in the differential diagnosis of bovine anaplasmosis from babesiosis, which is often  
91 endemic in the same regions. The disease can only be confirmed, however, by identification of the  
92 organism in erythrocytes from the affected animal. Caution must be exercised if using nucleic acid

93 techniques alone to diagnose *A. marginale* in anaemic cattle. Persistent, low-level infection can be  
94 detected by these techniques and may lead to a misdiagnosis of bovine anaplasmosis. Visualisation of  
95 *A. marginale* bodies in erythrocytes is therefore required for confirmation.

96 *Anaplasma marginale* occurs in most tropical and subtropical countries and is widely distributed in some  
97 more-temperate regions. *Anaplasma centrale* was first described from South Africa. The organism has  
98 since been imported by other countries – including Australia and some countries in South America,  
99 South-East Asia and the Middle East – for use as a vaccine against *A. marginale*.

100 ~~*Anaplasma* species were, though originally regarded described as protozoan parasites, but further~~  
101 ~~research showed they had no significant attributes to justify this description. Since the last major~~  
102 ~~accepted revision of the are obligate intracellular Gram-negative bacteria. Based on taxonomy~~  
103 ~~established in 2001 (Dumler et al., 2001), the Family Anaplasmataceae (Order Rickettsiales) is now~~  
104 ~~composed of four-five genera, *Anaplasma*, *Ehrlichia*, *Neorickettsia*, and *Wolbachia*. The genus and~~  
105 ~~*Aegyptianella* is retained within the Family Anaplasmataceae as genus incertae sedis. The revised~~  
106 ~~genus. The genus *Anaplasma* now contains *Anaplasma marginale* as the type species,~~  
107 ~~*A. phagocytophilum* the agent of human granulocytic ehrlichiosis (formerly *Ehrlichia phagocytophila* and~~  
108 ~~*E. equi*), *A. platys*, and *A. bovis* (formerly *E. bovis*). *Haemobartonella* and *Eperythrozoon* are now~~  
109 ~~considered most closely related to the mycoplasmas.~~

110 *Anaplasma* species are transmitted either mechanically or biologically by arthropod vectors. Reviews  
111 based on careful study Detection of reported transmission experiments list up pathogen DNA within a  
112 tick is insufficient to 19 different ticks as capable of determine the ability of a particular tick species to  
113 transmit a pathogen. Studies demonstrating transmission of the pathogen are critical in determining the  
114 potential role of a particular tick species in pathogen transmission transmitting *A. marginale* (Kocan et  
115 al., 2004). These are: *Argas persicus*, *Ornithodoros lahorensis*, Many studies have demonstrated the  
116 transmission ability of *Dermcentor albipictus*, *D. andersoni*, *D. hunteri*, *D. occidentalis*, *D. variabilis*,  
117 *Hyalomma excavatum*, *H. rufipes*, *Ixodes ricinus*, *I. scapularis*, and *D. albipictus*. Additionally,  
118 transmission by multiple *Rhipicephalus* species is well recognised including *R. annulatus* (formerly  
119 *Boophilus annulatus*), *R. bursa*, *R. calcaratus*, *R. decoloratus*, *R. evertsi*, *R. microplus*, *R. sanguineus*  
120 and *R. simus*. However, the classification of several ticks in these reports has been questioned. and *R.*  
121 *sanguineus*. Other species of *Rhipicephalus* also likely serve as biological vectors of *A. marginale*.  
122 *Anaplasma marginale* DNA has been widely reported in *Hyalomma* species, and transmission has been  
123 demonstrated with *H. excavatum*. It is likely that multiple *Hyalomma* species also serve as vectors of *A.*  
124 *marginale* (Shkap et al., 2009).

125 Intrastadial or transstadial transmission is the usual mode can occur, even in the one-host,  
126 *Rhipicephalus* species. Male ticks may be particularly important as vectors, as they can become  
127 persistently infected and serve as a reservoir are most likely to move between cattle searching  
128 for infection-female ticks. Experimental demonstration of vector competence does not necessarily imply a  
129 role in transmission in the field. However, *Rhipicephalus* species are clearly important vectors of  
130 anaplasmosis in countries such as Australia and countries in, many regions of Africa, and Latin America,  
131 and some species of, *Dermacentor spp.* are efficient vectors in the United States of America (USA).

132 Various other biting arthropods have been implicated as mechanical vectors, particularly in the USA.  
133 Experimental transmission has been demonstrated with a number of species of *Tabanus* (horseflies),  
134 and with mosquitoes of the genus *Psorophora* (Kocan et al., 2004). The importance of biting insects in  
135 the natural transmission of anaplasmosis appears to vary greatly from region to region. *Anaplasma*  
136 *marginale* also can be readily transmitted during vaccination against other diseases unless a fresh or  
137 sterilised needle is used for injecting each animal. Similar transmission by means of unsterilised surgical  
138 instruments has been described (Reinbold et al., 2010a).

139 The main only known biological vectors of *A. centrale* appear to be multihost ticks is *R. simus*, endemic  
140 in Africa, including *R. simus*. Though multiple transmission studies have been done, there is no  
141 evidence that the common cattle tick (*R. microplus*) has not been shown to be can serve as a vector for  
142 *A. centrale*. This is of relevance-relevant where *A. centrale* is used as a vaccine in *R. microplus*-infested  
143 regions.

144 *Anaplasma marginale* infection has not been reported in humans. Thus, There is no minimal risk of field  
145 or laboratory transmission to workers and from laboratories working with *A. marginale* may operate at

146 the lowest biosafety level, equivalent to BSL1. Nevertheless the agent should be handled with  
 147 appropriate biosafety and containment procedures as determined by biorisk analysis (see Chapter 1.1.4  
 148 Biosafety and biosecurity: Standard for managing biological risk in the veterinary laboratory and animal  
 149 facilities).

150

## B. DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES

151 **Table 1.** Test methods available for the diagnosis of bovine anaplasmosis and their purpose

| Method                                      | Purpose  |   |   |   |   |  |
|---|--|---|---|---|---|--|
|   | Population freedom from infection <sup>(a)</sup> | Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement <sup>(b)</sup> | Contribute to eradication policies <sup>(c)</sup> | Confirmation of clinical cases <sup>(d)</sup> | Prevalence of infection – surveillance <sup>(e)</sup> | Immune status in individual animals or populations (post-vaccination) <sup>(f)</sup> |
| Microscopic examination                     | –  | ±=  | –   | +++   | –   | –  |
| <b>Detection of the agent<sup>(g)</sup></b> |  |   |   |   |   |  |
| PCR   | –  | ++ ±  | –   | +++   | –   | –  |
| <b>Detection of immune response</b>         |  |   |   |   |   |  |
| CAT <sup>(h)</sup>                          | –  | –   | –   | –   | +   | +  |
| C-ELISA <sup>(h)</sup>                      | +++  | +++   | +++   | –   | +++   | +++  |
| IFAT <sup>(h)</sup>                         | +  | –   | –   | –   | ++  | ++   |
| CFT   | –  | –   | –   | –   | ±   | –  |
| ddasELISA                                   | ≡  | ≡   | ≡   | ≡   | ≡   | ±±   |

152 Key: +++ = recommended for this purpose; ++ recommended but has limitations;  
 153 + = suitable in very limited circumstances; – = not appropriate for this purpose.  
 154 Agent id. = agent identification; CAT = card agglutination test; CFT = complement fixation test;  
 155 C-ELISA = competitive enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; ddasELISA = displacement double-antigen, sandwich ELISA;  
 156 IFAT = indirect fluorescent antibody test; PCR = polymerase chain reaction.  
 157 <sup>(a)</sup>See Appendix 1 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.  
 158 <sup>(b)</sup>See Appendix 2 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.  
 159 <sup>(c)</sup>See Appendix 3 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.  
 160 <sup>(d)</sup>See Appendix 4 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.  
 161 <sup>(e)</sup>See Appendix 5 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.  
 162 <sup>(f)</sup>See Appendix 6 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.  
 163 <sup>(g)</sup>A combination of agent identification methods applied on the same clinical sample is recommended.  
 164 <sup>(h)</sup>These tests do not distinguish infected from vaccinated animals.

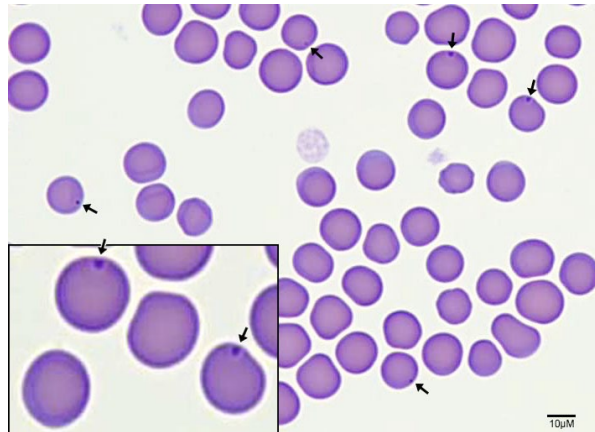
### 155 1. Detection of the agent

#### 156 1.1. Microscopic examination

157 Samples from live cattle should include thin blood smears and blood collected into an  
 158 anticoagulant. Air-dried thin blood smears can be kept satisfactorily at room temperature for  
 159 at least 1 week. The blood sample in anticoagulant should be held and transferred at 4°C,  
 160 unless it can reach the laboratory within a few hours. This sample is useful for preparing fresh  
 161 smears if those submitted are not satisfactory. In addition, a low packed cell volume and/or  
 162 erythrocyte count can help to substantiate the involvement of *A. marginale* when only small  
 163 numbers of the parasites bacteria are detected in smears, for example particularly during the  
 164 recovery stage of the disease.



175 In contrast to *Babesia bovis*, *A. marginale* ~~does not~~ infected erythrocytes do not accumulate in  
176 capillaries, so blood drawn from the jugular or other large vessel is satisfactory. *Anaplasma*  
177 *marginale* replicate in the erythrocytes to form small membrane-bound colonies, also termed  
178 inclusion bodies or initial-inclusion bodies. Because of the rather indistinctive morphology of  
179 *Anaplasma* ~~These~~ initial-inclusion bodies can be visualised on a blood smear, but are small  
180 and easily confused with debris or stain precipitate (see Figure 1). Thus it is essential that  
181 smears are well prepared and including ensuring slides are free from foreign matter, as  
182 specks of debris can confuse diagnosis and stain is recently filtered (Watman #1 filter paper).  
183 Thick blood films as are used sometimes for the diagnosis of babesiosis are not appropriate  
184 for the diagnosis of anaplasmosis, as *Anaplasma A. marginale* are difficult to identify once  
185 they become dissociated from erythrocytes.



186

187 **Figure 1.** *Anaplasma marginale* initial-inclusion bodies. A Diff-Quick-stained blood smear from a  
188 bovine experimentally infected with *A. marginale*. Arrows point to the *A. marginale* initial-inclusion  
189 bodies.  
190 Photo from S. Noh

191 Samples from dead animals should include air-dried thin smears from the liver, kidney, heart  
192 and lungs and from a peripheral blood vessel. The latter is particularly recommended should  
193 there be a significant delay before post-mortem examination because, under these  
194 circumstances, bacterial contamination of organ smears often makes identification of  
195 *Anaplasma A. marginale* equivocal. Brain smears, which are useful for the diagnosis of some  
196 forms of babesiosis, are of no direct value for diagnosing anaplasmosis, but should be included  
197 for differential diagnosis where appropriate.

198 Blood from organs, rather than organ tissues *per se*, is required for smear preparation, as the  
199 aim is to microscopically examine intact erythrocytes for the presence of *Anaplasma A.*  
200 *marginale* colonies. Organ-derived blood smears can be stored satisfactorily at room  
201 temperature for several days.

202 Both blood and organ smears can be stained in 10% Giemsa stain for approximately  
203 30 minutes after fixation in absolute methanol for 1 minute. After staining, the smears are  
204 rinsed three or four times with tap water to remove excess stain and are then air-dried.  
205 Conditions for Giemsa staining vary from laboratory to laboratory, but distilled water is not  
206 recommended for dilution of Giemsa stock. Water should be pH 7.2–7.4 to attain best  
207 resolution with Giemsa stain. Commercial stains that give very rapid staining of *Anaplasma A.*  
208 *marginale* are available in some countries. Smears are must be examined under oil immersion  
209 at a magnification of  $\times 700$ – $1000$ .

210 *Anaplasma marginale* appear as dense, initial-inclusion bodies are rounded and deeply  
211 stained intraerythrocytic bodies, and approximately 0.3–1.0  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Most of these  
212 bodies are located on or near the margin of the erythrocyte. This feature distinguishes  
213 *A. marginale* from *A. centrale*, as in the latter most of the organisms have a more central  
214 location in the erythrocyte. However, particularly at low levels of rickettsaemia, differentiation  
215 of these two species in smears can be difficult. Appendages associated with the *Anaplasma*



216 body ~~initial body~~ have been described in some isolates of *A. marginale* (Kreier & Ristic, 1963;  
217 Stich ~~et al.~~, 2004).

218 The percentage of infected erythrocytes varies with the stage and severity of the disease.  
219 Maximum rickettsaemias in excess of 50% may occur with *A. marginale*. Multiple infections of  
220 individual erythrocytes are common during periods of high rickettsaemias.

221 The infection becomes visible microscopically 2–6 weeks following transmission. During the  
222 course of clinical disease, the rickettsaemia approximately doubles each day for up to about  
223 10 days, and then decreases at a similar rate. Severe anaemia may persist for some weeks  
224 after the ~~parasites-bacteria~~ have become virtually undetectable in blood smears. Following  
225 recovery from initial infection, cattle remain latently infected for life.

## 226 1.2. Polymerase chain reaction

227 Nucleic acid-based tests to detect *A. marginale* ~~infection~~ in ~~carrier-infected~~ cattle have been  
228 developed although not yet fully validated. The analytical sensitivity of polymerase chain  
229 reaction (PCR)-based methods has been estimated at 0.0001% infected erythrocytes, but at  
230 this level, only a proportion of carrier cattle would be detected. A nested PCR has been used  
231 to identify *A. marginale* carrier cattle with a capability of identifying as few as 30 infected  
232 erythrocytes per ml of blood, well below the lowest levels in carriers. However, nested PCR ~~is~~  
233 time consuming as it requires two full PCR reactions, and poses significant quality control ~~and~~  
234 ~~specificity~~ problems for routine use (Torioni De Echaide *et al.*, 1998). Real-time PCR ~~assays~~  
235 are reported to achieve a level of analytical sensitivity equivalent to nested PCR has also been  
236 described for identification of *A. marginale* and should be considered instead of the nested  
237 PCR (Carelli *et al.*, 2007; Decaro *et al.*, 2008; Reinbold *et al.*, 2010b). ~~Two~~ Advantages of this  
238 technique ~~the real-time PCR~~, which uses a single closed tube for amplification and analysis,  
239 are reduced ~~opportunity for risk of~~ amplicon contamination and a semi-quantitative assay  
240 result. Equipment ~~and reagents~~ needed for real-time PCR ~~is~~ are expensive, ~~requires~~  
241 preventive maintenance, and may be beyond the capabilities of some laboratories. Real-time  
242 PCR assays may target one of several genes (Carelli *et al.*, 2007; Decaro *et al.*, 2008), or 16S  
243 rRNA (Reinbold *et al.*, 2010b), and are reported to achieve a level of analytical sensitivity  
244 equivalent to nested conventional PCR (Carelli *et al.*, 2007; Decaro *et al.*, 2008; Reinbold *et*  
245 *al.*, 2010b).

246 The most widely cited assays for the detection *A. marginale* in individual animals use a probe  
247 for increased specificity and are designed to detect *msp1b* (Carelli *et al.*, 2007) or *msp5* (Futse  
248 *et al.*, 2003) in genomic DNA extracted from whole blood. The assay based on detection of  
249 *msp1b* has been partially validated to detect the pathogen in individual animals and was used  
250 to define samples for the validation of a C-ELISA (Carelli *et al.*, 2007; Chung *et al.*, 2014). The  
251 analytical test performance of this assay is robust, and exclusivity testing confirmed other  
252 bacterial and protozoal tick-borne pathogens of cattle were not detected. The assay, evaluated  
253 using 51 blood samples from 18 cattle herds in three regions of southern Italy, had 100%  
254 concordance with nested PCR.

255 *Msp1b* is a multigene family. Based on the annotation of the St. Maries strain of *A. marginale*,  
256 the designed primers and probe will amplify multiple members of this gene family, including  
257 *msp1b-1*, *msp1b-2*, and *msp1-pg3*. This may help increase diagnostic sensitivity, but may  
258 pose challenges if quantification of the pathogen is desired. Additionally, some *A. marginale*  
259 strains have single nucleotide polymorphisms in *msp1b* within the primer and probe binding  
260 regions. Thus, if *msp1b* is used as a diagnostic target, primer and probe design should  
261 consider local *A. marginale* strains. *Msp1b* has the advantage as a target in that orthologs of  
262 this gene family are absent in the related *A. phagocytophilum* and *Ehrlichia* spp., including *E.*  
263 *ruminantium*, thus helping ensure specificity of the test.

264 *Msp5* has also been used as a target to detect *A. marginale* in cattle in field samples and more  
265 frequently in experimental samples (Futse *et al.*, 2003). *Msp5* is highly conserved among *A.*  
266 *marginale* strains and is a single copy gene, thus providing some advantages as a target for  
267 ensuring detection of widely variant strains of *A. marginale*. However, the related *Anaplasma*  
268 spp. and *Ehrlichia* spp. all have *msp5* orthologs with 50% identity to an *E. ruminantium* gene

269 (NCBI accession: L07385.1), thus specificity must be determined in laboratory and field  
 270 samples. Additionally, little work has been done to validate an *msp5*-based real-time PCR test  
 271 for diagnostic purposes.

272 A third primer–probe set is designed to detect *A. marginale* using real-time, reverse  
 273 transcriptase PCR. The primers amplify a 16sRNA gene segment from *A. marginale* and *A.*  
 274 *phagocytophilum*, while the probe differentiates between the two species (Reinbold *et al.*,  
 275 2010b). The analytical performance of this assay is robust. However, the diagnostic sensitivity,  
 276 specificity, and of particular importance with 16sRNA sequence-based tests, exclusivity for  
 277 other tick-borne pathogens of cattle have not been evaluated. Additionally, this assay is  
 278 designed for use following RNA extraction and reverse transcription, which is more laborious  
 279 and expensive than DNA extraction. Bacterial RNA is rapidly degraded, and this may ultimately  
 280 reduce diagnostic sensitivity of this assay.

281 In regions that use *A. centrale* as a vaccine, it may be useful to differentiate between *A.*  
 282 *marginale* and *A. centrale* infected/vaccinated animals. PCR is best suited for this task. The  
 283 real-time PCR assay developed by Carelli *et al.* can also be used in a duplex reaction to detect  
 284 and differentiate between *A. centrale* and *A. marginale* (Decaro *et al.*, 2008). Primers and  
 285 probe have been designed to specifically amplify a region of *A. centrale groEL*, but not *A.*  
 286 *marginale groEL*, despite 97% sequence identity between the two genes. The *A. marginale*-  
 287 specific primers and probes perform similarly in the single and duplex PCR (Carelli *et al.*,  
 288 2007). Using the same 51 field samples from cattle in Italy, the *A. centrale* assay had less  
 289 analytical sensitivity compared with nested PCR and discordance in 4 of 51 samples between  
 290 an *A. centrale* reverse line blot test and the duplex PCR assay.

291 **Table 2. Oligonucleotides used in PCR assays to detect *A. marginale* and *A. centrale***

| <u>Assay</u>                               | <u>Reference</u>                    | <u>Oligonucleotides<sup>(a)</sup></u>      | <u>Sequence 5'–3'<sup>(b)</sup></u>       | <u>Amplicon size (bp)</u> | <u>NCBI accession number</u> |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|---|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| <u>Real-time PCR</u>                       | <u>Carelli <i>et al.</i>, 2007</u>  | <u><i>Am msp1b</i> F</u>                   | <u>TTG-GCA-AGG-CAG-CAG-CTT</u>            | <u>95</u>                 | <u>M59845</u>                |
|  |                                     | <u><i>Am msp1b</i> R</u>                   | <u>TTC-CGC-GAG-CAT-GTG-CAT</u>            |                           |                              |
|  |                                     | <u><i>Am msp1b</i> PB</u>                  | <u>TCG-GTC-TAA-CAT-CTC-CAG-GCT-TTC-AT</u> |                           |                              |
| <u>Real-time PCR</u>                       | <u>Futse <i>et al.</i>, 2003</u>    | <u><i>Am msp5</i> F</u>                    | <u>GCC-AAG-TGA-TGG-TGA-TAT-CGA</u>        | <u>151</u>                | <u>M93392</u>                |
|  |                                     | <u><i>Am msp5</i> R</u>                    | <u>AGA-ATT-AAG-CAT-GTG-ACC-GCT-G</u>      |                           |                              |
|  |                                     | <u><i>Am msp5</i> PB</u>                   | <u>AAC-GTT-CAT-GTA-CCT-CAT-CAA</u>        |                           |                              |
| <u>Reverse-transcription real-time PCR</u> | <u>Reinbold <i>et al.</i>, 2010</u> | <u>16S rRNA F<sup>(c)</sup></u>            | <u>CTC-AGA-ACG-AAC-GCT-GG</u>             | <u>142</u>                | <u>M60313</u>                |
|  |                                     | <u>16S rRNA R<sup>(c)</sup></u>            | <u>CAT-TTC-TAG-TGG-CTA-TCC-C</u>          |                           |                              |
|  |                                     | <u><i>Am</i> 16S rRNA PB<sup>(d)</sup></u> | <u>CGC-AGC-TTG-CTG-CGT-GTA-TGG-T</u>      |                           |                              |
| <u>Real-time PCR<sup>(d)</sup></u>         | <u>Decaro <i>et al.</i>, 2008</u>   | <u><i>Ac groEL</i> F<sup>(e, f)</sup></u>  | <u>CTA-TAC-ACG-CTT-GCA-TCT-C</u>          | <u>77</u>                 | <u>CP001759.1</u>            |
|  |                                     | <u><i>Ac groEL</i> R<sup>(e, f)</sup></u>  | <u>CGC-TTT-ATG-ATG-TTG-ATG-C</u>          |                           |                              |
|  |                                     | <u><i>Ac groEL</i> PB<sup>(e, f)</sup></u> | <u>TCA-TCA-TTC-TTC-CCC-TTT-ACC-TCG-T</u>  |                           |                              |

292 <sup>(a)</sup>*Am* denotes *A. marginale*, *Ac* denotes *A. centrale*, *Pb* denotes probe sequence.

293 <sup>(b)</sup>Fluorophores and quenchers not included in probe sequences.

294 <sup>(c)</sup>Amplifies *A. phagocytophilum* and *A. marginale* 16S rRNA gene.

295 <sup>(d)</sup>Probe is specific for *A. marginale* 16S rRNA gene.

296 <sup>(e)</sup>Can be used as a duplex PCR with *msp1b* primers and probe based on Carelli *et al.*, 2007.

297 <sup>(f)</sup>Primers and probe amplify *A. centrale groEL*.

## 298 2. Serological tests

299 In general, unless animals have been treated or are at a very early stage of infection (<14 days),  
 300 serology using the competitive enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (C-ELISA), indirect ELISA (I-  
 301 ELISA) or card agglutination test (CAT) (see below) may be the preferred methods of identifying infected  
 302 animals in most laboratories. *Anaplasma marginale* infections usually persist for the life of the animal.

303 However, except for occasional small recrudescences, *Anaplasma-A. marginale* initial inclusion bodies  
304 cannot readily be detected in blood smears after acute rickettsaemia and, ~~even~~-end-point PCR may not  
305 detect the presence of *Anaplasma* the pathogen in blood samples from asymptomatic carriers. Thus, a  
306 number of serological tests have been developed with the aim of detecting persistently infected animals.

307 A feature of the serological diagnosis of anaplasmosis is the highly variable results with regard to both  
308 sensitivity and specificity reported for many of the tests from different laboratories. This is due at least  
309 in part to inadequate evaluation-validation of the tests using significant numbers of known positive and  
310 negative animals. ~~Importantly, the capacity of several assays to detect known infections of long-standing~~  
311 ~~duration has been inadequately addressed.~~ An exception is a C-ELISA (see below), which ~~has been~~  
312 was initially validated using true positive and negative animals defined by nested PCR (Torioni De  
313 Echaide *et al.*, 1998), ~~and the card agglutination assay, for which relative sensitivity and specificity in~~  
314 ~~comparison with the C-ELISA has been evaluated (Molloy *et al.*, 1999).~~ And updated in 2014 (Chung *et*  
315 *al.*, 2014). Therefore, while most of the tests described in this section are useful for obtaining broad-  
316 based epidemiological data, caution is advised on their use for disease certification. The C-ELISA, I-  
317 ELISA and CAT are described in detail below.

318 It should be noted that there is a high degree of cross-reactivity between *A. marginale* and *A. centrale*,  
319 as well as cross-reactivity with both *A. phagocytophilum* and *Ehrlichia* spp. in serological tests (Al-  
320 Adhami *et al.*, 2011; Dreher *et al.*, 2005). While the infecting species can sometimes be identified using  
321 antigens from homologous and heterologous species, equivocal results are obtained on many  
322 occasions. Efforts have been made to develop tests that differentiate between naturally acquired  
323 immunity to *A. marginale* and vaccine acquired immunity due to immunisation with *A. centrale* (Bellezze  
324 *et al.*, 2023; Sari *et al.*, 2020).

## 325 2.1. Competitive enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay

326 A C-ELISA using a recombinant antigen termed Major surface protein 5 (MSP5) is an  
327 immunodominant protein expressed by *A. marginale*, *A. ovis*, and *A. centrale*. In *A. marginale*  
328 the gene is highly conserved making it a useful target across broad geographical regions with  
329 high *A. marginale* strain diversity (Knowles *et al.*, 1996; Torioni De Echaide *et al.*, 1998). Thus,  
330 a C-ELISA based on recombinantly expressed (rMSP5 and MSP5-) in combination with an  
331 MSP5-specific monoclonal antibody (mAb) has proven very sensitive and specific for detection  
332 of *Anaplasma*-infected animals (Hofmann-Lehmann *et al.*, 2004; Molloy *et al.*, 1999; Reinbold  
333 *et al.*, 2010b; Strik *et al.*, 2007). All *A. marginale* strains tested, along with Additionally, *A. ovis*  
334 and *A. centrale*, express the MSP5 antigen and induce infected animals produce antibodies  
335 against the immunodominant epitope recognised by the MSP5-specific mAb. A recent report  
336 mAb used in the C-ELISA. This C-ELISA was updated in 2014 to improve performance by  
337 using glutathione S-transferase (GST) instead of maltose binding protein (MBP) as the tag on  
338 the rMSP5 (Chung *et al.*, 2014). This assay no longer requires adsorption to remove the  
339 antibodies directed against MBP, thus it is faster and easier than the previous version of the  
340 C-ELISA. The diagnostic sensitivity is 100% and the diagnostic specificity is 99.7% using a  
341 cut-off of 30% inhibition as determined by receiver operating characteristic (ROC) plot (Chung  
342 *et al.*, 2014). For this validation, 385 sera defined as negative were from dairy cattle maintained  
343 in tick-free facilities from farms with no clinical history of bovine anaplasmosis. The  
344 135 positive sera were from cattle positive for *A. marginale* using nested PCR and serology.

345 One study suggested that antibodies from cattle experimentally infected with  
346 *A. phagocytophilum* will test positive in the C-ELISA (Dreher *et al.*, 2005). However, in another  
347 study no cross-reactivity could be demonstrated, and the mAb used in the assay did not react  
348 with *A. phagocytophilum* MSP5 in direct binding assays (Strik *et al.*, 2007). Cross reactivity  
349 has been demonstrated between *A. marginale* and *Ehrlichia* spp, in naturally and  
350 experimentally infected cattle (Al-Adhami *et al.*, 2011). Earlier studies had shown that the C-  
351 ELISA was 100% specific using 261 known negative sera from a non-endemic region,  
352 detecting acutely infected cattle as early as 16 days after experimental tick or blood  
353 inoculation, and was demonstrated to detect cattle that have been experimentally infected as  
354 long as 6 years previously (Knowles *et al.*, 1996). In detecting persistently infected cattle from  
355 an anaplasmosis endemic region that were defined as true positive or negative using a nested  
356 PCR procedure, the rMSP5 C-ELISA had a sensitivity of 96% and a specificity of 95% (Torioni

357 ~~De Echaide et al., 1998) *A. marginale* and *Ehrlichia* sp. BOV2010 isolated in Canada, in~~  
358 ~~naturally and experimentally infected cattle (Al-Adhami et al, 2011).~~

359 Test results using the rMSP5 C-ELISA are available in less than 2-5-hours. A test kit is  
360 available commercially that contains specific instructions. Users should follow the  
361 manufacturer's instructions. In general, however, it is conducted as follows.

#### 362 **2.1.1. Kit reagents**

- 363 ~~A 96-well microtitre plate coated with rMSP5 antigen,~~
- 364 ~~A 96-well coated adsorption/transfer plate for serum adsorption to reduce background~~  
365 ~~binding,~~
- 366 ~~400×Mab<sub>2</sub>peroxidase conjugate,~~
- 367 ~~40× wash solution and ready-to-use conjugate diluting buffer,~~
- 368 ~~Ready-to-use substrate and stop solutions,~~
- 369 ~~Positive and negative controls~~

#### 370 **2.1.2. Test procedure**

- 371 ~~i) Add 70 µl of undiluted serum sample to the coated adsorption/transfer plate and~~  
372 ~~incubate at room temperature for 30 minutes.~~
- 373 ~~ii) Transfer 50 µl per well of the adsorbed undiluted serum to the rMSP5-coated plate~~  
374 ~~and incubate at room temperature for 60 minutes.~~
- 375 ~~ii) Discard the serum and wash the plate twice using diluted wash solution.~~
- 376 ~~iii) Add 50 µl per well of the 1× diluted MAb<sub>2</sub>peroxidase conjugate to the rMSP5-~~  
377 ~~coated plate wells, and incubate at room temperature for 20 minutes.~~
- 378 ~~iv) Discard the 1×diluted MAb<sub>2</sub>peroxidase conjugate and wash the plate four times~~  
379 ~~using diluted wash solution.~~
- 380 ~~v) Add 50 µl per well of the substrate solution, cover the plate with foil, and incubate~~  
381 ~~for 20 minutes at room temperature.~~
- 382 ~~vi) Add 50 µl per well of stop solution to the substrate solution already in the wells and~~  
383 ~~gently tap the sides of the plate to mix the wells.~~
- 384 ~~vii) Immediately read the plate in the plate reader at 620, 630 or 650 nm.~~

#### 385 **2.1.3. Test validation**

386 ~~The mean average optical density (OD) of the negative control must range from 0.40 to~~  
387 ~~2.10. The average per cent inhibition of the positive control must be ≥30%.~~

#### 388 **2.1.4. Interpretation of the results**

389 ~~The % inhibition is calculated as follows:~~

$$100 - \frac{\text{Sample OD} \times 100}{\text{Mean negative control OD}} = \text{Per cent inhibition}$$

390 ~~% inhibition = 100[1 - (Sample OD ÷ Negative Control OD)]~~

391 ~~Samples with <30% inhibition are negative. Samples with ≥30% inhibition are positive.~~

392 ~~Specificity of the MSP5 C-ELISA may be increased by using a higher percentage inhibition~~  
393 ~~cut-off value (Bradway et al., 2001); however the effect of this change on sensitivity has not~~  
394 ~~been thoroughly evaluated.~~

395 Recently, an improved MSP5 C-ELISA was developed by replacing rMBP-MSP5 with rGST-  
396 MSP5 in addition to an improvement in the antigen-coating method by using a specific catcher  
397 system. The new rMSP5-GST C-ELISA was faster, simpler, had a higher specificity and an  
398 improved resolution compared with the rMSP5-MBP C-ELISA with MBP adsorption (Chung *et*  
399 *al.*, 2014).

## 400 2.2. Indirect enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay

401 An I-ELISA was first developed using the CAT antigen, which is a crude *A. marginale* lysate  
402 (see below), ~~and it~~ The test can be implemented where the commercial C-ELISA is not  
403 available. Unlike the C-ELISA, most reagents, such as buffers and ready-to dissolve  
404 substrates, are available commercially in many countries. Any laboratory can prepare the  
405 antigen using local strains of *A. marginale*, though standardised methods have not been  
406 developed. I-ELISA uses small amounts of serum and antigen that ~~and the sensitivity and~~  
407 ~~specificity of the test standardised with true positive and negative sera is as good as for the~~  
408 ~~C-ELISA. As it can be prepared in each laboratory,~~ Only the general procedure is described  
409 here (Barry *et al.*, 1986). For commercial kits, the manufacturer's instructions should be  
410 followed. In the case of in-house I-ELISA The sensitivity and specificity of the test was 87.3%  
411 and 98.4–99.6% respectively, though this varied by laboratory (Nielsen *et al.*, 1996). For  
412 general methods, refer to Barry *et al.* (1986). Initial bodies and membranes are obtained as  
413 for the complement fixation test (Rogers *et al.*, 1964). This antigen is treated with 0.1% sodium  
414 dodecyl sulphate for 30 minutes prior to fixing the antigen to the microtitre plate. For each  
415 laboratory, the specific amount of antigen has to must be adjusted optimised to obtain the best  
416 reading and the least expenditure.

417 Alternatively, rMSP5 can be used as the antigen in this test. This eliminates the need for  
418 preparation and standardisation of antigen derived from splenectomised, *A. marginale* infected  
419 animals (Silva *et al.*, 2006). In a comparison between I-ELISA using the CAT antigen and  
420 rMSP with a histidine tag (rMSP5-HIS), these two I-ELISAs performed identically. In this  
421 comparison, IFAT was used as the gold standard test (Silva *et al.*, 2006).

422 Test results using the I-ELISA are available in about 4 to 5 hours. It is generally conducted as  
423 follows:

### 424 2.2.1. Test reagents

425 A 96-well microtitre plate coated with ~~crude~~ *A. marginale* antigen,  
426 PBS/Tween buffer, (PBS 0.1 M, pH 7.2, Tween 20 0.05%),  
427 Blocking reagent (e.g. commercial dried skim milk)  
428 Tris buffer 0.1 M, MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.1 M, NaCl, 0.05 M, pH 9.8  
429 Substrate *p*-Nitrophenyl phosphate disodium hexahydrate  
430 Positive and negative controls.

### 431 2.2.2. Test procedure (this test is run in triplicate)

- 432 i) Plates can be prepared ahead of time and kept under airtight conditions at –20°C.
- 433 ii) Carefully remove the plastic packaging before using plates, being careful not to  
434 touch the bottom of them as this can distort the optical density reading.
- 435 iii) Remove the lid and deposit 200 µl PBST20 solution in each well and incubate at  
436 room temperature (RT) for 5 minutes.
- 437 iv) For one plate, dissolve 1.1 g of skim milk (blocking agent) in 22 ml of PBST20.
- 438 v) Remove the plate contents and deposit in each well 200 µl of blocking solution, put  
439 the lid on and incubate at 37°C for 60 minutes.
- 440 vi) Wash the plate three times for 5 minutes with PBST20.
- 441 vii) Dilute all serum samples including controls 1/100 in PBST20 solution.



- 442 viii) Remove the contents of the plate and deposit 200 µl of diluted serum in each of  
443 the three wells for each dilution, starting with the positive and negative and blank  
444 controls.
- 445 ix) Incubate plate at 37°C covered for 60 minutes.
- 446 x) Wash three times as described in **point-subsection** vi.
- 447 xi) Dilute 1/1000 anti-IgG bovine alkaline phosphatase conjugate in PBST20 solution.  
448 Add 200 µl of the diluted conjugate per well. Incubate the covered plate at 37°C for  
449 60 minutes.
- 450 xii) Remove the lid and wash three times as described in point vi above ~~make three~~  
451 ~~washes with PBST20.~~
- 452 xiii) Remove the contents of the plate and deposit 195 µl of 0.075% *p*-Nitrophenyl  
453 phosphate disodium hexahydrate in Tris buffer in each well and incubate at 37°C  
454 for 60 minutes.
- 455 xiv) The reaction is quantified by a microplate reader spectrophotometer, adjusted to  
456 405 nm wavelength. The data are expressed in optical density (OD).

### 457 2.2.3. Data analysis

458 Analysis of results should take into account the following parameters.

- 459 i) The mean value of the blank wells.
- 460 ii) The mean value of the positive wells with their respective standard deviations.
- 461 iii) The mean value of negative wells with their respective standard deviations.
- 462 iv) The mean value of the blank wells is subtracted from the mean of all the other  
463 samples if not automatically subtracted by the ELISA reader.
- 464 v) Control sera are titrated to give optical density values ranging from 0.90 to 1.50 for  
465 the positive and, 0.15 to 0.30 for the negative control.

466 Positive values are those above the cut-off calculated value which is the sum of the  
467 average of the negative and two times the standard deviation.

468 For purposes of assessing the consistency of the test operator, the error “E” must also  
469 be estimated; this is calculated by determining the percentage represented by the  
470 standard deviation of any against their mean serum.

471 As with all diagnostic tests, it is important to measure **repeatability-reproducibility**. For  
472 more details see Chapter 2.2.4 *Measurement uncertainty*.

### 473 2.3. Displacement double-antigen sandwich ELISA to differentiate between *A. marginale* 474 and *A. centrale* antibodies

475 In regions where vaccination with *A. centrale* is used to control bovine anaplasmosis,  
476 differentiation between *A. centrale*-vaccinated and *A. marginale*-infected animals may be  
477 useful. Because there is often high amino acid identity between *A. marginale* and *A. centrale*  
478 surface proteins, identifying unique targets for serological assays for this purpose is difficult.  
479 Epitopes from MSP5 (aa28-210, without the transmembrane region) that are not shared  
480 between *A. marginale* and *A. centrale* were used to develop a displacement double-antigen  
481 sandwich ELISA (ddasELISA) (Bellezze *et al.*, 2023; Sarli *et al.*, 2020). The recombinant  
482 MSP5 epitopes from *A. marginale* or *A. centrale* are expressed in *E. coli* with a histidine tag  
483 and purified. The ELISA plates are then coated with either the recombinant *A. marginale* MSP5  
484 epitope, or the *A. centrale* MSP5 epitope and blocked. Serum is added to the wells and allowed  
485 to incubate. Following washing, a combination of biotinylated and non-biotinylated  
486 recombinant proteins are added to improve specificity of the reaction (see below for specifics).  
487 The protein-biotin binding to the serum antibody is detected with a peroxidase-streptavidin  
488 based detection system. The optical density for the *A. marginale* MSP5-coated well (ODAm)  
489 and the OD for the *A. centrale* MSP5 (ODAc) coated well for each animal is measured. If the



490 OD for either target is <0.2, the sample is excluded from the analysis. For the remaining  
491 samples, the ratio between the OD values (ODAm/ODAc) is calculated. If the ratio is >0.38  
492 the sample is considered positive for anti-*A. marginale* antibodies, and a ratio ≤ 0.38 is  
493 classified as vaccinated with *A. centrale*.

494 For the detection of *A. marginale* the test has a diagnostic specificity of 98% and a diagnostic  
495 sensitivity of 98.9%. For 702 field samples evaluated, 131 (19%) had an OD <0.2 in the  
496 ddasELISA and thus were excluded from the analysis. Of those animals, 52% were nested  
497 PCR positive for *A. marginale*, 23% were nested PCR positive for *A. centrale*, 4.6% were  
498 nested PCR positive for *A. marginale* and *A. centrale*, 20% were nested PCR negative for  
499 both, suggesting the ddasELISA may lack sensitivity.

500 Of the 571 ddasELISA positive field samples, the agreement between the ddasELISA and  
501 nested PCR was 84% and the kappa coefficient was 0.70 (95% CI: 0.635–0.754), indicating  
502 substantial agreement between tests. There was agreement between the ddasELISA and  
503 nested PCR for 93% of the *A. marginale* ddasELISA positive samples and 86% of the *A.*  
504 *centrale* ddasELISA positive samples. Additionally, 36 nested PCR negative samples tested  
505 positive for antibodies against *A. marginale* (n=28) or *A. centrale* (n=8) by ddasELISA. This  
506 test could not identify animals with co-infections, meaning animals vaccinated with *A. centrale*  
507 that are then infected with *A. marginale*, which is not uncommon.

508 Test results using the ddasELISA are available in 5–6 hours. It is conducted as outlined below,  
509 see Bellezze *et al.*, 2023 for more details.

### 510 **2.3.1. Test reagents**

- 511 i) A 96-well microtitre plate coated with either *A. marginale* or *A. centrale* recombinant  
512 protein
- 513 ii) PBS/Tween buffer (PBS (50mM sodium phosphate, 150 mM NaCl, pH 7.2) with  
514 0.05% Tween-20)
- 515 iii) Blocking reagent (PBS with 10% commercial dried skim milk)
- 516 iv) Purified recombinant *A. marginale* MSP5 epitopes and *A. centrale* epitopes
- 517 v) Biotinylated recombinant *A. marginale* MSP5 epitopes and *A. centrale* epitopes
- 518 vi) Streptavidin-horse radish peroxidase (HRP) detection system
- 519 vii) Chromogenic substrate (1 mM 2,2'-Azinobis [3-ethylbenzothiazoline-6-sulfonic  
520 acid]-diammonium salt in 0.05 M sodium citrate, pH 4.5, 0.0025% V/V H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (100  
521 µl/well).
- 522 viii) ELISA plate reader (405 nm reading)
- 523 ix) Positive and negative control sera for *A. marginale* and *A. centrale*

### 524 **2.3.2. Test procedure**

- 525 i) Plates are coated overnight.
- 526 ii) Block with blocking buffer for 1 hour at room temperature and wash three times  
527 with PBS/Tween buffer.
- 528 iii) Add undiluted serum 100 µl/well and incubate at 25°C for 1 hour at 100 rpm.
- 529 iv) Wash three times with PBS/Tween buffer.
- 530 v) Add 100 µl of *A. marginale* MSP5-biotin (1 µg/ml) plus *A. centrale* MSP5 (10 µg/ml)  
531 to *A. marginale* test wells. Add *A. centrale* MSP5-biotin (1 µg/ml) plus *A. marginale*  
532 MSP5 (10 µg/ml) in PBS/Tween buffer + 10% fat-free dried milk to *A. centrale* test  
533 wells.
- 534 vi) Incubate at 25°C for 1 hour at 100 rpm and wash the plate five times with  
535 PBS/Tween buffer.

- 536 vii) To detect the bound protein–biotin complex, add streptavidin-HRP diluted in 1/500  
537 in PBS/Tween buffer with 10% dried milk for 1 hour at 25°C, 100 rpm.
- 538 vii) Wash five times with PBS/Tween buffer.
- 539 ix) Add chromogenic substrate based on manufacturer's instructions.
- 540 x) The reaction is measured by microplate reader spectrophotometer at 405 nm  
541 wavelength. The data are expressed in optical density (OD).
- 542 xi)  $OD_{405nm} \leq 0.2$  is considered negative.
- 543 xii) Results are expressed as the ratio between antibodies specific for *A. marginale*  
544 MSP5 and for *A. centrale* MSP5 (ODAm/ODAc). If the ratio is  $>0.38$  the sample is  
545 considered positive for anti-*A. marginale* antibodies, and a ratio  $\leq 0.38$  is classified  
546 as vaccinated with *A. centrale*.

## 547 2.4. Card agglutination test

548 ~~The advantages of the CAT are that it is sensitive~~ The sensitivity of the CAT is from 84% to  
549 98% (Gonzalez *et al.*, 1978; Molloy *et al.*, 1999) and the specificity is 98.6% (Molloy *et al.*,  
550 1999). Though sometimes giving variable results, the CAT can be useful under certain  
551 circumstances, as it may be undertaken either in the laboratory or in the field, and it gives a  
552 result within a few minutes. Nonspecific reactions may be a problem, and subjectivity in  
553 interpreting assay reactions can result in variability in test interpretation. In addition, the CAT  
554 antigen, which is a ~~suspension-lysate~~ of *A. marginale* particles isolated from erythrocytes, can  
555 be difficult to prepare and can vary from batch to batch and laboratory to laboratory. To obtain  
556 the antigen, splenectomised calves are infected by intravenous inoculation with blood  
557 containing ~~Anaplasma~~ *A. marginale*-infected erythrocytes. When the rickettsaemia exceeds  
558 50%, the animal is exsanguinated, the infected erythrocytes are washed, lysed, and the  
559 erythrocyte ghosts and ~~Anaplasma~~ particles-*A. marginale* are pelleted. The pellets are  
560 sonicated, washed, and then resuspended in a stain solution to produce the antigen  
561 suspension.

562 A test procedure that has been slightly modified from that originally described (Amerault &  
563 Roby, 1968; Amerault *et al.*, 1972) is as follows, and is based on controlled conditions in a  
564 laboratory setting:

### 565 2.4.1. Test procedure

- 566 i) Ensure all test components are at a temperature of 25–26°C before use (this  
567 constant temperature is critical for the test).
- 568 ii) On each circle of the test card (a clear perspex/plastic or glass plate marked with  
569 circles that are 18 mm in diameter), place next to each other, but not touching,  
570 10 µl of bovine serum factor (BSF), 10 µl of test serum, and 5 µl of CAT antigen<sup>1</sup>.  
571 Negative and low positive control sera must be tested on each card.
- 572 BSF is serum from a selected animal with high known conglutinin level. If the  
573 conglutinin level is unknown, fresh serum from a healthy animal known to be free  
574 from *Anaplasma* can be used. The BSF must be stored at –70°C in small aliquots,  
575 a fresh aliquot being used each time the tests are performed. The inclusion of BSF  
576 improves the sensitivity of the test.
- 577 iii) Mix well with a glass stirrer. After mixing each test, wipe the stirrer with clean tissue  
578 to prevent cross-contamination.
- 579 iv) Place the test card in a humid chamber and rock at 100–110 rpm for 7 minutes.

---

<sup>1</sup> The test as conducted in the USA and Mexico uses larger volumes of reagents: antigen (15 µl), serum (30 µl), and bovine serum factor (30 µl), and a 4-minute reaction time (see step iv).

580 v) Read immediately against a backlight. Characteristic clumping of the antigen  
581 (graded from +1 to +3) is considered to be a positive result. The test is considered  
582 to give a negative result when there is no characteristic clumping.

583 A latex card agglutination test, a relatively simple and rapid test platform, has been partially  
584 validated. This test uses rMSP5-HIS rather than *A. marginale* lysate and does not require BSF.  
585 The performance of this test was compared with that of the I-ELISA using rMSP5-HIS as the  
586 antigen. The relative sensitivity was 95.2% and relative specificity was 91.86% (Ramos *et al.*,  
587 2014).

#### 588 **2.4. Complement fixation test**

589 ~~The complement fixation (CF) test has been used extensively for many years; however, it~~  
590 ~~shows variable sensitivity (ranging from 20 to 60%), possibly reflecting differences in~~  
591 ~~techniques for antigen production, and poor reproducibility. In addition, it has been~~  
592 ~~demonstrated that the CF assay fails to detect a significant proportion of carrier cattle~~  
593 ~~(Bradway *et al.*, 2001). It is also uncertain as to whether or not the CF test can identify~~  
594 ~~antibodies in acutely infected animals prior to other assays (Coetzee *et al.*, 2007; Molloy *et al.*,~~  
595 ~~1999). Therefore, the CF test is no longer recommended as a reliable assay for detecting~~  
596 ~~infected animals.~~

#### 597 **2.5. Indirect fluorescent antibody test**

598 Because of the limitations on the number of indirect fluorescent antibody (IFA) tests that can  
599 be performed daily by one operator, other serological tests are generally preferred to the IFA  
600 test. The IFA test is performed as described for bovine babesiosis in chapter 3.4.2, except that  
601 *A. marginale* infected blood is used for the preparation of antigen smears. A serious problem  
602 encountered with the test is nonspecific fluorescence. The reported sensitivity is 97.6% and  
603 specificity 89.6% (Gonzalez *et al.*, 1978). Antigen made from blood collected as soon as  
604 adequate rickettsaemia (5–10%) occurs is most likely to be suitable. Nonspecific fluorescence  
605 due to antibodies adhering to infected erythrocytes can be reduced by washing the  
606 erythrocytes in an acidic glycine buffer before antigen smears are prepared. Infected  
607 erythrocytes are washed twice in 0.1 M glycine buffer (pH 3.0, centrifuged at 1000 *g* for  
608 15 minutes at 4°C) and then once in PBS, pH 7.4. Recently published data show that the IFA,  
609 like the C-ELISA, can cross react with other members of the *Anaplasmataceae* family, and  
610 specifically an *Ehrlichia* spp. identified as BOV2010 (Al-Adhami *et al.*, 2011).

#### 611 **2.6. Complement fixation test**

612 The complement fixation test (CFT) was used extensively for many years; however, it has  
613 variable sensitivity (ranging from 20 to 60%), possibly reflecting differences in techniques for  
614 antigen production, and poor reproducibility. In addition, the CF assay fails to detect a  
615 significant proportion of carrier cattle (Bradway *et al.*, 2001). It is also uncertain as to whether  
616 or not the CF test can identify antibodies in acutely infected animals prior to other assays  
617 (Coetzee *et al.*, 2007; Molloy *et al.*, 1999). Therefore, the CF test is no longer recommended  
618 as a reliable assay for detecting infected animals.

### 619 **C. REQUIREMENTS FOR VACCINES**

#### 620 **1. Background**

621 Several immunisation methods have been used to protect cattle against anaplasmosis in countries  
622 where the disease is endemic, but none is ideal to date (McHardy, 1984). A review of *A. marginale*  
623 vaccines and antigens has been published (Kocan *et al.*, 2003-2010; Noh *et al.*, 2012). Use of the less  
624 pathogenic *A. centrale*, which gives partial cross-protection against *A. marginale*, is the most widely  
625 accepted method, although not used in many countries ~~where the disease is exotic~~, including north  
626 America.

627 In this section, the production of live *A. centrale* vaccine is described. It involves infection of a  
628 susceptible, splenectomised calf and the use of its blood as a vaccine. Detailed accounts of the  
629 production procedure are available and reference should be made to these publications for details of  
630 the procedures outlined here (Bock *et al.*, 2004; de Vos & Jorgensen, 1992; Pipano, 1995).

631 Guidelines for the production of veterinary vaccines are given in Chapter 1.1.8 *Principles of veterinary*  
632 *vaccine production*. The guidelines given here and in Chapter 1.1.8 are intended to be general in nature  
633 and may be supplemented by national and regional requirements.

634 *Anaplasma centrale* vaccine can be provided in either frozen or chilled form depending on demand,  
635 transport networks, and the availability of liquid nitrogen or dry ice supplies. Frozen vaccine is  
636 recommended in most instances, as it allows for thorough post-production quality control of each batch.  
637 It is, however, more costly to produce and more difficult to transport than chilled vaccine. The risk of  
638 contamination makes post-production control essential, but may be prohibitively expensive.

## 639 2. Outline of production and minimum requirements for conventional vaccines

### 640 2.1. Characteristics of the seed

#### 641 2.1.1. Biological characteristics

642 *Anaplasma centrale* was isolated in 1911 in South Africa and has been used as a  
643 vaccine in South America, Australia, Africa, the Middle East, and South-East Asia. It  
644 affords only partial, but adequate, protection in regions where the ~~challenging-circulating~~  
645 strains are of moderate virulence (e.g. Australia) (Bock & de Vos, 2001). In the humid  
646 tropics where *A. marginale* ~~appears to~~ may be a very more virulent ~~rickettsia~~, the  
647 protection afforded by *A. centrale* may be inadequate to prevent disease in some  
648 animals.

649 *Anaplasma centrale* usually causes benign infections, especially if used in calves under  
650 9 months of age. Severe reactions following vaccination have been reported when adult  
651 cattle are inoculated. The suitability of an isolate of *A. centrale* as a vaccine can be  
652 determined by inoculating susceptible cattle, monitoring the subsequent reactions, and  
653 then challenging the animals and susceptible controls with a virulent local strain of  
654 *A. marginale*. Both safety and efficacy can be judged by monitoring rickettsaemias in  
655 stained blood films and the depression of packed cell volumes of inoculated cattle during  
656 the vaccination and challenge reaction periods.

657 Infective material for preparing the vaccine is readily stored as frozen stabilates of  
658 infected blood in liquid nitrogen or dry ice. Dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO) ~~and~~ or  
659 polyvinylpyrrolidone M.W. 40,000 (Bock *et al.*, 2004) are the recommended  
660 cryopreservatives, as they allow for intravenous administration after thawing of the  
661 stabilate. A detailed account of the freezing technique using DMSO is reported  
662 elsewhere (Mellors *et al.*, 1982), but briefly involves the following: infected blood is  
663 collected, chilled to 4°C, and cold cryoprotectant (4 M DMSO in PBS) is added slowly  
664 with stirring to a final blood:protectant ratio of 1:1, to give a final concentration of 2 M  
665 DMSO. The entire dilution procedure is carried out in an ice bath and the diluted blood  
666 is dispensed into suitable containers (e.g. 5 ml cryovials), and frozen, as soon as  
667 possible, in the vapour phase of a liquid nitrogen container.

#### 668 2.1.2. Quality criteria

669 Evidence of purity of the *A. centrale* isolate can be determined by serological testing of  
670 paired sera from the cattle used in the safety test for possible ~~contaminants~~ pathogens  
671 that may be present (Bock *et al.*, 2004; Pipano, 1997). Donor calves used to expand  
672 the seed for vaccine production should be examined for all blood-borne infections  
673 prevalent in the vaccine-producing country, including *Babesia*, *Anaplasma*, *Ehrlichia*,  
674 *Theileria* and *Trypanosoma*. This can be done by routine examination of stained blood  
675 films after splenectomy, PCR, and preferably also by serology. Any calves showing  
676 evidence of natural infections of any of these agents should be rejected. The absence  
677 of other infective agents should also be confirmed. These may include the agents of

678 enzootic bovine leukosis, mucosal disease, infectious bovine rhinotracheitis, ephemeral  
679 fever, Akabane disease, bluetongue, and foot and mouth disease, ~~and rinderpest~~. The  
680 testing procedures will depend on the diseases prevalent in the country and the  
681 availability of tests but should involve serology of paired sera at the very least and, in  
682 some cases, virus isolation, antigen, or DNA/RNA detection (Bock *et al.*, 2004; Pipano,  
683 1981; 1997).

## 684 2.2. Method of manufacture

### 685 2.2.1. Procedure

#### 686 i) Production of frozen vaccine

687 Quantities of the frozen stabilate (5–10 ml) are thawed by immersing the vials in  
688 water preheated to 40°C. The thawed material is kept on ice and used as soon as  
689 possible (within 30 minutes) to infect a susceptible, splenectomised calf by  
690 intravenous inoculation.

691 The rickettsaemia of ~~the~~ this donor calf is monitored daily by examining stained  
692 films of jugular blood, and the blood is collected for vaccine production when  
693 suitable rickettsaemias are reached. A rickettsaemia of  $1 \times 10^9$ /ml (approximately  
694 2% rickettsaemia in jugular blood) is the minimum required for production of  
695 vaccine as this is the dose to vaccinate a bovine. If a suitable rickettsaemia is not  
696 obtained, passage of the strain by subinoculation of 100–200 ml of blood to a  
697 second splenectomised calf may be necessary.

698 Blood from the donor is collected by aseptic jugular or carotid cannulation using  
699 heparin as an anticoagulant (5 International Units [IU] heparin/ml blood). The use  
700 of blood collection units for human use are also suitable and guarantee sterility and  
701 obviate the need to prepare glass flasks that make the procedure more  
702 cumbersome.

703 In the laboratory, the infective blood is mixed in equal volumes with 3 M glycerol in  
704 PBS supplemented with 5 mM glucose at 37°C (final concentration of glycerol  
705 1.5 M). The mixture is then equilibrated at 37°C for 30 minutes and dispensed into  
706 suitable containers (e.g. 5 ml cryovials). The vials are cooled at approximately  
707 10°C/minute in the vapour phase of liquid nitrogen and, when frozen, stored in the  
708 liquid phase (Bock *et al.*, 2004).

709 DMSO can be used as a cryoprotectant in the place of glycerol. This is done in the  
710 same way as outlined for the preparation of seed stabilate (Mellors *et al.*, 1982;  
711 Pipano, 1981).

712 If glycerolised vaccine is to be diluted, the diluent should consist of PBS with 1.5 M  
713 glycerol and 5 mM glucose (Jorgensen *et al.*, 1989). Vaccine cryopreserved with  
714 DMSO should be diluted with diluent containing the same concentration of DMSO  
715 as in the original cryopreserved blood (Pipano *et al.*, 1986).

#### 716 ii) Production of chilled vaccine

717 Infective material for chilled vaccine is prepared in the same way as for frozen  
718 vaccine, but it must be issued and used as soon as possible after collection. The  
719 infective blood can be diluted to provide  $1 \times 10^7$  parasites per dose of vaccine. A  
720 suitable diluent is 10% sterile bovine serum in a glucose/balanced salt solution  
721 containing the following quantities per litre: NaCl (7.00 g),  $MgCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$  (0.34 g),  
722 glucose (1.00 g),  $Na_2HPO_4$  (2.52 g),  $KH_2PO_4$  (0.90 g), and  $NaHCO_3$  (0.52 g).

723 If diluent is not available, acid citrate dextrose (20% [v/v]) or citrate phosphate  
724 dextrose (20% [v/v]) should be used as anticoagulant to provide the glucose  
725 necessary for survival of the organisms.



726  
727  
728  
729  
730  
731  
732  
  
733  
734  
  
735  
736  
737  
738  
739  
740  
741  
742  
743  
  
744  
745  
  
746  
  
747  
748  
749  
750  
751  
  
752  
  
753  
  
754  
755  
756  
757  
  
758  
759  
760  
761  
762  
763  
  
764  
  
765  
766  
767  
  
768  
  
769  
770  
771  
772  
773  
774

**iii) Use of vaccine**

In the case of frozen vaccine, vials should be thawed by immersion in water, preheated to 37°C to 40°C, and the contents mixed with suitable diluent to the required dilution. If glycerolised vaccine is prepared, it should be kept cool and used within 8 hours (Bock *et al.*, 2004). If DMSO is used as a cryoprotectant, the prepared vaccine should be kept on ice and used within 15–30 minutes (Pipano, 1981). The vaccine is most commonly administered subcutaneously.

**iv) Chilled vaccine should be kept refrigerated and used within 4–7 days of preparation.**

The strain of *A. centrale* used in the vaccine is of reduced virulence, but is not entirely safe. A practical recommendation is, therefore, to limit the use of vaccine to calves, where nonspecific immunity will minimise the risk of vaccine reactions. When older animals have to be vaccinated, there is a risk of severe reactions. These reactions occur infrequently, but valuable breeding stock or pregnant animals obviously warrant close attention, and should be observed daily for 3 weeks post-vaccination. Clinically sick animals should be treated with oxytetracycline or imidocarb at dosages recommended by the manufacturers. Protective immunity develops in 6–8 weeks and usually lasts for several years.

Anaplasmosis and babesiosis vaccines are often used concurrently, but it is not advisable to use any other vaccines at the same time (Bock *et al.*, 2004).

**2.2.2. Requirements for substrates and media**

~~*Anaplasma centrale* cannot~~ can be cultured in vitro *Rhipicephalus appendiculatus* and *Dermacentor variabilis* cells lines, though antigen expression and immunogenicity of the cultured *A. centrale* need to be tested (Bell-Sakyi *et al.*, 2015). No substrates or media other than buffers and diluents are used in vaccine production. DMSO or glycerol should be purchased from reputable companies.

**2.2.3. In-process controls**

**i) Source and maintenance of vaccine donors**

A source of calves free from natural infections of ~~*Anaplasma*~~ *A. marginale* and other tick-borne diseases should be identified. If a suitable source is not available, it may be necessary to breed the calves under tick-free conditions specifically for the purpose of vaccine production.

The calves should be maintained under conditions that will prevent exposure to infectious diseases and to ticks and biting insects. In the absence of suitable facilities, the risk of contamination with the agents of infectious diseases present in the country involved should be estimated, and the benefits of local production of vaccine weighed against the possible adverse consequences of spreading disease (Bock *et al.*, 2004).

**ii) Surgery**

Donor calves should be splenectomised to allow maximum yield of organisms for production of vaccine. This is best carried out in young calves and under general anaesthesia.

**iii) Screening of vaccine donors before inoculation**

As for preparation of seed stabilate, donor calves for vaccine production should be examined for all blood-borne infections prevalent in the vaccine-producing country, including *Babesia*, *Anaplasma*, *Ehrlichia*, *Theileria* and *Trypanosoma*. This can be done by routine examination of stained blood films after splenectomy, and preferably also by serology. Any calves showing evidence of natural infections of any of these agents should be rejected. The absence of other infective agents



775 should also be confirmed. These may include the agents of enzootic bovine  
776 leukosis, bovine viral diarrhoea, infectious bovine rhinotracheitis, ephemeral fever,  
777 Akabane disease, bluetongue, and foot and mouth disease. The testing  
778 procedures will depend on the diseases prevalent in the country and the availability  
779 of tests, but should involve serology of paired sera at the very least and, in some  
780 cases, virus isolation, antigen, or DNA/RNA detection (Bock *et al.*, 2004; Pipano,  
781 1981; 1997).

#### 782 **iv) Monitoring of rickettsaemias following inoculation**

783 It is necessary to determine the concentration of rickettsia in blood being collected  
784 for vaccine. The rickettsial concentration can be estimated from the erythrocyte  
785 count and the rickettsaemia (percentage of infected erythrocytes).

#### 786 **v) Collection of blood for vaccine**

787 All equipment should be sterilised before use (e.g. by autoclaving). Once the  
788 required rickettsaemia is reached, the blood is collected in heparin using strict  
789 aseptic techniques. This is best done if the calf is sedated and with the use of a  
790 closed-circuit collection system.

791 Up to 3 litres of heavily infected blood can be collected from a 6-month-old calf. If  
792 the calf is to live, the transfusion of a similar amount of blood from a suitable donor  
793 is indicated. Alternatively, the calf should be killed immediately after collection of  
794 the blood.

#### 795 **vi) Dispensing of vaccine**

796 All procedures are performed in a suitable environment, such as a laminar flow  
797 cabinet, using standard sterile techniques. Use of a mechanical or magnetic stirrer  
798 will ensure thorough mixing of blood and diluent throughout the dispensing  
799 process. Penicillin (500,000 IU/litre) and streptomycin (370,000 µg/litre) are added  
800 to the vaccine at the time of dispensing.

### 801 **2.2.4. Final product batch tests**

802 The potency, safety and sterility of vaccine batches cannot be determined in the case  
803 of chilled vaccine, and specifications for frozen vaccine depend on the country involved.  
804 The following are the specifications for frozen vaccine produced in Australia.

#### 805 **i) Sterility and purity**

806 Standard tests for sterility are employed for each batch of vaccine and diluent (see  
807 Chapter 1.1.9 *Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological*  
808 *materials intended for veterinary use*).

809 The absence of contaminants is determined by doing appropriate serological  
810 testing of donor cattle, by inoculating donor lymphocytes into sheep and then  
811 monitoring them for evidence of viral infection, and by inoculating cattle and  
812 monitoring them serologically for infectious agents that could potentially  
813 contaminate the vaccine. Cattle inoculated during the test for potency (see Section  
814 C.2.2.4.iii) are suitable for the purpose. Depending on the country of origin of the  
815 vaccine, these agents include the causative organisms of enzootic bovine leukosis,  
816 infectious bovine rhinotracheitis, bovine viral diarrhoea, ephemeral fever, Akabane  
817 disease, Aino virus, bluetongue, parainfluenza, foot and mouth disease, lumpy skin  
818 disease, rabies, Rift Valley fever, contagious bovine pleuropneumonia, Jembrana  
819 disease, heartwater, pathogenic *Theileria* and *Trypanosoma spp.*, *Brucella*  
820 *abortus*, *Coxiella*, and *Leptospira* (Bock *et al.*, 2004; Pipano, 1981; 1997). Other  
821 pathogens to consider include the causal agents of bovine tuberculosis and  
822 brucellosis as they may spread through contaminated blood used for vaccine  
823 production. Most of these agents can be tested by means of specific PCR and there

824 are many publications describing primers, and assay conditions for any particular  
825 disease.

## 826 ii) Safety

827 Vaccine reactions of the cattle inoculated in the test for potency (see Chapter 1.1.8  
828 *Principles of veterinary vaccine production*) are monitored by measuring  
829 rickettsaemia and depression of packed cell volume. Only batches with  
830 pathogenicity levels equal to or lower than a predetermined standard are released  
831 for use.

## 832 iii) Potency

833 Vaccine is thawed and diluted 1/5 with a suitable diluent (Bock *et al.*, 2004). The  
834 diluted vaccine is then incubated for 8 hours at 4°C, and five cattle are inoculated  
835 subcutaneously with 2 ml doses. The inoculated cattle are monitored for the  
836 presence of infections by examination of stained blood smears. All should become  
837 infected for a batch to be accepted. A batch proving to be infective is recommended  
838 for use at a dilution of 1/5 with isotonic diluent.

## 839 2.3. Requirements for authorisation

### 840 2.3.1. Safety

841 The strain of *A. centrale* used in vaccine is of reduced virulence but is not entirely safe.  
842 A practical recommendation is, therefore, to limit the use of vaccine to calves, where  
843 nonspecific immunity will minimise the risk of vaccine reactions. When older animals  
844 have to be vaccinated, there is a risk of severe reactions. These reactions occur  
845 infrequently, but valuable breeding stock or pregnant animals obviously warrant close  
846 attention, and should be observed daily for 3 weeks post-vaccination. Clinically sick  
847 animals should be treated with oxytetracycline or imidocarb at dosages recommended  
848 by the manufacturers.

849 *Anaplasma centrale* is not infective to other species, and the vaccine is not considered  
850 to have other adverse environmental effects. The vaccine is not infective for humans.  
851 When the product is stored in liquid nitrogen, the usual precautions pertaining to the  
852 storage, transportation and handling of deep-frozen material applies.

### 853 2.3.2. Efficacy requirements

854 ~~Partial but long-lasting immunity results from one inoculation. There is no evidence that~~  
855 ~~repeated vaccination will have a boosting effect. Immunisation with live *A. centrale*~~  
856 ~~results in long-term infection of the vaccinee, thus repeated vaccination is unnecessary.~~  
857 ~~Infection with *A. centrale* does not prevent subsequent infection with *A. marginale*, but~~  
858 ~~does at least result in protection from disease (Shkap *et al.*, 2009).~~ The vaccine is used  
859 for control of clinical anaplasmosis in endemic areas. It will not provide sterile immunity,  
860 and should not be used for eradication of *A. marginale*.

### 861 2.3.3. Stability

862 The vaccine can be kept for 5 years when stored in liquid nitrogen. Once thawed, it  
863 rapidly loses its potency. Thawed vaccine cannot be refrozen.

## 864 3. Vaccines based on biotechnology

865 There are no vaccines based on biotechnology available for anaplasmosis.

## REFERENCES

- 867 AL-ADHAMI B., SCANDRETT W.B., LOVANOV V.A. & GAJADHAR A.A. (2011). Serological cross reactivity  
868 between *Anaplasma marginale* and *Ehrlichia* species in naturally and experimentally infected cattle. *J.*  
869 *Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **23**, 1181–1188.
- 870 AMERAULT T.E. & ROBY T.O. (1968). A rapid card agglutination test for bovine anaplasmosis. *J. Am. Vet.*  
871 *Med. Assoc.*, **153**, 1828–1834.
- 872 AMERAULT T.E., ROSE J.E. & ROBY T.O. (1972). Modified card agglutination test for bovine anaplasmosis:  
873 evaluation with serum and plasma from experimental and natural cases of anaplasmosis. *Proc. U.S.*  
874 *Anim. Health Assoc.*, **76**, 736–744.
- 875 BARRY D.N., PARKER R.J., DE VOS A.J., DUNSTER P. & RODWELL B.J. (1986). A microplate enzyme-linked  
876 immunosorbent assay for measuring antibody to *Anaplasma marginale* in cattle serum. *Aust. Vet. J.*, **63**,  
877 76–79.
- 878 BELL-SAKYL L., PALOMAR A.M., BRADFORD E.L. & SHKAP V. (2015). Propagation of the Israeli vaccine strain  
879 of *Anaplasma centrale* in tick cell lines. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **179**, 270–276.
- 880 BELLEZZE J., THOMPSON C.S., BOSIO A.S., TORIONI S.M. & PRIMO M.E. (2023). Development and field  
881 evaluation of an ELISA to differentiate *Anaplasma marginale*-infected from *A. centrale*-vaccinated cattle.  
882 *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **35**, 204–208.
- 883 BOCK R., JACKSON L., DE VOS A. & JORGENSEN W. (2004). Babesiosis of cattle. *Parasitology*, **129**, Suppl,  
884 S247–269.
- 885 BOCK R.E. & DE VOS A.J. (2001). Immunity following use of Australian tick fever vaccine: a review of the  
886 evidence. *Aust. Vet. J.*, **79**, 832–839.
- 887 BRADWAY D.S., TORIONI DE ECHAIDE S., KNOWLES D.P., HENNAGER S.G. & MCELWAIN T.F. (2001).  
888 Sensitivity and specificity of the complement fixation test for detection of cattle persistently infected with  
889 *Anaplasma marginale*. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **13**, 79–81.
- 890 CARELLI G., DECARO N., LORUSSO A., ELIA G., LORUSSO E., MARI V., CECI L. & BUONAVOGLIA C. (2007).  
891 Detection and quantification of *Anaplasma marginale* DNA in blood samples of cattle by real-time PCR.  
892 *Vet. Microbiol.*, **124**, 107–114.
- 893 COETZEE J.F., SCHMIDT P.L., APLEY M.D., REINBOLD J.B. & KOCAN K.M. (2007). Comparison of the  
894 complement fixation test and competitive ELISA for serodiagnosis of *Anaplasma marginale* infection in  
895 experimentally infected steers. *Am. J. Vet. Res.*, **68**, 872–878.
- 896 CHUNG C., WILSON C., BANDARANAYAKA-MUDIYANSELAGE C.-B., KANG E., ADAMS D.S., KAPPMAYER L.S.,  
897 KNOWLES D.P., MCELWAIN T.F., EVERMANN J.F., UETI M.W., SCOLES G.A., LEE S.S. & MCGUIRE T.C.  
898 (2014). Improved diagnostic performance of a commercial *Anaplasma* antibody competitive enzyme-  
899 linked immunosorbent assay using recombinant major surface protein 5-glutathione S-transferase  
900 fusion protein as antigen. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **26**, 61–71.
- 901 DECARO N., CARELLI G., LORUSSO E., LUCENTE M.S., GRECO G., LORUSSO A., RADOGNA A., CECI L. &  
902 BUONAVOGLIA C. (2008). Duplex real-time polymerase chain reaction for simultaneous detection and  
903 quantification of *Anaplasma marginale* and *Anaplasma centrale*. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **20**, 606–611.
- 904 DE VOS A.J. & JORGENSEN W.K. (1992). Protection of cattle against babesiosis in tropical and subtropical  
905 countries with a live, frozen vaccine. In: Tick Vector Biology, Medical and Veterinary Aspects, Fivaz B.H.,  
906 Petney T.N. & Horak I.G., eds. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany, 159–174.

- 907 DREHER U.M., DE LA FUENTE J., HOFMANN-LEHMANN R., MELI M.K., PUSTERIA N., KOCAN K.M., WOLDEHIWET  
908 A., REGULA G. & STAERK K.D.C. (2005). Serologic cross reactivity between *Anaplasma marginale* and  
909 *Anaplasma phagocytophilum*. *Clin. Vaccine. Immunol.*, **12**, 1177–1183.
- 910 DUMLER J.S., BARBET A.F., BEKKER C.P., DASCH G.A., PALMER G.H., RAY S.C., RIKIHISA Y. & RURANGIRWA  
911 F.R. (2001). Reorganization of genera in the Families Rickettsiaceae and Anaplasmataceae in the order  
912 *Rickettsiales*: unification of some species of *Ehrlichia* with *Anaplasma*, *Cowdria* with *Ehrlichia*, and  
913 *Ehrlichia* with *Neorickettsia*, descriptions of five new species combinations and designation of *Ehrlichia*  
914 *equi* and 'HGE agent' as subjective synonyms of *Ehrlichia phagocytophila*. *Int. J. Syst. Evol. Microbiol.*,  
915 **51**, 2145–2165.
- 916 FUTSE J.E., UETIM W., KNOWLES D.P. JR. & PALMER G.H. (2003). Transmission of *Anaplasma marginale*  
917 by *Boophilus microplus*: retention of vector competence in the absence of vector-pathogen interaction.  
918 *J. Clin. Microbiol.* **41**, 3829–3834.
- 919 GONZALEZ, E. F., LONG R. F. & TODOROVIC R. A. (1978). Comparisons of the complement-fixation, indirect  
920 fluorescent antibody, and card agglutination tests for the diagnosis of bovine anaplasmosis. *Am. J. Vet.*  
921 *Res.*, **39**, 1538-1541.
- 922 HOFMANN-LEHMANN R., MELI M.L., DREHER U.M., GÖNCZI E., DEPLAZES P., BRAUN U., ENGELS M.,  
923 SCHÜPBACH J., JÖRGER K., THOMA R., GRIOT C., STÄRK K.D.C., WILLI B., SCHMIDT J., KOCAN K.M. & LUTZ  
924 H. (2004). Concurrent infections with vector-borne pathogens associated with fatal haemolytic anemia  
925 in a cattle herd in Switzerland. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **42**, 3775–3780.
- 926 JORGENSEN W.K., DE VOS A.J. & DALGLIESH R.J. (1989). Infectivity of cryopreserved *Babesia bovis*,  
927 *Babesia bigemina* and *Anaplasma centrale* for cattle after thawing, dilution and incubation at 30°C. *Vet.*  
928 *Parasitol.*, **31**, 243–251.
- 929 ~~KOCAN K.M., DE LA FUENTE J., BLOUIN E.F. & GARCIA-GARCIA J.C. (2004). *Anaplasma marginale*~~  
930 ~~(Rickettsiales: Anaplasmataceae): recent advances in defining host-pathogen adaptations of a tick-~~  
931 ~~borne rickettsia. *Parasitology*, **129**, S285–S300.~~
- 932 ~~KOCAN K.M., DE LA FUENTE J., GUGLIELMONE A.A. & MELENDEZ R.D. (2003). Antigens and alternatives for~~  
933 ~~control of *Anaplasma marginale* infection in cattle. *Clin. Microbiol. Rev.*, **16**, 698–712.~~
- 934 KOCAN K. M., J. DE LA FUENTE, BLOUIN E. F., COETZEE J. F. & EWING S. A. (2010). The natural history of  
935 *Anaplasma marginale*. *Vet. Parasitol.*, **167**, 95–107.
- 936 KNOWLES D., TORIONI DE ECHAIDE S., PALMER G., MCGUIRE T., STILLER D. & MCELWAIN T. (1996).  
937 Antibody against an *Anaplasma marginale* MSP5 epitope common to tick and erythrocyte stages  
938 identifies persistently infected cattle. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **34**, 2225–2230.
- 939 ~~KREIER J.P. & RISTIC M. (1963). Anaplasmosis. X Morphological characteristics of the parasites present~~  
940 ~~in the blood of calves infected with the Oregon strain of *Anaplasma marginale*. *Am. J. Vet. Res.*, **24**,~~  
941 ~~676–687.~~
- 942 ~~MCHARDY N. (1984). Immunization against anaplasmosis: a review. *Prev. Vet. Med.*, **2**, 135–146.~~
- 943 MATEI I.A., ESTRADA-PENA A., CUTLER S.J., VAYSSIER-TAUSSAT M., VARELA-CASTRO L., POTKONJAK A.,  
944 ZELLER H. & MIHALCA A.D. (2019). A review on the eco-epidemiology and clinical management of human  
945 granulocytic anaplasmosis and its agent in Europe. *Parasit. Vectors*, **12**, 599.
- 946 MELLORS L.T., DALGLIESH R.J., TIMMS P., RODWELL B.J. & CALLOW L.L. (1982). Preparation and  
947 laboratory testing of a frozen vaccine containing *Babesia bovis*, *Babesia bigemina* and *Anaplasma*  
948 *centrale*. *Res. Vet. Sci.*, **32**, 194–197.
- 949 MOLLOY J.B., BOWLES P.M., KNOWLES D.P., MCELWAIN T.F., BOCK R.E., KINGSTON T.G., BLIGHT G.W. &  
950 DALGLIESH R.J. (1999). Comparison of a competitive inhibition ELISA and the card agglutination test for

- 951 detection of antibodies to *Anaplasma marginale* and *Anaplasma centrale* in cattle. *Aust. Vet. J.*, **77**,  
952 245–249.
- 953 NIELSEN K., SMITH P., GALL D., DE ESHAIDE S. T., WAGNER G. & DAJER A. (1996). Development and  
954 validation of an indirect enzyme immunoassay for detection of antibody to *Anaplasma marginale* in  
955 bovine sera. *Vet. Parasitol.*, **67**, 133–142.
- 956 NOH S. M. & BROWN W. C. (2012). Adaptive immune responses to infection and opportunities for vaccine  
957 development (*Anaplasmataceae*). *Intracellular Pathogens II: Rickettsiales*. G. H. Palmer. Washington,  
958 DC, USA, ASM Press. II: 330–365.
- 959 PIPANO E. (1981). Frozen vaccine against tick fevers of cattle. *In: XI International Congress on Diseases*  
960 *of Cattle*, Haifa, Israel. Mayer E., ed. Bregman Press, Haifa, Israel, 678–681.
- 961 PIPANO E. (1995). Live vaccines against hemoparasitic diseases in livestock. *Vet. Parasitol.*, **57**, 213–  
962 231.
- 963 PIPANO E. (1997). Vaccines against hemoparasitic diseases in Israel with special reference to quality  
964 assurance. *Trop. Anim. Health Prod.*, **29** (Suppl. 4), 86S–90S.
- 965 PIPANO E., KRIGEL Y., FRANK M., MARKOVICS A. & MAYER E. (1986). Frozen *Anaplasma centrale* vaccine  
966 against anaplasmosis in cattle. *Br. Vet. J.*, **142**, 553–556.
- 967 RAMOS C.A., ARAUJO F.R., SANTOS R.C., MELO E.S., SOUSA L.C., VIDAL C.E., GUERRA N.R. & RAMOS R.A.  
968 (2014). Development and assessment of a latex agglutination test based on recombinant MSP5 to  
969 detect antibodies against *Anaplasma marginale* in cattle. *Braz. J. Microbiol.*, **45**, 199–204.
- 970 REINBOLD J.B., COETZEE J.F., HOLLIS L.C., NICKELL J.S., RIEGEL C.M., CHRISTOPHER J.A. & GANTA R.R.  
971 (2010a). Comparison of iatrogenic transmission of *Anaplasma marginale* in Holstein steers via needle  
972 and needle-free injection techniques. *Am. J. Vet. Res.*, **71**, 1178–1188.
- 973 REINBOLD J.B., COETZEE J.F., SIRIGIREDDY K.R. & GANTA R.R. (2010b). Detection of  
974 *Anaplasma marginale* and *A. phagocytophilum* in bovine peripheral blood samples by duplex real-time  
975 reverse transcriptase PCR assay. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **48**, 2424–2432.
- 976 ROGERS T.E., HIDALGO R. J. & DIMOPOULLOS G.T. (1964). Immunology and serology of *Anaplasma*  
977 *marginale*. I. Fractionation of the complement fixing antigen. *J. Bacteriol.*, **88**, 81–86.
- 978 SARLI M., THOMPSON C.S., NOVOA M., VALENTINI B.S., MASTROPAOLO M., ECHAIDE I.E., DE ECHAIDE S. T.  
979 & PRIMO M.F. (2020). Development and evaluation of a double-antigen sandwich ELISA to identify  
980 *Anaplasma marginale*-infected and *A. centrale*-vaccinated cattle. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **32**, 70–76.
- 981 SHKAP V., KOCAN K., MOLAD T., MAZUZ M., LEBOVICH B., KRIGEL Y., MICHAYTCHENKO A., BLOUIN E., DE LA  
982 FUENTE J., SAMISH M., MTSALI M., ZWEYGARTH E., FLEIDEROVICH E. L. & FISH L. (2009). Experimental  
983 transmission of field *Anaplasma marginale* and the *A. centrale* vaccine strain by *Hyalomma excavatum*,  
984 *Rhipicephalus sanguineus* and *Rhipicephalus (Boophilus) annulatus* ticks. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **134**, 254–  
985 260.
- 986 SILAGHI C., NIEDER M., SAUTER-LOUIS C., KNUBBEN-SCHWEIZER G., PEISTER K. & PFEFFER M. (2018).  
987 Epidemiology, genetic variants and clinical course of natural infections with *Anaplasma*  
988 *phagocytophilum* in a dairy cattle herd. *Parasit. Vectors*, **11**, 20.
- 989 STICH R.W., OLAH G.A., BRAYTON K.A., BROWN W.C., FECHHEIMER M., GREEN-CHURCH K., JITTAPALAPONG  
990 S., KOCAN K.M., MCGUIRE T.C., RURANGIRWA F.R. & PALMER G.H. (2004). Identification of a novel  
991 *Anaplasma marginale* appendage-associated protein that localizes with actin filaments during  
992 intraerythrocytic infection. *Infect Immun.*, **72**, 7257–7264.
- 993 SILVA V.M., ARAUJO F.R., MADRUGA C.R., SOARES C.O., KESSLER R.H., ALMEIDA M.A., FRAGOSO S.P.,  
994 SANTOS L.R., RAMOS C.A., BACANELLI G. & TORRES R.A. (2006). Comparison between indirect enzyme-

995 linked immunosorbent assays for *Anaplasma marginale* antibodies with recombinant Major Surface  
996 Protein 5 and initial body antigens. *Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz.*, **101**, 511–516.

997 STRIK N.I., ALLEMAN A.R., BARBET A.F., SORENSON H.L., ~~WANSLEY~~ WAMSLEY H.L., GASCHEN F.P.,  
998 LUCKSCHANDER N., WONG S., CHU F., FOLEY J.E., BJOERSDORFF A., STUEN S. & KNOWLES D.P. (2007).  
999 Characterization of *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* major surface protein 5 and the extent of its cross-  
1000 reactivity with *A. marginale*. *Clin. Vaccine Immunol.*, **14**, 262–268.

1001 TORIONI DE ECHAIDE S., KNOWLES D.P., MCGUIRE T.C., PALMER G.H., SUAREZ C.E. & MCELWAIN T.F.  
1002 (1998). Detection of cattle naturally infected with *Anaplasma marginale* in a region of endemicity by  
1003 nested PCR and a competitive enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay using recombinant major surface  
1004 protein 5. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **36**, 777–782.

1005 \*  
1006 \* \*

1007 **NB:** There is a WOAHA Reference Laboratory for anaplasmosis (please consult the WOAHA Web site:  
1008 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3>)  
1009 Please contact the WOAHA Reference Laboratory for any further information on  
1010 diagnostic tests, reagents and vaccines for bovine anaplasmosis

1011 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 1991. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2015.



1  
2

**Appendix 1: Bovine anaplasmosis**  
**Intended purpose of test: population freedom from infection**

| <u>Test with score and species</u> | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u>                                     | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population</u>  | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages</u>  | <u>Disadvantages</u>  | <u>References</u>                  |
|------------------------------------|--|---|---|--------------------------|--|---|------------------------------------|
| <u>C-ELISA +++<br/>Bovine</u>      | <u>Serum<br/>rMSP5-GST</u>   | <u>Reference tests were nested PCR and IFAT.<br/>Dsp = 99.7%<br/>Dse = 100%<br/>30% inhibition as determined by ROC analysis.</u> | <u>1. 358 known non-infected cattle from dairy herds maintained in tick free barns and no clinical history of clinical anaplasmosis.<br/>2. 135 known positive sera as defined by nested PCR.<br/>3. Intra-test comparison with 163 diagnostic samples with possible false positives based on rMSP5-GST C-ELISA. Test positive confirmation done with IFAT.</u> | <u>See reference</u>     | <u>1. Updated version with improved specificity.<br/>2. High sensitivity, detects persistently infected animals.<br/>3. Commercially available.<br/>4. Uses a standardised antigen.<br/>5. Target antigen is highly conserved among <i>A. marginale</i> strains, thus detects infection with all strains of <i>A. marginale</i>.<br/>6. Rapid.</u> | <u>1. Does not differentiate between infection with <i>A. marginale</i> and <i>A. centrale</i>.<br/>2. May cross react with anti-<i>Ehrlichia</i> antibodies.<br/>3. May not be readily available in all countries.<br/>4. Requires a microplate absorbance reader.<br/>5. Low percent of false positive results.</u> | <u>Chung <i>et al.</i> 2014.</u>   |
| <u>IFAT+<br/>Bovine</u>            | <u>Serum<br/>Glass slides with RBCs infected with <i>A. marginale</i>.</u> | <u>Reference test was blood smear.<br/>DSe 97.6%<br/>Dsp 89.6%</u>  | <u>48 cattle raised in anaplasmosis free region.<br/>82 animals from endemic region.</u>  | <u>See reference</u>     | <u>1. Antigen is relatively easy to produce and store.<br/>2. Does not require many reagents.</u>  | <u>1. Low specificity.<br/>2. Time consuming and labour intensive so not suitable for high throughput.<br/>3. Requires fluorescent microscope and blood smears with high rickettsemia.</u>  | <u>Gonzalez <i>et al.</i> 1978</u> |

3  
4

**Appendix 2: Bovine anaplasmosis**  
**Intended purpose of test: Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement.**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>  | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u>            | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population</u>  | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages</u>   | <u>Disadvantages</u>  | <u>References</u>                  |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|--------------------------|---|---|------------------------------------|
| <u>PCR ++</u>                       | <u>Whole blood</u><br><u>Various gene targets</u> | <u>Partial validation has been published.</u>   | <u>51 cattle from 18 herds in three regions of southern Italy were tested by RLB<sup>1</sup> for <i>A. marginale</i>, <i>A. centrale</i>, <i>A. bovis</i>, <i>T. buffeli</i>, <i>B. bovis</i>, <i>A. phagocytophilum</i>, and <i>B. bigemina</i>. All cattle except 4 were positive for at least one of these pathogens.</u>                                    | <u>See reference</u>     | <u>Good reported concordance between nested PCR and real time PCR. High analytic sensitivity (10<sup>1</sup> DNA copies).</u>   | <u>Must be performed in a lab equipped to extract DNA and have thermocyclers for real time PCR. Though not determined empirically, it is likely that PCR has less sensitivity than C-ELISA in detection of persistently infected cattle.</u>                            | <u>Carelli <i>et al.</i> 2007.</u> |
| <u>C-ELISA +++</u><br><u>Bovine</u> | <u>Serum</u><br><u>rMSP5-GST</u>                  | <u>Reference tests were nested PCR and IFAT. Dsp = 99.7% Dse = 100% 30% inhibition as determined by ROC analysis.</u> | <u>1. 358 known non-infected cattle from dairy herds maintained in tick free barns and no clinical history of clinical anaplasmosis.<br/>2. 135 known positive sera as defined by nested PCR.<br/>3. Intra-test comparison with 163 diagnostic samples with possible false positives based on rMSP5-GST C-ELISA. Test positive confirmation done with IFAT.</u> | <u>See reference</u>     | <u>1. Updated version with improved specificity.<br/>2. High sensitivity detects persistently infected animals.<br/>3. Commercially available.<br/>4. Uses a standardised antigen.<br/>5. Target antigen is highly conserved among <i>A. marginale</i> strains, thus detects infection with all strains of <i>A. marginale</i>.<br/>6. Rapid.</u> | <u>1. Does not differentiate between infection with <i>A. marginale</i> and <i>A. centrale</i>.<br/>2. May cross react with anti-<i>Ehrlichia</i> antibodies.<br/>3. May not be readily available in all countries.<br/>4. Requires a microplate absorbance reader.</u> | <u>Chung <i>et al.</i> 2014.</u>   |

5 <sup>1</sup>RLB is the reverse line blot test.

**Appendix 3: Bovine anaplasmosis**  
**Intended purpose of test: contribute to eradication policies**

| <u>Test with score and species</u> | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population</u>  | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages</u>   | <u>Disadvantages</u>  | <u>References</u>                 |
|------------------------------------|--|---|---|--------------------------|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| <u>C-ELISA +++<br/>Bovine</u>      | <u>Serum<br/>rMSP5-GST</u>             | <u>Reference tests were nested PCR and IFAT.<br/>Dsp = 99.7%<br/>Dse = 100%<br/>30% inhibition as determined by ROC analysis.</u> | <u>1. 358 known non-infected cattle from dairy herds maintained in tick free barns and no clinical history of clinical anaplasmosis.<br/>2. 135 known positive sera as defined by nested PCR.<br/>3. Intra-test comparison with 163 diagnostic samples with possible false positives based on rMSP5-GST C-ELISA. Test positive confirmation done with IFAT.</u> | <u>See reference</u>     | <u>1. Updated version with improved specificity.<br/>2. High sensitivity detects persistently infected animals.<br/>3. Commercially available.<br/>4. Uses a standardised antigen.<br/>5. Target antigen is highly conserved among <i>A. marginale</i> strains, thus detects infection with all strains of <i>A. marginale</i>.<br/>6. Rapid.</u> | <u>1. Does not differentiate between infection with <i>A. marginale</i> and <i>A. centrale</i>.<br/>2. May cross react with anti-<i>Ehrlichia</i> antibodies.<br/>3. May not be readily available in all countries.<br/>4. Requires a microplate absorbance reader.<br/>5. Low percent of false positive results.</u> | <u>Chung <i>et al.</i>, 2014)</u> |

8  
9

**Appendix 4: Bovine anaplasmosis**  
**Intended purpose of test: confirmation of clinical cases**

| <u>Test with score and species</u> | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u>            | <u>Accuracy</u>                                 | <u>Test population</u>  | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages</u>   | <u>Disadvantages</u>  | <u>References</u>           |
|------------------------------------|---|---|---|--------------------------|---|---|-----------------------------|
| <u>Microscopic examination +++</u> | <u>Whole blood</u>                                | <u>No robust validation has been published.</u> | <u>N/A</u>  | <u>N/A</u>               | <u>1. Most laboratories have the capacity to make and examine blood smears.</u><br><u>2. A. marginale infected erythrocytes readily visible in clinically affected animals.</u> | <u>1. A. marginale colonies are small and can be difficult to differentiate from debris if animal has low rickettsemia.</u><br><u>2. Requires experience to identify A. marginale colonies.</u><br><u>3. Difficult to differentiate between A. marginale and A. centrale.</u> |                             |
| <u>PCR +++</u>                     | <u>Whole blood</u><br><u>Various gene targets</u> | <u>Partial validation has been published.</u>   | <u>51 cattle from 18 herds in three regions of southern Italy were tested by RLB<sup>1</sup> for A. marginale, A. centrale, A. bovis, T. buffeli, B. bovis, A. phagocytophilum, and B. bigemina. All cattle except 4 were positive for at least one of these pathogens.</u> | <u>See reference</u>     | <u>Good reported concordance between nested PCR and real time PCR. High analytic sensitivity (10<sup>1</sup> DNA copies).</u>   | <u>1. Must be performed in a lab equipped to extract DNA and have thermocyclers for real-time PCR.</u><br><u>2. Important to use PCR in conjunction with diagnosis of anaemia and blood smear because PCR can detect low level rickettsemia leading to misdiagnosis.</u>      | <u>Carelli et al., 2007</u> |

10 N/A: not available.  
11 <sup>1</sup>RLB is the reverse line blot test.

12  
13

**Appendix 5: Bovine anaplasmosis**  
**Intended purpose of test: prevalence of infection – surveillance**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>            | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u>   | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population</u>  | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages</u>  | <u>Disadvantages</u>   | <u>References</u>  |
|---|--|---|---|--------------------------|--|--|--|
| <u>CAT +</u>                                  | <u>Serum</u><br><u>Lysates of</u><br><u><i>A. marginale</i></u><br><u>isolated from red</u><br><u>blood cells.</u> | <u>Reference test</u><br><u>was blood smear.</u><br><u>DSe 84.1<sup>1</sup>-100<sup>2</sup>%</u><br><u>Dsp 97.9<sup>1</sup>-98.6<sup>2</sup>%</u>   | <u>48 cattle raised in</u><br><u>anaplasmosis free region.</u><br><u>82 animals from endemic</u><br><u>region.<sup>1</sup></u><br><u>86 sera from experimentally</u><br><u>infected cattle and 183 sera</u><br><u>from <i>A. marginale</i> free area<sup>2</sup></u>  | <u>See references</u>    | <u>1. Can be done in field or in</u><br><u>the laboratory</u>  | <u>1. Antigen derived from</u><br><u>infected cattle are difficult to</u><br><u>produce and standardise.</u><br><u>2. May have false negative</u><br><u>and false positive results.</u><br><u>3. Variation between tests</u><br><u>depending on environmental</u><br><u>conditions and the</u><br><u>laboratory.</u>   | <u><sup>1</sup>Gonzalez <i>et al.</i>, 1978.</u><br><u><sup>2</sup>Molloy <i>et al.</i>, 1999.</u> |
| <u>C-ELISA</u><br><u>+++</u><br><u>Bovine</u> | <u>Serum</u><br><u>rMSP5-GST</u>   | <u>Reference tests</u><br><u>were nested PCR</u><br><u>and IFAT.</u><br><u>Dsp = 99.7%</u><br><u>Dse = 100%</u><br><u>30% inhibition as</u><br><u>determined by</u><br><u>ROC analysis.</u> | <u>1. 358 known non-infected</u><br><u>cattle from dairy herds</u><br><u>maintained in tick free barns</u><br><u>and no clinical history of</u><br><u>clinical anaplasmosis.</u><br><u>2. 135 known positive sera as</u><br><u>defined by nested PCR.</u><br><u>3. Intra-test comparison with</u><br><u>163 diagnostic samples with</u><br><u>possible false positives based</u><br><u>on rMSP5-GST C-ELISA. Test</u><br><u>positive confirmation done with</u><br><u>IFAT.</u> | <u>See reference</u>     | <u>1. Updated version with</u><br><u>improved specificity.</u><br><u>2. High sensitivity, detects</u><br><u>persistently infected</u><br><u>animals.</u><br><u>3. Commercially available.</u><br><u>4. Uses a standardised</u><br><u>antigen.</u><br><u>5. Target antigen is highly</u><br><u>conserved among</u><br><u><i>A. marginale</i> strains, thus</u><br><u>detects infection with all</u><br><u>strains of <i>A. marginale</i>.</u><br><u>6. Rapid.</u> | <u>1. Does not differentiate</u><br><u>between infection with</u><br><u><i>A. marginale</i> and <i>A.</i></u><br><u><i>centrale</i>.</u><br><u>2. May cross react with anti-</u><br><u><i>Ehrlichia</i> antibodies.</u><br><u>3. May not be readily</u><br><u>available in all countries.</u><br><u>4. Requires a microplate</u><br><u>absorbance reader.</u><br><u>5. Low percent of false</u><br><u>positive results</u> | <u>Chung <i>et al.</i>, 2014.</u>  |
| <u>IFAT++</u><br><u>Bovine</u>                | <u>Serum</u><br><u>Glass slides with</u><br><u>RBCs infected</u><br><u>with <i>A. marginale</i></u>                | <u>Reference test</u><br><u>was blood.</u><br><u>DSe 97.6%</u><br><u>Dsp 89.6%</u>  | <u>1. 48 cattle raised in</u><br><u>anaplasmosis free region.</u><br><u>2. 82 animals from endemic</u><br><u>region.</u>  | <u>See references</u>    | <u>1. Antigen is relatively easy</u><br><u>to produce and store.</u><br><u>2. Does not require many</u><br><u>reagents.</u>  | <u>1. Relatively high false</u><br><u>positive rate.</u><br><u>2. Time consuming and</u><br><u>labour intensive</u><br><u>so not suitable for high</u><br><u>throughput.</u><br><u>3. Requires fluorescent</u><br><u>microscope and blood</u><br><u>smears with high</u><br><u>rickettsemia.</u>   | <u>Gonzalez <i>et al.</i>, 1978</u>  |

14  
15

**Appendix 6: Bovine anaplasmosis**  
**Intended purpose of test: Immune status of individual animals**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>            | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u>         | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>References</u>   |
|---|--|---|---|--------------------------|---|---|---|
| <u>NA detection by (real-time) RT-PCR +++</u> | <u>Ear notch (skin), blood, milk</u>   | <u>Performance has been demonstrated under field conditions in large control programs</u>   | <u>Whole Swiss, German and Irish cattle populations</u> | <u>See references</u>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Very sensitive</u></li> <li>- <u>Rapid</u></li> <li>- <u>High-throughput</u></li> <li>- <u>Well established internationally</u></li> <li>- <u>Detects assay-dependent all BVDV species</u></li> <li>- <u>Allows assay-dependent for differentiation of BVDV types 1 and 2</u></li> <li>- <u>Detects persistent and transient infection</u></li> <li>- <u>Proficiency panel of different Pestivirus strains available</u></li> <li>- <u>Detection of viral RNA in skin biopsy samples unaffected by maternally-derived antibodies, therefore allows for identification of persistently infected animals early in life</u></li> <li>- <u>Successfully applied in ongoing or completed control programmes</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Possibility for contamination at sample collection or in laboratory, leading to false positive results</u></li> <li>- <u>Needs specialised equipment</u></li> <li>- <u>Detection of viral RNA does not imply per se that infectious virus is present</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Presi &amp; Heim (2010). <i>Vet. Microbiol.</i> <b>142</b>, 137–142</u></li> <li>- <u>Schweizer et al. (2021). <i>Front. Vet. Sci.</i> <b>8</b>, 702730</u></li> <li>- <u>Wernike et al. (2017). <i>Pathogens</i>. <b>6</b> (4)</u></li> <li>- <u>Graham et al. (2021). <i>Front. Vet. Sci.</i> <b>8</b>, 674557</u></li> </ul> |
| <u>Antibody detection by ELISA +++</u>        | <u>Bulk milk, blood</u>                | <u>DSe and DSp differs based on the ELISA used (commercial/in-house) and the antibodies being tested (e.g. antibodies against structural (E2) and</u> |   |                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Simple to perform and cost-effective</u></li> <li>- <u>Milk collection is non-invasive method with potential for herd screening with tank/bulk milk samples</u></li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Some cross-reactivity with vaccines and other pestiviruses</u></li> <li>- <u>PI animal will usually be seronegative</u></li> <li>- <u>Bulk milk from herd excludes males, non-lactating or young stock</u></li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Beauudeau et al. (2001). <i>Vet. Microbiol.</i> <b>80</b>, 329–337</u></li> <li>- <u>Lanyon et al. (2013). <i>Aust. Vet. J.</i> <b>91</b>, 52–56.</u></li> </ul>  |



| <u>Test with score and species</u>    | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>  | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation report</u>                                | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>References</u>  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|---|---|---|--|--|
|                                       |  | <u>non-structural (NS2-3) proteins.</u>  |   |   | <u>- Bulk milk sensitive indicator for PI in herd</u>   |  |  |
| <u>Antigen detection by ELISA +++</u> | <u>Serum, whole blood, skin biopsy</u> | <u>DSe 67–100% and DSp 98.8–100% relative to virus isolation reported</u>                              |   |   | <u>Relatively simple to perform, rapid, can be cost-effective (when compared to virus isolation and PCR) and suitable for high-throughput applications. There is no need for cell culture facility.</u> | <u>Maternal antibodies in colostrum may interfere with testing for antigen in serum using ELISA in calves. Ear notch samples are less affected. PI calves in utero defies detection.</u> | <u>Lanyon <i>et al.</i> (2013). <i>Vet. J.</i> 199, 201–209.</u> |
| <u>Virus isolation +</u>              | <u>Serum, whole blood</u>              | <u>Considered (historically) reference test; DSe &lt;90% compared with real-time RT-PCR; DSp ~100%</u> | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <u>- High degree of specificity<br/>- Identifies presence of infectious virus</u>   | <u>- Requires specialised cell culture capabilities and access to BVDV free materials<br/>- Reduced sensitivity in presence of maternally-derived antibodies</u>                         | <u>N/A</u>   |
| <u>Virus neutralisation test +</u>    | <u>Serum</u>                           | <u>DSe &amp; DSp both extremely high, both &gt;99%. Historical reference serological test.</u>         | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <u>Very high specificity</u>  | <u>- ASe can vary depending on virus strain used<br/>- Requires cell culture, good quality samples<br/>- Labour intensive, takes 5 days to obtain results<br/>- Expensive</u>            | <u>N/A</u>   |

18 N/A: not available

## Annexe 11. Chapter 3.4.7. 'Bovine viral diarrhoea'

### CHAPTER 3.4.7.

## BOVINE VIRAL DIARRHOEA

---

### SUMMARY

Cattle of all ages are susceptible to infection with bovine viral diarrhoea (BVD) viruses, including Pestivirus bovis (commonly known as BVDV type 1 (Pestivirus bovis), Pestivirus tauri (BVDV type 2 (Pestivirus tauri), and Pestivirus brasilense (BVDV type 3 (Pestivirus brasilense) (or Hobi-like pestiviruses (type 3 [Pestivirus brasilense]). Distribution is world-wide although some countries have recently eradicated the virus. BVDV infection results in a wide variety of clinical manifestations, including enteric and respiratory disease in any class of cattle, or reproductive and fetal disease following infection of a susceptible breeding female. Infection may be subclinical or extend to severe fatal disease. Animals that survive in-utero infection in the first trimester of gestation are almost always persistently infected (PI). PI animals provide the main reservoir of the virus in a population and excrete large amounts of virus in urine, faeces, discharges, milk and semen. Identification of such PI cattle is a key element in controlling the infection. It is important to avoid the trade of such animals. They may appear clinically healthy, or weak and unthrifty. Many PI animals die before reaching maturity. They may infrequently develop mucosal disease with anorexia, gastrointestinal erosions, and profuse diarrhoea, invariably leading to death. Mucosal disease can arise only in PI animals. Latent infections generally do not occur following recovery from acute infection. However, bulls may rarely have a prolonged and persistent testicular infection and excrete virus in semen for prolonged periods, perhaps indefinitely.

**Detection of the agent:** BVDV is a pestivirus in the family Flaviviridae and is closely related to classical swine fever virus (Pestivirus suis) and ovine border disease viruses (Pestivirus ovis). BVD viruses are classified into the distinct species: Pestivirus bovis (commonly known as BVDV type 1), Pestivirus tauri (BVDV type 2) and Pestivirus brasilense (BVDV type 3 or Hobi-like pestivirus). ~~The two genotypes (types 1 and 2) are classified as separate species in the genus Pestivirus. A third putative genotype, BVDV type 3, has also recently been proposed. Although both cytopathic and non-cytopathic biotypes of Pestivirus bovis and P. tauri BVDV type 1 and type 2 exist, non-cytopathic strains are usually encountered in field infections and are the main focus of diagnostic virus isolation in cell cultures. PI animals can be readily identified by a variety of methods aimed to detect viral antigens or viral RNA directly in blood and tissues. Virus can also be isolated by inoculation of specimens onto susceptible cell cultures followed by immune-labelling methods to detect the replication of the virus in the cultures. Persistence of virus infection should be confirmed by resampling after an interval of at least 3 weeks, when virus will again be detected. PI animals are usually seronegative. Viraemia in acute cases is transient and usually difficult to detect. Virus isolation in semen from bulls that are acutely or persistently infected requires special attention to specimen transport and testing. RNA detection assays are particularly useful because they are rapid, have very high sensitivity and do not depend on the use of cell cultures.~~

**Serological tests:** Acute infection with BVDV is best confirmed by demonstrating seroconversion using sequential paired samples, ideally from several animals in the group.

44 *The testing of paired (acute and convalescent samples) should be done a minimum of 21*  
45 *days apart and samples should be tested concurrently in the same assay. Enzyme-linked*  
46 *immunosorbent assays and the virus neutralisation test are the most widely used.*

47 **Requirements for vaccines:** *There is no standard vaccine for BVD, but a number of*  
48 *commercial preparations are available. An ideal vaccine should be able to prevent*  
49 *transplacental infection in pregnant cows. Modified live virus vaccine should not be*  
50 *administered to pregnant cattle (or to their sucking calves) due to the risk of transplacental*  
51 *infection. Live vaccines that contain cytopathic strains of BVDV present a risk of inducing*  
52 *mucosal disease in PI animals. Inactivated viral vaccines are safe and can be given to any*  
53 *class of animal but generally require booster vaccinations. BVDV is a particularly important*  
54 *hazard to the manufacture of vaccines and biological products for other diseases due to*  
55 *the high frequency of contamination of batches of fetal calf serum used as a culture medium*  
56 *supplement.*

## 57 A. INTRODUCTION

### 58 1. Impact of the disease

59 Cattle of all ages are susceptible to infection with bovine viral diarrhoea viruses (BVDV). Distribution of  
60 the virus is world-wide although some countries have recently eradicated the virus. BVDV infection  
61 results in a wide variety of clinical manifestations, including enteric and respiratory disease in any class  
62 of cattle or reproductive and fetal disease following infection of a susceptible breeding female. Infection  
63 may be subclinical or extend to severe fatal disease. Clinical presentations and severity of disease may  
64 vary with different strains of virus. BVDV viruses also cause immune suppression, which can render  
65 infected animals more susceptible to infection with other viruses and bacteria. The clinical impact may  
66 be more apparent in intensively managed livestock. Animals that survive *in-utero* infection in the first  
67 trimester of gestation are almost always persistently infected (PI). PI animals provide the main reservoir  
68 of the virus in a population and excrete large amounts of virus in urine, faeces, discharges, milk and  
69 semen. The virus spreads mainly by close contact between PI animals and other cattle. Virus shedding  
70 by acutely infected animals is usually less important. This virus may also persist in the environment for  
71 short periods or be transmitted with-via contaminated reproductive materials. Vertical transmission plays  
72 an important role in its-the epidemiology and pathogenesis.

73 Infections of the breeding female may result in conception failure or embryonic and fetal infection which  
74 results in abortions, stillbirths, teratogenic abnormalities or the birth of PI calves. Persistently viraemic  
75 animals may be born as weak, unthrifty calves or may appear as normal healthy calves and be  
76 unrecognised clinically for a long time. However, PI animals have a markedly reduced life expectancy,  
77 with a high proportion dying before reaching maturity. Infrequently, some of these animals may later  
78 develop mucosal disease with anorexia, gastrointestinal erosions, and profuse diarrhoea, invariably  
79 leading to death. Mucosal disease can arise only in PI animals. It is important to avoid the trade of  
80 viraemic animals. It is generally considered that serologically positive, non-viraemic cattle are 'safe',  
81 providing that they are not pregnant. However, a small proportion of persistently viraemic animals may  
82 produce antibodies to some of the viral proteins if they are exposed to another strain of BVDV that is  
83 antigenically different to the persisting virus. Consequently, seropositivity cannot be completely equated  
84 with 'safety'. Detection of PI animals must be specifically directed at detection of the virus or its  
85 components (RNA or antigens). Latent infections generally do not occur following recovery from acute  
86 infection. However, semen collected from bulls during an acute infection is likely to contain virus during  
87 the viraemic period and often for a short time afterwards. Although extremely rare, some recovered bulls  
88 may have a prolonged and persistent testicular infection and excrete virus in semen, perhaps indefinitely  
89 (Read et al., 2020).

90 While BVDV strains are predominantly pathogens of cattle, interspecies transmission can occur  
91 following close contact with sheep, goats or pigs. Infection of pregnant small ruminants or pigs with  
92 BVDV can result in reproductive loss and the birth of PI animals. BVDV infections have been reported  
93 in both New World and Old World camelids. Additionally, strains of border disease virus (BDV) have  
94 infected cattle, resulting in clinical presentations indistinguishable from BVDV infection. The birth of  
95 cattle PI with BDV and the subsequent development of mucosal disease have also been described.

96 Whilst BVDV and BDV have been reported as natural infections in pigs, the related virus of classical  
97 swine fever does not naturally infect ruminants.

98 Although ubiquitous, control of BVDV can be achieved at the herd level, and even at the national level,  
99 as evidenced by the progress towards eradication made in many European countries (Moennig *et al.*,  
100 2005; Schweizer *et al.*, 2021).

## 101 2. The causal agent

102 Bovine viral diarrhoea virus (BVDV) is a single linear positive-stranded RNA virus in the genus *Pestivirus*  
103 of the family *Flaviviridae*. The genus contains a number of species including *Pestivirus bovis* the two  
104 genotypes of bovine viral diarrhoea virus (BVDV) (types 1 [*Pestivirus bovis*], and 2 [*Pestivirus tauri*]  
105 (BVDV type 2) and 3 [*Pestivirus brazilense*] (BVDV type 3) and the closely related classical swine fever  
106 (*Pestivirus suis*) and ovine border disease viruses (*Pestivirus ovis*) (Postler *et al.*, 2023). Viruses in these  
107 genotypes ~~pestivirus species~~ show considerable antigenic difference from each other and, within the  
108 type 1 and type 2 species *Pestivirus bovis* and *P. tauri*, BVDV isolates exhibit considerable biological  
109 and antigenic diversity. Within the two BVDV ~~genotypes species~~ *Pestivirus bovis* and *P. tauri*, further  
110 subdivisions are discernible by genetic analysis (Vilcek *et al.*, 2001). The two ~~genotypes species~~  
111 be differentiated from each other, and from other pestiviruses, by monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) directed  
112 against the major glycoproteins E2 and ERNS or by genetic analysis. Reverse-transcription polymerase  
113 chain reaction (RT-PCR) assays enable virus typing direct from blood samples (Letellier & Kerkhofs,  
114 2003; McGoldrick *et al.*, 1999). Type 1 viruses are generally more common although the prevalence of  
115 type 2 strains can be high in North America. BVDV of both ~~genotypes species~~ (*Pestivirus bovis* and *P.*  
116 *tauri*) may occur in non-cytopathic and cytopathic forms (biotypes), classified according to whether or  
117 not microscopically apparent cytopathology is induced during infection of cell cultures. Usually, it is the  
118 non-cytopathic biotype that circulates freely in cattle populations. Non-cytopathic strains are most  
119 frequently responsible for disease in cattle and are associated with enteric and respiratory disease in  
120 any class of cattle or reproductive and fetal disease following infection of a susceptible breeding female.  
121 Infection may be subclinical or extend to severe fatal disease (Brownlie, 1985). Cytopathic viruses are  
122 encountered in cases of mucosal disease, a clinical syndrome that is relatively uncommon and involves  
123 the 'super-infection' of an animal that is PI with a non-cytopathic virus by a closely related cytopathic  
124 strain. The two virus biotypes found in a mucosal disease case are usually antigenically closely related  
125 if not identical. Type 2 viruses are usually non-cytopathic and have been associated with outbreaks of  
126 severe acute infection and a haemorrhagic syndrome. However some type 2 viruses have also been  
127 associated with a disease indistinguishable from that seen with the more frequently isolated type 1  
128 viruses. Further, some type 1 isolates have been associated with particularly severe and fatal disease  
129 outbreaks in adult cattle. Clinically mild and inapparent infections are common following infection of non-  
130 pregnant animals with either ~~genotype virus species~~.

131 There is an increasing awareness of an "atypical" or "HoBi-like" pestivirus — a putative BVDV type 3  
132 *Pestivirus brazilense* H-strains are also associated with clinical disease in cattle, but they appear mainly  
133 restricted to South American and Asian cattle populations, in cattle, also associated with clinical disease  
134 (Bauermann *et al.*, 2013; Chen *et al.*, 2021), but its distribution is presently unclear. These viruses are  
135 readily detected by proven pan-reactive assays such as real-time RT-PCR. Some commercial antigen  
136 ELISAs (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays) have been shown to detect these strains (Bauermann  
137 *et al.*, 2012); generally virus isolation, etc., follows the same principles as for *Pestivirus bovis* (BVDV  
138 type 1 (*Pestivirus bovis*) and *Pestivirus tauri* (BVDV type 2 (*Pestivirus tauri*)). It should be noted however,  
139 that antibody ELISAs vary in their ability to detect antibody to *Pestivirus brazilense* (BVDV type 3  
140 (*Pestivirus brazilense*)) and vaccines designed to protect against BVDV type 1 and BVDV type 2 may  
141 not confer full protection against infection with these novel pestiviruses (Bauermann *et al.*, 2012; 2013).

## 142 3. Pathogenesis

### 143 3.1. Acute infections

144 Acute infections with BVDV are encountered more frequently in young animals, and may be  
145 clinically inapparent or associated with fever, diarrhoea (Baker 1995), respiratory disease and  
146 sometimes sudden death. The severity of disease may vary with virus strain and the involvement  
147 of other pathogens (Brownlie, 1990). In particular, outbreaks of a severe form of acute disease  
148 with haemorrhagic lesions, thrombocytopenia and high mortality have been reported  
149 sporadically from some countries (Baker, 1995; Bolin & Ridpath, 1992). Infection with type 2

150 viruses (*Pestivirus tauri*) in particular has been demonstrated to cause altered platelet function.  
151 During acute infections there is a brief viraemia for 7–10 days and shedding of virus can be  
152 detected in nasal and ocular discharges. There may also be a transient leukopenia,  
153 thrombocytopenia or temperature response, but these can vary greatly among animals. Affected  
154 animals may be predisposed to secondary infections with other viruses and bacteria. Although  
155 BVDV may cause a primary respiratory disease on its own, the immunosuppressive effects of  
156 the virus exacerbate the impact of this virus. BVDV is one of the major pathogens of the bovine  
157 respiratory disease complex in feedlot cattle and in other intensive management systems such  
158 as calf raising units.

159 Infection of breeding females immediately prior to ovulation and in the first few days after  
160 insemination can result in conception failure and early embryonic loss (McGowan & Kirkland,  
161 1995). Cows may also suffer from infertility, associated with changes in ovarian function and  
162 secretions of gonadotropin and progesterone (Fray *et al.*, 2002). Bulls may excrete virus in  
163 semen for a short period during and immediately after infection and may suffer a temporary  
164 reduction of fertility. Although the virus level in this semen is generally low it can result in  
165 reduced conception rates and be a potential source of introduction of virus into a naive herd  
166 (McGowan & Kirkland, 1995).

### 167 **3.2. In-utero infections**

168 Infection of a breeding female can result in a range of different outcomes, depending on the  
169 stage of gestation at which infection occurred. Before about 25 days of gestation, infection of  
170 the developing conceptus will usually result in embryo-fetal death, although abortion may be  
171 delayed for a considerable time (McGowan & Kirkland, 1995). Surviving fetuses are normal  
172 and uninfected. However, infection of the female between about 30–90 days will invariably  
173 result in fetal infection, with all surviving progeny PI and seronegative. Infection at later stages  
174 and up to about day 150 can result in a range of congenital defects including hydranencephaly,  
175 cerebellar hypoplasia, optic defects, skeletal defects such as arthrogryposis and hypotrichosis.  
176 Growth retardation may also occur, perhaps as a result of pituitary dysfunction. Fetal infection  
177 can result in abortion, stillbirth or the delivery of weak calves that may die soon after birth  
178 (Baker, 1995; Brownlie, 1990; Duffell & Harkness, 1985; Moennig & Liess, 1995). Some PI  
179 calves may appear to be normal at birth but fail to grow normally thrive. They remain PI for life  
180 and are usually seronegative, exceptions may be young calves that ingested colostrum  
181 containing antibodies. The onset of the fetal immune response and production of antibodies  
182 occurs between approximately day 90–120, with an increasing proportion of infected calves  
183 having detectable antibodies while the proportion in which virus may be detected declines  
184 rapidly. Infection of the bovine fetus after day 180 usually results in the birth of a normal  
185 seropositive calf.

### 186 **3.3. Persistent infections**

187 Persistently viraemic animals are a continual source of infective virus to other cattle and are  
188 the main reservoir of BVDV in a population. In a population without a rigorous BVDV control  
189 programme, approximately 1–2% of cattle are PI. During outbreaks in a naive herd or breeding  
190 group, if exposure has occurred in the first trimester of pregnancy, a very high proportion of  
191 surviving calves will be PI. If a PI animal dies, there are no pathognomonic lesions due to  
192 BVDV and the pathology is often complicated by secondary infections with other agents. Some  
193 PI animals will survive to sexual maturity and may breed successfully but their progeny of  
194 female PI animals will also always be PI. Animals being traded or used for artificial breeding  
195 should first be screened to ensure that they are not PI.

### 196 **3.4. Mucosal disease**

197 Persistently viraemic animals may later succumb to mucosal disease (Brownlie, 1985).  
198 However, cases are rare. This syndrome has been shown to be the outcome of the infection  
199 of a PI animal with an antigenically similar cytopathic virus, which can arise either through  
200 superinfection, recombination between non-cytopathic biotypes, or mutation of the persistent  
201 biotype (Brownlie, 1990). There is usually little need to specifically confirm that a PI animal  
202 has succumbed to mucosal disease as this is largely a scientific curiosity and of little practical  
203 significance, other than that the animal is PI with BVDV. However, cases of mucosal disease



204 may be the first indication in a herd that BVDV infection is present and should lead to more in  
205 depth investigation and intervention.

### 206 **3.5. Semen and embryos**

207 Bulls that are PI usually have poor quality, highly infective semen and reduced fertility  
208 (McGowan & Kirkland, 1995). All bulls used for natural or artificial insemination should be  
209 screened for both acute and persistent BVDV infection. A rare event, possibly brought about  
210 by acute infection during pubescence, can result in persistent infection of the testes and thus  
211 strongly seropositive bulls that intermittently excrete virus in semen (Voges *et al.*, 1998). This  
212 phenomenon has also been observed following vaccination with an attenuated virus (Givens  
213 *et al.*, 2007). Embryo donor cows that are PI with BVDV also represent a potential source of  
214 infection, particularly as there are extremely high concentrations of BVDV in uterine and  
215 vaginal fluids. While oocysts without an intact zona pellucida have been shown to be  
216 susceptible to infection *in vitro*, the majority of oocysts remain uninfected with BVDV. Normal  
217 uninfected progeny have also been 'rescued' from PI animals by the use of extensive washing  
218 of embryos and *in-vitro* fertilisation. Female cattle used as embryo recipients should always  
219 be screened to confirm that they are not PI, and ideally, are seropositive or were vaccinated  
220 at least 4 weeks before first use.

221 Biological materials used for *in-vitro* fertilisation techniques (bovine serum, bovine cell  
222 cultures) have a high risk of contamination and should be screened for BVDV. Incidents of  
223 apparent introduction of virus via such techniques have highlighted this risk. It is considered  
224 essential that serum supplements used in media should be free of contaminants as detailed  
225 in Chapter 1.1.9 *Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials*  
226 *intended for veterinary use*, using techniques described in Section B.3-1.1 of this chapter.

## 227 **4. Approaches to diagnosis and sample collection**

228 The diagnosis of BVDV infection can sometimes be complex because of the delay between infection  
229 and clinical expression. While detection of PI animals should be readily accomplished using current  
230 diagnostic methods, the recognition of acute infections and detection of BVDV in reproductive materials  
231 can be more difficult.

### 232 **4.1. Acute infections**

233 Unlike PI animals, acutely infected animals excrete relatively low levels of virus and for a short  
234 period of time (usually about 7–10 days) but the clinical signs may occur during the later stages  
235 of viraemia, reducing the time to detect the virus even further. In cases of respiratory or enteric  
236 disease, samples should be collected from a number of affected animals, preferentially  
237 selecting the most recently affected. Swabs should be collected from the nares and  
238 conjunctiva of animals with respiratory disease or from rectum and faeces if there are enteric  
239 signs. Lung and spleen are preferred from dead animals. Viral RNA may be detected by real-  
240 time RT-PCR assays and have the advantages of high sensitivity and being able to detect  
241 genome from non-infectious virus. As the virus levels are very low, it is not usually practical to  
242 undertake virus isolation unless there is a need to characterise the strain of BVDV involved.  
243 Serology undertaken on paired acute and convalescent sera (collected at least 21 days after  
244 the acute sample and from 8–10 animals) is worthwhile and gives a high probability of  
245 incriminating or excluding BVDV infection.

246 Confirmation that an abortion, stillbirth or perinatal death is caused by BVDV is often difficult  
247 to establish because there can be a long delay between initial infection and death or expulsion  
248 of the fetus. Sampling should take into consideration the need to detect either viral  
249 components or antibodies. Spleen and lung are preferred samples for virus detection while  
250 pericardial or pleural fluids are ideal samples for serology. The stomach of newborn calves  
251 should be checked to confirm that sucking has not occurred. While virus may be isolated from  
252 fetal tissue in some cases, emphasis should be placed on the detection of viral antigen by  
253 ELISA or RNA by real-time RT-PCR. For serology, both ELISAs and virus neutralisation test  
254 (VNT) are suitable though sample quality and bacterial contamination may compromise the  
255 ability to detect antibodies by VNT. Maternal serology, especially on a group of animals, can  
256 be of value, with the aim of determining whether there has been recent infection in the group.



257 A high antibody titre (>1/1000) to BVDV in maternal serum is suggestive of fetal infection and  
258 is probably due to the fetus providing the dam with an extended exposure to virus.

#### 259 **4.2. Persistent infections**

260 In the past, identification of PI animals relied heavily on the use of virus isolation in cell cultures.  
261 However, antigen detection ELISAs and real-time RT-PCR assays, each with relatively high  
262 sensitivity, are widely used for the detection of viral antigens or RNA in both live and dead  
263 animals. Virus isolation aimed at the detection of non-cytopathic BVDV in blood is also used,  
264 while in some countries, the virus has been identified by immunohistochemistry (IHC). Skin  
265 samples have been collected from live animals while a wide range of tissues from dead  
266 animals are suitable. Both virus isolation and IHC are labour intensive and costly and can be  
267 technically demanding. Virus isolation from blood can be confounded by the presence of  
268 maternal antibodies to BVDV in calves less than 4–5 months of age (diagnostic gap). Also for  
269 antigen detection ELISAs and flow cytometry from blood or blood leukocytes, there are  
270 restrictions that limit when animals that ingested colostrum that contains antibodies to against  
271 BVDV can be reliably tested. In older animals with persistent viraemia infection, low levels of  
272 antibody may be present due to their ability to seroconvert to strains of BVDV (including  
273 vaccines) antigenically different to the persisting virus (Brownlie, 1990). Bulk (tank) or  
274 individual milk samples have been used to monitor dairy herds for the presence of a PI animal.  
275 Antigen ELISA, real-time PCR and virus isolation have all been used. To confirm a diagnosis  
276 of persistent infection, animals should be retested after an interval of at least 3 weeks by  
277 testing of blood samples for the presence of the virus and for evidence—absence of  
278 seroconversion. Care should be taken with retesting of skin samples as it has been shown  
279 that, in some acute cases, viral antigen may persist for many weeks in skin (Cornish *et al.*,  
280 2005).

#### 281 **4.3. Mucosal disease**

282 Although not undertaken for routine diagnostic purposes, for laboratory confirmation of a  
283 diagnosis of mucosal disease it is necessary to isolate the cytopathic virus. This biotype may  
284 sometimes be isolated from blood, but it can be recovered more consistently from a variety of  
285 other tissues, in particular spleen, intestine and Peyer's patch tissue. Virus isolation is readily  
286 accomplished from spleen which is easy to collect and is seldom toxic for cell culture.

#### 287 **4.4. Reproductive materials**

288 Semen donor bulls should be sampled for testing for freedom from BVDV infection prior to  
289 collection of semen, in accordance with the *Terrestrial Animal Health Code*. It is necessary to  
290 confirm that these bulls are not PI, are not undergoing an acute infection and to establish their  
291 serological status. This initial testing should be carried out on whole blood or serum samples.  
292 To establish that a seropositive bull does not have a persistent testicular infection (PTI),  
293 samples of semen should be collected on at least three separate occasions at intervals of not  
294 less than 7 days due to the possibility of intermittent low level virus excretion, especially during  
295 the early stages of infection. There is also a need to submit a number of straws from each  
296 collection, or an appropriate volume of raw semen. Particular care should be taken to ensure  
297 that sample transport recommendations are adhered to and that the laboratory documents the  
298 condition of the samples on arrival at the laboratory. Further details of collection, transport and  
299 test requirements are provided in sections that follow.

300

## B. DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES

301

**Table 1. Test methods available for diagnosis of bovine viral diarrhoea and their purpose**

| Method                                      | Purpose  |   |   |   |   |  |
|---|--|---|---|---|---|--|
|   | Population freedom from infection <sup>(a)</sup> | Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement <sup>(b)</sup> | Contribute to eradication policies <sup>(c)</sup> | Confirmation of clinical cases <sup>(d)</sup> | Prevalence of infection – surveillance <sup>(e)</sup> | Immune status in individual animals or populations (post-vaccination) <sup>(f)</sup> |
| <b>Detection of the agent<sup>(g)</sup></b> |  |   |   |   |   |  |
| Virus isolation                             | +  | ++±   | ++  | ++±   | –   | –  |
| Antigen detection by ELISA                  | +++  | +++   | +++   | +++   | +++   | –  |
| Antigen detection by IHC                    | –  | –   | –   | ++  | –   | –  |
| NA detection by real-time RT-PCR            | +++  | +++   | +++   | +++   | +++   | –  |
| <b>Detection of immune response</b>         |  |   |   |   |   |  |
| <b>Antibody detection by ELISA</b>          | +++  | ++  | +++   | – <sup>(g)</sup>                              | +++   | +++  |
| VN  | +  | ++±   | ++  | –   | +   | +++  |

302

Key: +++ = recommended for this purpose; ++ recommended but has limitations;

303

+ = suitable in very limited circumstances; – = not appropriate for this purpose.

304

ELISA = enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; IHC = immunohistochemistry method; NA = nucleic acid; RT-PCR = reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction; ISH = *in situ* hybridisation; VN = virus neutralisation.

305

<sup>(a)</sup>See Appendix 1 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

306

<sup>(b)</sup>See Appendix 2 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

307

<sup>(c)</sup>See Appendix 3 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

308

<sup>(d)</sup>See Appendix 4 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

309

<sup>(e)</sup>See Appendix 5 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

310

<sup>(f)</sup>See Appendix 6 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

311

<sup>(g)</sup>A combination of agent detection methods applied on the same clinical sample is recommended.

312

313

### 1. Detection of the agent

314

315

316

317

318

319

320

321

322

323

324

325

326

327

328

329

330

To prevent the shipment of either animals or animal derivatives (especially semen and embryos) that are infected with BVDV, it is necessary to test for the presence of the infectious virus (virus isolation), viral antigens (antigen detection ELISA) or RNA (real-time RT-PCR) in the blood of the animal being shipped, or the donor of the germplasm (semen or embryos). The exception is for seropositive bulls where semen must be tested rather than the donor bull. Serology only plays a role for establishing that seronegative animals are not undergoing an acute infection or, to establish the serological status of donor bulls. Due to their variable sensitivity without prior virus amplification, procedures such as IHC or *in situ* hybridisation (ISH) directly on tissues are not considered to be suitable for certification for freedom from BVDV for international trade purposes. In contrast, immune-staining is an essential component of virus isolation in cell culture to detect the presence of non-cytopathic strains of BVDV which predominate in field infections.

All test methods must be extensively validated by testing on known uninfected and infected populations of cattle, including animals with low- and high-titre viraemias. Methods based on polyclonal or MAb-binding assays (ELISA or IHC), immune labelling (VI) or on nucleic acid recognition (PCR) must be shown to detect the full range of antigenic and genetic diversity found among BVD viruses. There are three designated WOA Reference Laboratories for BVDV that can assist with relevant information; the reference laboratories for classical swine fever could also be approached to offer some advice.

331

## 1.1. Virus isolation

332 When performed to a high standard, BVDV isolation is very reliable. However, it does have  
333 very exacting requirements to ensure that the cell cultures and medium components give a  
334 system that is very sensitive and are not compromised by the presence of either low levels of  
335 BVDV specific antibody or virus. Virus isolation only has the capacity to detect infectious virus  
336 which imposes certain limits on sample quality. Further, to detect low levels of virus that may  
337 be present in some samples, particularly semen, it may be necessary to examine larger  
338 volumes of specimen than is usual. Some of these limitations can be overcome by the use of  
339 antigen detection ELISAs with proven high analytical sensitivity, or the use of real-time RT-  
340 PCR.

341 The virus may be isolated in a number of bovine monolayer cell cultures (e.g. kidney, lung,  
342 testis or turbinate). In some instances, ovine cells are also suitable. Primary or secondary  
343 cultures can be frozen as cell suspensions in liquid nitrogen. These can then be tested over a  
344 series of passages, or seeded to other susceptible cells and checked for freedom from  
345 contaminants and to evaluate their sensitivity compared to an approved batch of cells before  
346 routine use. Such problems may be reduced by the use of continuous cell lines, which can be  
347 obtained BVD-free, however, their BVDV-free status and susceptibility must be monitored  
348 regularly. Continuous cells should be used under a 'seed lot' system where they are only used  
349 over a limited passage range, within which they have been shown to have acceptable  
350 sensitivity to BVDV infection. Although particular continuous cell lines are considered to be  
351 appropriate for use for BVDV isolation, there can be significant variation in batches of cells  
352 from different sources due to differing passage histories so their suitability must still be  
353 confirmed before routine use.

354 Non-cytopathic BVDV is a common contaminant of bovine tissues and cell cultures must be  
355 checked for freedom from adventitious virus by regular testing. Cells must be grown in proven  
356 cell culture medium components and a large area of cells must be examined. It is not  
357 appropriate to screen a few wells of a 96 well plate – examining all wells of a 96 well plate will  
358 be more convincing evidence of freedom. The fetal bovine serum that is selected for use in  
359 cell culture must also be free not only from virus, but also and of equal or perhaps even greater  
360 importance, from BVDV neutralising antibody. Heat treatment (56°C for 30–45 minutes) is  
361 inadequate for the destruction of BVDV in contaminated serum; irradiation with a dose of at  
362 least 25 kiloGrays (2.5 Mrad) is more certain. Commercial batches of fetal bovine serum mostly  
363 test positive by real-time RT-PCR even after the virus has been inactivated by irradiation.  
364 Further, most commercially collected batches of fetal bovine serum contain antibodies to  
365 pestiviruses, sometimes at levels that are barely detectable but sufficient to inhibit virus  
366 isolation. To overcome this, serum can be obtained from BVD virus and antibody free donor  
367 animals and used with confidence. Testing of donors for both virus and antibody occurs on an  
368 individual animal basis. Although horse serum has been substituted for bovine fetal serum, it  
369 is often found to have poorer cell-growth-promoting characteristics. Further there has  
370 sometimes been cross contamination with fetal bovine serum during processing, negating the  
371 objective of obtaining a BVDV-free product.

372 Buffy coat cells, whole blood, washed leukocytes or serum are suitable for isolation of the virus  
373 from live animals. Maternal antibody may interfere with isolation from serum in young calves.  
374 Tissue suspensions from post-mortem cases should be prepared by standard methods.  
375 Confirmation that a bull is not PI with BVDV is most readily achieved by testing of a blood  
376 sample. However, persistent testicular infections (PTI) have been detected in some bulls that  
377 have recovered from acute infection, are no longer viraemic and are now seropositive (Voges  
378 *et al.*, 1998). Virus may be detected in most but not all collections of semen from these bulls.  
379 Although still considered to be uncommon, to exclude the potential for a PTI it is essential to  
380 screen semen from all seropositive bulls. To be confident that a bull does not have a PTI,  
381 batches of semen collected over several weeks should be screened. Once a series of  
382 collections have been screened, further testing of semen from a seropositive bull is not  
383 warranted. Raw semen, and occasionally extended semen, is cytotoxic and must be diluted in  
384 culture medium. For these reasons, it is important to monitor the health of the cells by  
385 microscopic examination at intervals during the incubation. These problems are largely  
386 overcome by the use of real-time RT-PCR which has several advantages over virus isolation,

387 including higher sensitivity and the potential to be completed within a few hours rather than  
388 weeks for virus isolation.

389 There are many variations of procedure in use for virus isolation. All should be optimised to  
390 give maximum sensitivity of detection of a standard virus preparation. All biological  
391 components used for cell culture should be screened and shown to be free of both BVDV and  
392 antibodies to BVDV. Cell cultures (whether primary or continuous lines) should be regularly  
393 checked to confirm that they maintain maximum susceptibility to virus infection. Depending on  
394 the specimen type and purpose for testing, virus isolation is likely to require one or more  
395 passages in cell cultures. While PI animals can be readily identified by screening blood or  
396 serum with one passage, semen should be routinely cultured for three passages and biological  
397 products such as fetal bovine serum up to five times (original inoculation plus four passages).  
398 Conventional methods for virus isolation are used, with the addition of a final immune-staining  
399 step (immunofluorescence or, more frequently, peroxidase staining) to detect growth of non-  
400 cytopathic virus. Thus, tube cultures should include flying cover-slips, while microplate cultures  
401 can be fixed and labelled directly in the plate. Examples are given below. Alternatively, culture  
402 supernatant from the final passage can be screened by real-time RT-PCR (see below).

#### 403 **1.1.1. Microplate immunoperoxidase method for mass screening for virus detection in** 404 **serum samples (Meyling, 1984)**

- 405 i) 10–25 µl of the serum sample is placed into each of four wells of a 96-well tissue-  
406 culture grade microplate. This is repeated for each sample. Known positive and  
407 negative controls are included.
- 408 ii) 100 µl of a cell suspension at the appropriate concentration (usually about  
409 150,000 cells/ml) in medium without fetal calf serum (FCS) is added to all wells.  
410 *Note:* the sample itself acts as the cell-growth supplement. If testing samples other  
411 than serum, use medium with 10% FCS that is free of antibodies to ruminant  
412 pestiviruses.
- 413 iii) The plate is incubated at 37°C for 4 days, either in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere or with  
414 the plate sealed.
- 415 iv) Each well is examined microscopically for evidence of cytopathology (cytopathic  
416 effect or CPE), or signs of cytotoxicity.
- 417 v) The cultures are frozen briefly at approximately –80°C and 50 µl of the culture  
418 supernatant is passaged to new cell cultures, repeating steps 31.1.1.i to iv above.
- 419 vi) The cells are then fixed and stained by one of two methods:
- 420 ● **Paraformaldehyde**
- 421 a) Add 200 µl of a 1/10 dilution of formaldehyde solution (approximately 3%  
422 concentration) to the plate and leave at room temperature for 10 minutes.
- 423 b) The contents of the plate are then discarded and the plate is washed.
- 424 c) Wash plates 5 times with 0.05% Tween 20 in water (an automatic microplate  
425 washer can be used with a low pressure and speed setting).
- 426 d) To each well add 50 µl of an antiviral antibody at the appropriate dilution (prepared  
427 in phosphate buffered saline/ PBS containing 1% gelatin) and incubate for 60–  
428 90 minutes at 37°C in a humidified chamber.
- 429 e) Wash plates five times as in step c).
- 430 f) Dilute the appropriate peroxidase conjugated antiserum to the optimum dilution in 1%  
431 gelatin/PBS (e.g. peroxidase conjugated rabbit anti-mouse immunoglobulin when the  
432 antiviral antibody is a mouse monoclonal). The optimum concentration should be  
433 determined for each batch of conjugate by “checkerboard” titration against reference  
434 positive and negative controls.
- 435 g) To each well of the microplate add 50 µl of the diluted peroxidase conjugate and  
436 incubate for 90 minutes at 37°C in a humidified chamber.

- 437 h) Wash plates five times as in step c).  
438 i) “Develop” the plate by adding 3-amino-9-ethyl carbazole (AEC) substrate (100  
439 µl/well) and allowing to react for 30 minutes at room temperature.  
440 j) Add 100 µl of PBS to each well and add a lid to each plate.  
441 k) Examine the wells by light microscopy, starting with the negative and positive control  
442 wells. There should be no or minimal staining apparent in the cells that were  
443 uninfected (negative control). The infected (positive control) cells should show a  
444 reddish- brown colour in the cytoplasm.
- 445 ● **Acetone**
- 446 a) The plate is emptied by gentle inversion and rinsed in PBS.  
447 b) The cells are fixed as follows: the plate is dipped into a bath of 20% acetone in  
448 PBS, emptied immediately and then transferred to a fresh bath of 20% acetone in  
449 PBS for 10 minutes. The plate is drained thoroughly and as much fluid as possible  
450 is removed by tapping and blotting. The plate is dried thoroughly for at least 3 hours  
451 at a temperature of 25–30°C (e.g. using radiant heat from a bench lamp). *Note:* the  
452 drying is part of the fixation process.  
453 c) The fixed cells are rinsed by adding PBS to all wells.  
454 d) The wells are drained and the **antiviral** BVD antibody (50 µl) is added to all wells at  
455 a predetermined dilution in PBS containing 1% Tween 80 (PBST) and 5% horse  
456 serum or 1% gelatin. (Horse serum or gelatin may be added to reduce nonspecific  
457 staining.)  
458 e) Incubate at 37°C for 15 minutes.  
459 f) Empty the plate and wash three times in PBST.  
460 g) Drain and add the appropriate anti-species serum conjugated to peroxidase at a  
461 predetermined dilution in PBST (50 µl per well) for 15 minutes at 37°C.  
462 h) Empty the plate and wash three times in PBST.  
463 i) Rinse the plate in distilled water. Ensure all fluid is tapped out from the plate.  
464 j) Add freshly prepared hydrogen peroxide substrate with a suitable chromogen, e.g.  
465 3-amino-9-ethyl carbazole (AEC).  
466 An alternative substrate can be made, consisting of 9 mg diaminobenzidine  
467 tetrahydrochloride and 6 mg sodium perborate tetrahydrate dissolved in 15 ml of  
468 PBS. Though the staining is not quite so intense, these chemicals have the  
469 advantage that they can be shipped by air.  
470 k) The plate is examined microscopically. Virus-positive cells show red-brown  
471 cytoplasmic staining.
- 472 Alternative methods for fixation of the cells may be used and include the use of heat  
473 (see Chapter 3.8.3 *Classical swine fever*, Section B.2.2.1.viii). These should be first  
474 evaluated to ensure that the capacity to detect viral antigen is not compromised.

#### 475 1.1.2. Tube method for tissue or buffy coat suspensions

- 476 *Note:* this method can also be conveniently adapted to 24-well plastic dishes. *Note:* a  
477 minimum of 2 and preferably 3 passages (including primary inoculation) is required.
- 478 i) Tissue samples are ground up and a 10% suspension in culture medium is made.  
479 This is then centrifuged to remove the debris.  
480 ii) Test tube cultures with newly confluent or subconfluent monolayers of susceptible  
481 bovine cells are inoculated with 0.1 ml of the sample. The culture is left to adsorb  
482 for 1 hour at 37°C.



- 483 iii) The culture is washed with 1 ml of medium; this is then discarded and 1 ml of  
484 culture maintenance medium is added.
- 485 iv) The culture is incubated for 4–5 days at 37°C and examined microscopically for  
486 evidence of CPE or signs of cytotoxicity.
- 487 v) The culture should then be frozen and thawed for passage to fresh cultures for one  
488 or preferably two more passages (including the culture inoculated for the final  
489 immunostaining). At the final passage, after freeze–thaw the tissue culture fluid is  
490 harvested and passaged on to microtitre plates for culture and staining by the  
491 immunoperoxidase method (see section B.31.1.1 above) or by the  
492 immunofluorescent method. For immunofluorescence, cover-slips are included in  
493 the tubes and used to support cultured cells. At the end of the culture period, the  
494 cover slips are removed, fixed in 100% acetone and stained with an  
495 immunofluorescent conjugate to BVDV. Examine the cover slips under a  
496 fluorescent microscope for diffuse, cytoplasmic fluorescence characteristic of  
497 pestiviruses. Alternatively, culture supernatant from the final passage can be  
498 screened by real-time RT-PCR (see below).

### 499 1.1.3. Virus isolation from semen

500 The samples used for the test are, typically, extended bovine semen or occasionally  
501 raw semen. Semen samples should be transported to the laboratory in liquid nitrogen,  
502 or on dry ice. The samples should be stored in liquid nitrogen or at lower than –70°C  
503 (for long-term storage) or 4°C (for short-term storage of not more than 1–2 days). The  
504 receiving laboratory should document the condition under which samples are received.  
505 Raw semen is generally cytotoxic and should be prediluted (e.g. 1/10 in BVDV free  
506 bovine serum) before being added to cell cultures. At least 0.1 ml of raw semen should  
507 be tested with three passages in cell culture. Toxicity may also be encountered with  
508 extended semen. For extended semen, an approximation should be made to ensure  
509 that the equivalent of a minimum of 0.1 ml raw semen is examined (e.g. a minimum of  
510 1.0 ml extended semen). If toxicity is encountered, multiple diluted samples may need  
511 to be tested to reach a volume equivalent to 0.1 ml raw semen (e.g. 5 × 1 ml of a sample  
512 of extended semen that has been diluted 1/5 to reduce toxicity). A suggested method is  
513 as follows:

- 514 i) Dilute 200 µl fresh semen in 1.8 ml bovine serum containing antibiotics. This can  
515 be the same serum as is being used for supplementing the cell cultures, and must  
516 be shown to be free from antibodies ~~to against~~ BVDV.
- 517 ii) Mix vigorously and leave for 30 minutes at room temperature.
- 518 iii) Inoculate 1 ml of the semen/serum mixture into a monolayer of susceptible cells  
519 (see virus isolation from tissue above) in cell culture tubes or a six-well tissue  
520 culture plate.
- 521 iv) Incubate the cultures for 1 hour at 37°C.
- 522 v) Remove the mixture, wash the monolayer several times with maintenance medium  
523 and then add new maintenance medium to the cultures.
- 524 vi) Include BVDV negative and positive controls in the test. Special caution must be  
525 taken to avoid accidental contamination of test wells by the positive control, for  
526 example always handling the positive control last.
- 527 vii) Observe plates microscopically to ensure freedom from contamination and  
528 cytotoxicity. No cytopathology is expected as a result of BVDV infection but other  
529 viruses such as BHV-1 could be inadvertently isolated.
- 530 viii) After 5–7 days, the cultures are frozen at or below approximately –70°C and  
531 thawed, clarified by centrifugation, and the supernatant used to inoculate fresh  
532 monolayers.
- 533 ix) At the end of the second passage, the supernatant from the freeze-thaw  
534 preparation should be passaged onto cultures in a suitable system for  
535 immunoperoxidase staining or other antigen detection or by real-time RT-PCR after



536 5 days of culture. This is most readily achieved in 96 well microplates. The sample  
537 is considered to be negative, if there is no evidence of viral antigen or BVDV RNA  
538 detected.

## 539 1.2. Nucleic acid detection

540 Conventional gel-based RT-PCR has in the past been used for the detection of BVD viral RNA  
541 for diagnostic purposes. A multiplex RT-PCR has been used for the simultaneous amplification  
542 and typing of virus from cell culture, or direct from blood samples. However, gel-based RT-  
543 PCR has the disadvantage that it is relatively labour intensive, expensive and prone to cross  
544 contamination. These problems had been markedly reduced following the introduction of  
545 probe-based real-time or quantitative RT-PCR methods. Nevertheless, stringent precautions  
546 should still be taken to avoid nucleic acid contamination in the test system and general  
547 laboratory areas where samples are handled and prepared (see Chapter 1.1.6 *Principles and*  
548 *Methods of validation of diagnostic assays for infectious diseases* and Chapter 2.2.3  
549 *Development and optimisation of nucleic acid assays*). These assays have even higher  
550 sensitivity than gel-based RT-PCR and can be completed in a few hours. They are in  
551 widespread use for the diagnosis of infectious diseases, allowing the direct detection of viral  
552 RNA from a wide range of specimens including serum, whole blood, tissues, milk and semen.  
553 The high analytical sensitivity allows the adoption of strategies to screen pools of individual  
554 samples or testing of bulk tank milk. By using this approach, the presence of one or more PI  
555 animals can be identified in herds containing several hundred cows. However, it is not  
556 appropriate to pool blood samples taken from calves between day 7 and 40 of life, when  
557 colostrum that contains antibodies to against BVDV was ingested. During this time the  
558 sensitivity of PCR can be reduced and infected animals escape detection. In contrast, the  
559 detection of viral RNA in skin biopsy samples remains unaffected (Fux & Wolf, 2012). Although  
560 slightly more expensive than immunostaining methods, real-time RT-PCR is a quick and  
561 reliable method that can also be used to screen culture supernatant from the final passage of  
562 cell cultures. While real-time RT-PCR has very high sensitivity and can be applied to the  
563 screening of biological materials used for vaccine manufacture, caution is needed in the  
564 interpretation of results, as the detection of viral RNA does not imply *per se* that infective virus  
565 is present. Real-time RT-PCR assays based on fluorescent-labelled DNA probes can also be  
566 used to differentiate pestiviruses (e.g. McGoldrick *et al.*, 1999).

567 Primers for the assay should be selected in highly conserved regions of the genome, ideally  
568 the 5'-noncoding region, or the NS3 (p80 gene). There are published assays that are broadly  
569 reactive across the pestivirus genus, detecting all BVDV types (*Pestivirus bovis, tauri and*  
570 *brazilense*), CSFV (*Pestivirus suis*), some strains of BDV (*Pestivirus ovis*) and most of the  
571 several 'atypical' pestiviruses (e.g. Hoffman *et al.*, 2006). A sensitive broadly reactive assay is  
572 recommended for diagnostic applications because interspecies transfer of different  
573 pestiviruses is occasionally encountered. When further identification of the specific virus is  
574 required, pestivirus species-specific assays can be applied to further type the virus. It is  
575 important to thoroughly optimise all aspects of the real-time RT-PCR assay, including the  
576 nucleic acid extraction and purification. Optimal concentrations of Mg<sup>2+</sup>, primers, probe and  
577 polymerase, and the cycling parameters need to be determined. However, fully formulated  
578 and optimised 'ready to use' 'mastermixes' are now available commercially and only require  
579 addition of optimised concentrations of primers and probe. Optimised cycling conditions are  
580 often recommended for a particular mastermix.

581 A variety of commercially available nucleic acid purification systems are available in kit form,  
582 and several can be semi-automated. Systems based on the capture and purification of RNA  
583 using magnetic beads are in widespread use and allow rapid processing of large numbers of  
584 samples. Specific products should be evaluated to determine the optimal kit for a particular  
585 sample type and whether any preliminary sample processing is required. For whole blood  
586 samples, the type of anticoagulant and volume of blood in a specimen tube is important. More  
587 problems with inhibitors of the PCR reaction are encountered with samples collected into  
588 heparin treated blood than EDTA. These differences are also exacerbated if the tube does not  
589 contain the recommended volume of blood, thereby increasing the concentration of  
590 anticoagulant in the sample. To identify possible false-negative results, it is recommended to  
591 spike an exogenous ('internal control') RNA template into the specimen prior to RNA extraction

592 (e.g. Hoffman *et al.*, 2006). By the inclusion of PCR primers and probe specific to the  
593 exogenous sequence, the efficiency of both the RNA extraction and also the presence of any  
594 PCR inhibitors can be monitored. While valuable for all sample types, the inclusion of an  
595 internal control is particularly desirable when testing semen and whole blood. When using an  
596 internal control, extensive testing is necessary to ensure that PCR amplification of the internal  
597 control does not compete with the diagnostic PCR and thus lower the analytical sensitivity (see  
598 also chapter 1.1.6).

599 When it is suspected that a sample may contain substances that are adversely affecting either  
600 the efficiency of RNA extraction or the real-time RT-PCR assay, modest dilution of the sample  
601 in saline, cell culture medium or a buffer solution (e.g. phosphate buffered gelatin saline  
602 [PBGGS]) will usually overcome the problem. Dilution of a semen sample by 1/4 and whole  
603 unclotted blood at 1/10 is usually adequate. As the real-time RT-PCR has extremely high  
604 analytical sensitivity, dilution of the sample rarely has a significant impact on the capacity of  
605 the assay to detect viral RNA when present.

### 606 1.2.1. Real-time polymerase chain reaction for BVDV detection in semen

607 Real-time RT-PCR has been shown to be extremely useful to screen semen samples  
608 to demonstrate freedom from BVDV and, apart from speed, often gives superior results  
609 to virus isolation in cell culture, especially when low virus levels are present, such as  
610 may be found in bulls with a PTI. The real-time RT-PCR described here uses a pair of  
611 sequence-specific primers for amplification of target D-RNA and a 5'-nuclease  
612 oligoprobe for the detection of amplified products. The oligoprobe is a single, sequence-  
613 specific oligonucleotide, labelled with two different fluorophores. The primers and probe  
614 are available commercially and several different fluorophores options are available. This  
615 pan-pestivirus real-time RT-PCR assay is designed to detect viral D-RNA of all strains  
616 of BVDV types 1 (*Pestivirus bovis*) and BVDV<sub>2</sub> (*Pestivirus tauri*) and 3 (*Pestivirus*  
617 *brazilense*) as well as BDV, CSFV (*Pestivirus suis*), some strains of BDV (*Pestivirus*  
618 *ovis*) and most atypical pestiviruses. The assay selectively amplifies a 208 base pair  
619 sequence of the 5' non-translated region (5' NTR) of the pestivirus genome. Details of  
620 the primers and probes are given in the protocol outlined below.

#### 621 i) Sample preparation, equipment and reagents

622 a) The samples used for the test are, typically, extended bovine semen or  
623 occasionally raw semen. If the samples are only being tested by real-time RT-PCR,  
624 it is acceptable for them to be submitted chilled, but they must still be cold when  
625 they reach the laboratory. Otherwise, if a cold chain cannot be assured or if virus  
626 isolation is being undertaken, the semen samples should be transported to the  
627 laboratory in liquid nitrogen or on dry ice. At the laboratory, the samples should be  
628 stored in liquid nitrogen or at lower than  $-70^{\circ}\text{C}$  (for long-term storage) or  $4^{\circ}\text{C}$  (for  
629 short-term storage of up to 7 days). *Note:* samples for virus isolation should not be  
630 stored at  $4^{\circ}\text{C}$  for more than 1–2 days.

631 b) Due to the very high analytical sensitivity of real-time RT-PCR, much smaller  
632 volumes of semen may be used. However, at least three straws (minimum 250  $\mu\text{l}$   
633 each) from each collection batch of semen should be processed. The semen in the  
634 three straws should be pooled and mixed thoroughly before taking a sample for  
635 nucleic acid extraction.

636 c) A real-time PCR detection system, and the associated data analysis software, is  
637 required to perform the assay. A number of real-time PCR detection systems are  
638 available from various manufacturers. ~~Other equipment required for the test~~  
639 ~~includes a micro-centrifuge, a chilling block, a micro-vortex, and micropipettes.~~ As  
640 real-time RT-PCR assays are able to detect very small amounts of target nucleic  
641 acid molecules, appropriate measures are required to avoid contamination, ~~;~~  
642 ~~including dedicated and physically separated 'clean' areas for reagent preparation~~  
643 ~~(where no samples or materials used for PCR are handled), a dedicated sample~~  
644 ~~processing area and an isolated area for the PCR thermocycler and associated~~  
645 ~~equipment. Each area should have dedicated reagents and equipment.~~  
646 Furthermore, a minimum of one negative sample should be processed in parallel

647 to monitor the possibility of low level contamination. Sources of contamination may  
648 include product carry-over from positive samples or, more commonly, from cross  
649 contamination by PCR products from earlier work.

650 d) The real-time RT-PCR assay involves two separate procedures.

651 1) Firstly, BVDV RNA is extracted from semen using an appropriate  
652 validated nucleic acid extraction method. Systems using magnetic beads  
653 for the capture and purification of the nucleic acid are recommended. It  
654 is also preferable that the beads are handled by a semi-automated  
655 magnetic particle handling system.

656 2) The second procedure is the RT-PCR analysis of the extracted RNA  
657 template in a real-time RT-PCR system.

658 ii) Extraction of RNA

659 RNA or total nucleic acid is extracted from the pooled (three straws collected at the  
660 same time from the same animal) semen sample. Use of a commercially available  
661 magnetic bead based extraction kit is recommended. However, the preferred kit  
662 should be one that has been evaluated to ensure optimal extraction of difficult  
663 samples (semen and whole blood). Some systems and kit protocols are sufficiently  
664 refined that it is not necessary to remove cells from the semen sample. Prior to  
665 extraction dilute the pooled semen sample 1/4 in phosphate buffered gelatin saline  
666 (PBGS) or a similar buffered solution. Complete the RNA extraction by taking 50  
667 µl of the diluted, pooled sample and add it to the sample lysis buffer. Some  
668 commercial extraction kits may require the use of a larger volume. It has also been  
669 found that satisfactory results are obtained by adding 25 µl of undiluted pooled  
670 sample to sample lysis buffer. Complete the extraction by following the kit  
671 manufacturer's instructions.

672 iii) Real-time RT-PCR assay procedure

673 a) Reaction mixture: There are a number of commercial real-time PCR amplification  
674 kits available from various sources and the particular kits selected need to be  
675 compatible with the real-time PCR platform selected. The required primers and  
676 probes can be synthesised by various commercial companies. The WOAH  
677 Reference Laboratories for BVDV can provide information on suitable suppliers.

678 b) Supply and storage of reagents: The real-time PCR reaction mixture is normally  
679 provided as a 2 × concentration ready for use. The manufacturer's instructions  
680 should be followed for application and storage. Working stock solutions for primers  
681 and probe are made with nuclease-free water at the concentration of 20 µM and  
682 3 µM, respectively. The stock solutions are stored at -20°C and the probe solution  
683 should be kept in the dark. Single-use or limited use aliquots can be prepared to  
684 limit freeze-thawing of primers and probes and extend their shelf life.

685 c) Primers and probe sequences

686 Selection of the primers and probe are outlined in Hoffmann *et al.* (2006) and  
687 summarised below.

688 *Forward:* BVD 190-F 5'-GRA-GTC-GTC-ART-GGT-TCG-AC  
689 *Reverse:* V326 5'-TCA-ACT-CCA-TGT-GCC-ATG-TAC  
690 *Probe:* TQ-pesti 5'-FAM-TGC-YAY-GTG-GAC-GAG-GGC-ATG-C-  
691 TAMRA-3'

692 d) Preparation of reaction mixtures

693 The PCR reaction mixtures are prepared in a separate room that is isolated from  
694 other PCR activities and sample handling. For each PCR test, appropriate controls  
695 should be included. As a minimum, a no template control (NTC), appropriate  
696 negative control (NC) and two positive controls (PC1, PC2) should be included.  
697 The positive and negative controls are included in all steps of the assay from  
698 extraction onwards while the NTC is added after completion of the extraction. The

699 PCR amplifications are carried out in a volume of 25 µl. The protocol described is  
700 based on use of a 96 well microplate based system but other options using  
701 microtubes are also suitable. Each well of the PCR plate should contain 20 µl of  
702 reaction mix and 5 µl of sample as follows:

|     |         |  |
|-----|---------|--|
| 703 | 12.5 µl | 2× RT buffer – from a commercial kit.    |
| 704 | 1 µl    | BVD 190-F Forward primer (20 µM)         |
| 705 | 1 µl    | V326 Reverse primer (20 µM)              |
| 706 | 1 µl    | TQ-pesti Probe (3 µM)                    |
| 707 | 2 µl    | tRNA (40 ng/µl)                          |
| 708 | 1.5 µl  | <u>nuclease free</u> water               |
| 709 | 1 µl    | 25× enzyme mix                           |
| 710 | 5 µl    | sample (or controls – NTC, NC, PC1, PC2) |

711 e) Selection of controls

712 NTC: usually consists of nuclease free water or tRNA in nuclease free water that  
713 is added in place of a sample when the PCR reaction is set up.

714 NC: In practice, many laboratories use PBGS or a similar buffer. Ideally the controls  
715 for testing of semen samples should be negative semen, from seronegative bulls.  
716 However, as a minimum, the assay in use should have been extensively validated  
717 with negative and positive samples to confirm that it gives reliable extraction and  
718 amplification with semen.

719 PCs: There are two positive controls (PC1=moderate – [Ct 29-32] and PC2=weak  
720 [Ct 32–35] positive). Positive semen from naturally infected bulls is preferable as a  
721 positive control. However, this is likely to be difficult to obtain. Further, semen from  
722 a PI bull is not considered suitable because the virus loads are usually very high  
723 and would not give a reliable indication of any moderate reduction in extraction or  
724 assay performance. Negative semen spiked with defined quantities of BVDV virus  
725 could be used as an alternative. If other samples are used as a routine PC, as a  
726 minimum the entire extraction process and PCR assay in use must have been  
727 extensively validated using known positive semen from bulls with a PTI or from  
728 bulls undergoing an acute infection. If these samples are not available and spiked  
729 samples are used for validation purposes, a number of samples spiked with very  
730 low levels of virus should be included. On a day-to-day basis, the inclusion of an  
731 exogenous control with each test sample will largely compensate for not using  
732 positive semen as a control and will give additional benefits by monitoring the  
733 efficiency of the assay on each individual sample. Positive control samples should  
734 be prepared carefully to avoid cross contamination from high titred virus stocks and  
735 should be prepared in advance and frozen at a 'ready to use' concentration and  
736 ideally 'single use' volume.

737 f) Extracted samples are added to the PCR mix in a separate room. The controls  
738 should be added last, in a consistent sequence in the following order: NTC,  
739 negative and then the two positive controls.

740 g) Real-time polymerase chain reaction

741 The PCR plate or tubes are placed in the real-time PCR detection system in a  
742 separate, designated PCR room. Some mastermixes have uniform reaction  
743 conditions that are suitable for many different assays. As an example, the PCR  
744 detection system is programmed for the test as follows:

|     |                                       |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 745 | 1× 48°C 10 minutes                    |
| 746 | 1× 95°C 10 minutes                    |
| 747 | 45 × (95°C 15 seconds, 60°C 1 minute) |

- 748 h) Analysis of real-time PCR data  
749 The software program is usually set to automatically adjust results by  
750 compensating for any background signal and the threshold level is usually set  
751 according to the manufacturer's instructions for the selected analysis software  
752 used. In this instance, a threshold is set at 0.05.
- 753 i) Interpretation of results
- 754 a) Test controls – all controls should give the expected results with positive  
755 controls (PC1 and PC2) falling within the designated range and both the  
756 negative control (NC) and no template control (NTC) should have no Ct  
757 values.
- 758 b) Test samples
- 759 1) Positive result: Any sample that has a cycle threshold (Ct) value less  
760 than 40 is regarded as positive.
- 761 2) Negative result: Any sample that shows no Ct value is regarded as  
762 negative. However, before reporting a negative result for a sample,  
763 the performance of the exogenous internal control should be  
764 checked and shown to give a result within the accepted range for  
765 that control (for example, a Ct value no more than 2–3 Ct units  
766 higher than the NTC).

### 767 1.3. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for antigen detection

768 Antigen detection by ELISA has become a widely adopted method for the detection of  
769 individual PI animals. These assays are not intended for the detection of acutely infected  
770 animals (though from time to time this may be achieved). Importantly, these assays are not  
771 designed for screening of semen or biological materials used in assays or vaccine  
772 manufacture. Several methods for the ELISA for antigen detection have been published and  
773 a number of commercial kits are available. Most are based on the sandwich ELISA principle,  
774 with a capture antibody bound to the solid phase, and a detector antibody conjugated to a  
775 signal system, such as peroxidase. Amplification steps such as the use of biotin and  
776 streptavidin in the detection system are sometimes used to increase assay sensitivity. Both  
777 monoclonal- and polyclonal-based systems are described. The test measures BVD antigen  
778 (NS2-3 or ERNS) in lysates of peripheral blood leukocytes; the new generation of antigen-  
779 capture ELISAs (ERNS capture ELISAs) are able to detect BVD antigen in blood as well as in  
780 plasma or serum samples. The best of the methods gives a sensitivity similar to virus isolation,  
781 and may be preferred in those rare cases where persistent infection is combined with  
782 seropositivity. Due to transient viraemia, the antigen ELISA is less useful for virus detection in  
783 acute BVD infections.

784 The NS2-3 antigen detection ELISAs may be less effective in young calves that have had  
785 colostrum due to the presence of BVDV maternal antibodies, especially when blood samples  
786 or blood leucocytes are tested (Fux & Wolf, 2012). Blood or blood leucocytes should not be  
787 tested in the first month (ERNS capture ELISA) or the first 3 months (NS2-3 ELISA) of life due  
788 to the inhibitory effect of maternal antibodies. The real-time RT-PCR is probably the most  
789 sensitive detection method for this circumstance, but the ERNS ELISA has also been shown  
790 to be a sensitive and reliable test, particularly when used with skin biopsy (ear-notch) samples  
791 (Cornish *et al.*, 2005).

### 792 1.4. Immunohistochemistry

793 Enzyme-labelled methods are useful to detect BVDV antigen in tissue sections, particularly  
794 where suitable MAbs are available. However, these assays are not appropriate to certify  
795 animals for international trade and use should be limited to diagnostic investigations. It is  
796 important that the reagents and procedures used be fully validated, and that nonspecific  
797 reactivity be eliminated. For PI cattle almost any tissue can be used, but particularly good  
798 success has been found with lymph nodes, thyroid gland, skin, brain, abomasum and placenta.



799 Skin biopsies, such as ear-notch samples, have shown to be useful for *in-vivo* diagnosis of  
800 persistent BVDV infection.

## 801 2. Serological tests

802 Antibody to BVDV can be detected in cattle sera by a standard VNT or by ELISA, using one of several  
803 published methods or with commercial kits (e.g. Edwards, 1990). Serology is used to identify levels of  
804 herd immunity, for the detection of the presence of PI animals in a herd, to assist with investigation of  
805 reproductive disease and possible involvement of BVDV and to establish the serological status of bulls  
806 being used for semen collection and to identify whether there has been a recent infection. ELISA for  
807 antibody in bulk milk samples can give a useful indication of the BVD status of a herd (Niskanen, 1993).  
808 High ELISA values (0.8 or more absorbance units) in an unvaccinated herd indicates a high probability  
809 of the herd having been exposed to BVDV in the recent past, most likely through one or more persistently  
810 viraemic animals being present. In contrast, a very low or negative values ( $\leq 0.2$ ) indicates that it is  
811 unlikely that persistently viraemic animals are present. However, ELISA values are not always a reliable  
812 indicator of the presence of PI animals on farms, due to differing husbandry (Zimmer *et al.*, 2002), recent  
813 administration of vaccine and also due to the presence of viral antigen in bulk milk, which may interfere  
814 with the antibody assay itself. Determination of the antibody status of a small number of young stock  
815 (9–18 months) has also been utilised as an indicator of recent transmission of BVDV in the herd (Houe  
816 *et al.*, 1995), but this approach is also dependent on the degree of contact between different groups of  
817 animals in the herd and the potential for exposure from neighbouring herds. VN tests are more frequently  
818 used for regulatory purposes (e.g. testing of semen donors) while ELISAs (usually in the form of  
819 commercially prepared kits) are commonly used for diagnostic applications. Whether ELISA or VNT,  
820 control positive and negative standard sera must be included in every test. These should give results  
821 within predetermined limits for the test to be considered valid. In the VNT, a 'serum control' to monitor  
822 sample toxicity should also be included for each test sample.

### 823 2.1. Virus neutralisation test

824 Selection of the virus strain to include in a VNT is very important. No single strain is likely to  
825 be ideal for all circumstances, but in practice one should be selected that detects the highest  
826 proportion of serological reactions in the local cattle population. Low levels of antibody to  
827 BVDV type 2 virus (*Pestivirus tauri*) may not be detectable by a neutralisation test that uses  
828 type 1 strain of the virus, and vice versa (Fulton *et al.*, 1997). It is important that BVDV type 1  
829 and BVDV type 2 (*Pestivirus bovis* and *P. tauri*) be used in the test and not just the one that  
830 the diagnostician thinks is present, as this can lead to under reporting. Because it makes the  
831 test easier to read, most laboratories use highly cytopathic, laboratory-adapted strains of  
832 BVDV for VN tests. Two widely used cytopathic strains are 'Oregon C24V' and 'NADL'.  
833 However immune-labelling techniques are now available that allow simple detection of the  
834 growth or neutralisation of non-cytopathic strains where this is considered desirable, especially  
835 to support the inclusion of a locally relevant virus strain. An outline protocol for a microtitre VN  
836 test is given below (Edwards, 1990):

#### 837 2.1.1. Test procedure

- 838 i) The test sera are heat-inactivated for 30 minutes at 56°C.
- 839 ii) From a starting dilution of 1/4, serial twofold dilutions of the test sera are made in  
840 a cell-culture grade flat-bottomed 96-well microtitre plate, using cell culture medium  
841 as diluent. For each sample, three or four wells are used at each dilution depending  
842 on the degree of precision required. At each dilution of serum, for each sample one  
843 well is left without virus to monitor for evidence of sample toxicity that could mimic  
844 viral cytopathology or interfere with virus replication. Control positive and negative  
845 sera should also be included in each batch of tests.
- 846 iii) An equal volume (e.g. 50  $\mu$ l) of a stock of cytopathic strain of BVDV containing 100  
847 TCID<sub>50</sub> (50% tissue culture infective dose) is added to each well. A back titration of  
848 virus stock is also done in some spare wells to check the potency of the virus  
849 (acceptance limits 30–300 TCID<sub>50</sub>).
- 850 iv) The plate is incubated for 1 hour at 37°C.



- 851 v) A flask of suitable cells (e.g. bovine turbinate, bovine testis) is trypsinised and the  
852 cell concentration is adjusted to  $1.5 \times 10^5$ /ml. 100  $\mu$ l of the cell suspension is added  
853 to each well of the microtitre plate.
- 854 vi) The plate is incubated at 37°C for 4–5 days, either in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere or with  
855 the plate sealed.
- 856 vii) The wells are examined microscopically for CPE or fixed and stained by  
857 immunoperoxidase staining using an appropriate monoclonal antibody. The VN  
858 titre for each serum is the dilution at which the virus is neutralised in 50% of the  
859 wells. This can be calculated by the Spearman–Kärber or Reed Muench methods.  
860 A seronegative animal will show no neutralisation at the lowest dilution (1/4),  
861 equivalent to a final dilution of 1/8. For accurate comparison of antibody titres, and  
862 particularly to demonstrate significant (more than fourfold) changes in titre,  
863 samples should be tested in parallel in the same test.

## 864 2.2. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay

865 Both indirect and blocking types of test can be used. A number of commercial kits are  
866 available. As with the virus neutralisation test, ELISAs configured using antigen from one  
867 genotype-species of BVDV may not efficiently detect antibody induced by another genotype  
868 virus species. Tests should therefore be selected for their ability to detect antibody to the  
869 spectrum of types and strains circulating in the country where the test is to be performed.

870 The chief difficulty in setting up the test lies in the preparation of a viral antigen of sufficient  
871 potency. The virus must be grown under optimal culture conditions using a highly permissive  
872 cell type. Any serum used in the medium must not inhibit growth of BVDV. The optimal time  
873 for harvest should be determined experimentally for the individual culture system. The virus  
874 can be concentrated and purified by density gradient centrifugation. Alternatively, a potent  
875 antigen can be prepared by treatment of infected cell cultures with detergents, such as Nonidet  
876 P40, N-decanoyl-N-methylglucamine (Mega 10), Triton X-100 or 1-octylbeta-D-  
877 glucopyranoside (OGP). Some workers have used fixed, infected whole cells as antigen. ~~In~~  
878 ~~the future,~~ Increasing use ~~may be is~~ made of artificial antigens manufactured by expressing  
879 specific viral genes in bacterial or eukaryotic systems. Such systems should be validated by  
880 testing sera specific to a wide range of different virus strains. In the future, this technology  
881 should enable the production of serological tests complementary to subunit or marker  
882 vaccines, thus enabling differentiation between vaccinated and naturally infected cattle. An  
883 example outline protocol for an indirect ELISA is given below (Edwards, 1990).

### 884 2.2.1. Test procedure

- 885 i) Roller cultures of secondary calf testis cells with a high multiplicity of infection  
886 (about one), are inoculated with BVDV strain Oregon C24V, overlaid with serum-  
887 free medium and incubated for 24 hours at 37°C.
- 888 ii) The cells are scraped off and pelleted. The supernatant medium is discarded. The  
889 pellet is treated with two volumes of 2% OGP in PBS for 15 minutes at 4°C, and  
890 centrifuged to remove the cell debris. The supernatant antigen is stored in small  
891 aliquots at –70°C, or freeze-dried. Non-infected cells are processed in parallel to  
892 make a control antigen.
- 893 iii) The antigen is diluted to a predetermined dilution in 0.05 M bicarbonate buffer, pH  
894 9.6. Alternate rows of an ELISA-grade microtitre plate are coated with virus and  
895 control antigens overnight at 4°C. The plates are then washed in PBS with 0.05%  
896 Tween 20 or Tween 80 (PBST) before use in the test.
- 897 iv) Test sera are diluted 1/50 in serum diluent (0.5 M NaCl; 0.01 M phosphate buffer;  
898 0.05% Tween 20; 0.001 M ethylene diamine tetra-acetic acid; 1% polyvinyl  
899 pyrrolidone, pH 7.2) and added to virus- and control-coated wells for 1 hour at  
900 37°C. The plates are then washed five times in PBST.
- 901 v) Rabbit anti-bovine IgG peroxidase conjugate is added at a predetermined dilution  
902 (in serum diluent) for 1 hour at 37°C, then the plates are again washed five times  
903 in PBST.

- 904 vi) A suitable enzyme substrate is added, such as hydrogen peroxide/tetramethyl  
905 benzidine. After colour development, the reaction is stopped with sulphuric acid  
906 and the absorbance is read on an ELISA plate reader. The value obtained with  
907 control antigen is subtracted from the test reaction to give a net absorbance value  
908 for each serum.
- 909 vii) It is recommended to convert net absorbance values to sample:positive ratio (or  
910 percentage positivity) by dividing net absorbance by the net absorbance on that  
911 test of a standard positive serum that has a net absorbance of about 1.0. This  
912 normalisation procedure leads to more consistent and reproducible results.

## 913 C. REQUIREMENTS FOR VACCINES

### 914 1. Background

915 BVDV vaccines are used primarily for disease control purposes. Although they can convey production  
916 advantages especially in intensively managed cattle such as in feedlots. In some countries where BVDV  
917 eradication is being undertaken, PI animals are removed and remaining cattle are vaccinated to maintain  
918 a high level of infection-antibody positivity and prevent the generation of further PI animals. Vaccination  
919 to control BVDV infections can be challenging due in part to the antigenic variability of the virus and the  
920 occurrence of persistent infections that arise as a result of fetal infection. Ongoing maintenance of the  
921 virus in nature is predominantly sustained by PI animals that are the product of *in-utero* infection. The  
922 goal for a vaccine should be to prevent systemic viraemia and the virus crossing the placenta. If this is  
923 successfully achieved it is likely that the vaccine will prevent the wide range of other clinical  
924 manifestations, including reproductive, respiratory and enteric diseases and immunosuppression with  
925 its secondary sequelae. There are many different vaccines available in different countries. Traditionally,  
926 BVD vaccines fall into two classes: modified live virus or inactivated vaccines. Experimental recombinant  
927 subunit vaccines based on BVD viral glycoprotein E2 expressed with baculovirus, ~~or~~ transgenic plants  
928 or heterologous viruses and BVDV E2 DNA vaccines have been described but few, if any, are in  
929 commercial production. They offer a future prospect of 'marker vaccines' when used in connection with  
930 a complementary serological test.

#### 931 1.1. Characteristics of a target product profile

932 Traditionally, BVD vaccines fall into two classes: modified live or inactivated virus vaccines.  
933 The essential requirement for both types is to ~~afford~~ provide a high level of fetal ~~infection~~  
934 protection. Many of the live vaccines have been based on a cytopathic strain of the virus which  
935 is considered to be unable to cross the placenta. However, it is important to ensure that the  
936 vaccine virus does not cause fetal infection. In general, vaccination of breeding animals should  
937 be completed well before insemination to ensure optimal protection and avoid any risk of fetal  
938 infection. Live virus vaccine may also be immunosuppressive and precipitate other infections.  
939 On the other hand, modified live virus vaccines may only require a single dose. Use of a live  
940 product containing a cytopathic strain of BVDV may precipitate mucosal disease by  
941 superinfection of persistently viraemic animals. Properly formulated inactivated vaccines are  
942 very safe to use but, to obtain satisfactory levels of immunity, they usually require booster  
943 vaccinations, which may be inconvenient. A combined vaccination protocol using inactivated  
944 followed by live vaccine may reduce the risk of adverse reaction to the live strain. Whether live  
945 or inactivated, because of the propensity for antigenic variability, the vaccine should contain  
946 strains of BVDV that are closely matched to viruses found in the area in which they are used.  
947 For example, in countries where strains of BVDV type 2 (*Pestivirus tauri*) are found, it is  
948 important for the vaccine to contain a suitable type 2 strain. For optimal immunity against type  
949 1 strains (*Pestivirus bovis*), antigens from the dominant subtypes (e.g. 1a and 1b) should be  
950 included. Due to the need to customise vaccines for the most commonly encountered strains  
951 within a country or region, it is not feasible to produce a vaccine antigen bank that can be  
952 drawn upon globally.

953 Guidance for the production of veterinary vaccines is given in Chapter 1.1.8 *Principles of*  
954 *veterinary vaccine production*. The guidelines given here and in chapter 1.1.8 are intended to  
955 be general in nature and may be supplemented by national and regional requirements.

## 956 2. Outline of production and minimum requirements for vaccines

### 957 2.1. Characteristics of the seed

958 For optimal efficacy, it is considered that there should be a close antigenic match between  
959 viruses included in a vaccine and those circulating in the target population. BVDV type 2 strains  
960 (*Pestivirus tauri*) should be included as appropriate. Due to the regional variations in  
961 genotypes-species and subtypes of BVDV, many vaccines contain more than one strain of  
962 BVDV to give acceptable protection. A good appreciation of the antigenic characteristics of  
963 individual strains can be obtained by screening with panels of MAbs (Paton *et al.*, 1995).

#### 964 2.1.1. Biological characteristics of the master seed

965 Isolates of cytopathic virus are often mixed with the noncytopathic biotype. The  
966 separation and purification of the two biotypes from an initial mixed culture is important  
967 to maintain the expected characteristics of the ~~seed~~ seed and depends on several  
968 cycles of a limiting dilution technique for the noncytopathic virus, or plaque selection for  
969 the cytopathic virus. Purity of the cytopathic virus should be confirmed by at least one  
970 additional passage at limiting dilution. When isolates have been cloned, their identity  
971 and key antigenic characteristics should be confirmed. The identity of the seed virus  
972 should be confirmed by sequencing. Where there are multiple isolates included in the  
973 vaccine, each has to be prepared separately.

974 While retaining the desirable antigenic characteristics, the strains selected for the seed  
975 should not show any signs of disease when susceptible animals are vaccinated. Live  
976 attenuated vaccines should not be transmissible to unvaccinated 'in-contact' animals  
977 and should not be able to infect the fetus. Ideally seeds prepared for the production of  
978 inactivated vaccines should grow to high titre to minimise the need to concentrate the  
979 antigens and there should be a minimal amount of protein from the cell cultures  
980 incorporated into the final product. Master stocks for either live or inactivated vaccines  
981 should be prepared under a seed lot system involving master and working stocks that  
982 can be used for production in such a manner that the number of passages can be limited  
983 and minimise antigenic drift. While there are no absolute criteria for this purpose, as a  
984 general guide, the seed used for production should not be passaged more than 20 times  
985 beyond the master seed and the master seed should be of the lowest passage from the  
986 original isolate as is practical.

#### 987 2.1.2. Quality criteria (sterility, purity, freedom from extraneous agents)

988 It is crucial to ensure that all materials used in the preparation of the bulk antigens have  
989 been extensively screened to ensure freedom from extraneous agents. This should  
990 include master and working seeds, the cell cultures and all medium supplements such  
991 as bovine serum. It is particularly important to ensure that any serum used that is of  
992 bovine origin is free of both adventitious BVDV of all ~~genotypes~~ and antibodies against  
993 BVDV strains because low levels of either virus or antibody can mask the presence of  
994 the other. Materials and vaccine seeds should be tested for sterility and freedom from  
995 contamination with other agents, especially viruses as described in the chapter 1.1.8  
996 and chapter 1.1.9.

#### 997 2.1.3. Validation as a vaccine strain

998 All vaccines should pass standard tests for efficacy. Tests should include as a minimum  
999 the demonstration of a neutralising antibody response following vaccination, a reduction  
1000 in virus shedding after challenge in vaccinated cattle and ideally a prevention of  
1001 viraemia. Efficacy tests of BVD vaccines by assessing clinical parameters in non-  
1002 pregnant cattle can be limited by the difficulty of consistently establishing clinical signs  
1003 but, when employed, clinical parameters such as a reduction in the rectal temperature  
1004 response and leukopenia should be monitored. Although it can be difficult by using virus  
1005 isolation in cell culture to consistently demonstrate the low levels of viraemia associated  
1006 with an acute infection, real-time PCR could be considered as an alternative method to  
1007 establish the levels of circulating virus.

1008 If a vaccine passes basic tests, the efficacy of vaccination should ultimately be  
1009 measured by the capacity to prevent transplacental transmission. If there is a substantial  
1010 reduction and ideally complete prevention of fetal infection, a vaccine would be  
1011 expected to be highly effective in other situations (for example prevention of respiratory  
1012 disease). A suitable challenge system can be established by intranasal inoculation of  
1013 noncytopathic virus into pregnant cows between 60 and 90 days of gestation (Brownlie  
1014 *et al.*, 1995). Usually this system will reliably produce persistently viraemic offspring in  
1015 non-immune cows. In countries where BVDV type 2 viruses (*Pestivirus tauri*) are  
1016 commonly encountered, efficacy in protecting against BVDV type 2 infections should be  
1017 measured.

## 1018 **2.2. Method of manufacture**

### 1019 **2.2.1. Procedure**

1020 Both cytopathic and noncytopathic biotypes will grow in a variety of cell cultures of  
1021 bovine origin. Standard procedures may be used, with the expectation for harvesting  
1022 noncytopathic virus on days 4–7 and cytopathic virus on days 2–4. The optimal yield of  
1023 infectious virus will depend on several factors, including the cell culture, isolate used  
1024 and the initial seeding rate of virus. These factors should be taken into consideration  
1025 and virus replication kinetics investigated to establish the optimal conditions for large  
1026 scale virus production. Whether a live or inactivated vaccine, the essential aim will be  
1027 to produce a high-titred virus stock. This bulk antigen preparation can subsequently be  
1028 prepared according to the type of vaccine being considered.

### 1029 **2.2.2. Requirements for ingredients**

1030 Most BVDV vaccines are grown in cell cultures of bovine origin that are frequently  
1031 supplemented with medium components of animal origin. The material of greatest  
1032 concern is bovine serum due to the potential for contamination with BVD viruses and  
1033 antibodies to these viruses. These adventitious contaminants not only affect the  
1034 efficiency of production but also may mask the presence of low levels of infectious  
1035 BVDV that may have undesirable characteristics. In addition to the virus seeds, all  
1036 materials should be tested for sterility and freedom from contamination with other  
1037 agents, especially viruses as described in chapters 1.1.8 and 1.1.9. Further, materials  
1038 of bovine or ovine origin should originate from a country with negligible risk for  
1039 transmissible spongiform encephalopathies [TSEs] (see chapter 1.1.9).

### 1040 **2.2.3. In-process controls**

1041 In-process controls are part of the manufacturing process. Cultures should be inspected  
1042 regularly to ensure that they remain free from contamination, and to monitor the health  
1043 of the cells and the development or absence of CPE, as appropriate. While the basic  
1044 requirement for efficacy is the capacity to induce an acceptable neutralising antibody  
1045 response, during production, target concentrations of antigen required to achieve an  
1046 acceptable response may be monitored indirectly by assessment of the quantity of  
1047 infectious virus or antigen mass that is produced. Rapid diagnostic assays such as the  
1048 ELISA are useful to monitor BVDV antigen production. Alternatively, the quality of a  
1049 batch of antigen may be determined by titration of the quantity of infectious virus  
1050 present, although this may underestimate the quantity of antigen. For inactivated  
1051 vaccines, infectivity is evaluated before inactivation. For inactivated vaccines the  
1052 inactivation kinetics should be established so that a suitable safety margin can be  
1053 determined and incorporated into the routine production processes. At the end of  
1054 production, *in-vitro* cell culture assays should be undertaken to confirm that inactivation  
1055 has been complete. These innocuity tests should include a sufficient number of  
1056 passages and volume of inoculum to ensure that very low levels of infectious virus would  
1057 be detected if present.

- 1058                   **2.2.4. Final product batch tests**
- 1059                   i)    Sterility
- 1060                    Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended
- 1061                    for veterinary use may be found in Chapter 1.1.9.
- 1062                   ii)   Identity
- 1063                    Identity tests should demonstrate that no other strain of BVDV is present when
- 1064                    several strains are propagated in a facility producing multivalent vaccines.
- 1065                   iii)  Safety
- 1066                    Safety tests shall consist of detecting any abnormal local or systemic adverse
- 1067                    reactions to the vaccine by all vaccination route(s). Batch-to-batch safety tests are
- 1068                    required unless safety of the product is demonstrated and APPROVED in the
- 1069                    registration dossier and production is consistent with that described in chapter
- 1070                    1.1.8.
- 1071                    The safety test is different to the inocuity test (see above).
- 1072                    Live vaccines must either be demonstrated to be safe in pregnant cattle (i.e. no
- 1073                    transmission to the fetus), or should be licensed with a warning not to use them in
- 1074                    pregnant animals. Live vaccines containing cytopathic strains should have an
- 1075                    appropriate warning of the risk of inducing mucosal disease in PI cattle.
- 1076                   iv)  Batch potency
- 1077                    BVD vaccines must be demonstrated to produce adequate immune responses,
- 1078                    when used in their final formulation according to the manufacturer's published
- 1079                    instructions. The minimum quantity of infectious virus and/or antigen required to
- 1080                    produce an acceptable immune response should be determined. *In-vitro* assays
- 1081                    should be used to monitor individual batches during production.

## 1082                   **2.3. Requirements for authorisation/registration/licensing**

### 1083                   **2.3.1. Manufacturing process**

1084                    For registration of a vaccine, all relevant details concerning manufacture of the vaccine

1085                    and quality control testing should be submitted to the relevant authorities. Unless

1086                    otherwise specified by the authorities, information should be provided from three

1087                    consecutive vaccine batches with a volume not less than 1/3 of the typical industrial

1088                    batch volume.

1089                    There is no standard method for the manufacture of a BVD vaccine, but conventional

1090                    laboratory techniques with stationary, rolled or suspension (micro-carriers) cell cultures

1091                    may be used. Inactivated vaccines can be prepared by conventional methods, such as

1092                    binary ethylenimine or beta-propiolactone inactivation (Park & Bolin, 1987). A variety of

1093                    adjuvants may be used.

### 1094                   **2.3.2. Safety requirements**

1095                    *In-vivo* tests should be undertaken using a single dose, overdose (for live vaccines only)

1096                    and repeat doses (taking into account the maximum number of doses for primary

1097                    vaccination and, if appropriate, the first revaccination/booster vaccination) and contain

1098                    the maximum permitted antigen load and, depending on the formulation of the vaccine,

1099                    the maximum number of vaccine strains.

#### 1100                    i)    Target and non-target animal safety

1101                    The safety of the final product formulation of both live and inactivated vaccines

1102                    should be assessed in susceptible young calves that are free of maternally derived

1103                    antibodies and in pregnant cattle. They should be checked for any local reactions

1104                    following administration, and, in pregnant cattle, for any effects on the unborn calf.



1105 Live attenuated vaccines may contribute to immunosuppression that might  
1106 increase mortality. It may also contribute to the development of mucosal disease  
1107 in PI animals that is an animal welfare concern. Therefore vaccination of PI animals  
1108 with live attenuated vaccines containing cytopathic BVDV should be avoided. Live  
1109 attenuated vaccines must not be capable of being transmitted to other  
1110 unvaccinated animals that are in close contact.

1111 ii) Reversion-to-virulence for attenuated/live vaccines and environmental  
1112 considerations

1113 Virus seeds that have been passaged at least up to and preferably beyond the  
1114 passage limit specified for the seed should be inoculated into young calves to  
1115 confirm that there is no evidence of disease. If a live attenuated vaccine has been  
1116 registered for use in pregnant animals, reversion to virulence tests should also  
1117 include pregnant animals. Live attenuated vaccines should not be transmissible to  
1118 unvaccinated 'in-contact' animals.

1119 iii) Precautions (hazards)

1120 BVDV is not considered to be a human health hazard. Standard good  
1121 microbiological practice should be adequate for handling the virus in the laboratory.  
1122 A live virus vaccine should be identified as harmless for people administering the  
1123 product. However adjuvants included in either live or inactivated vaccines may  
1124 cause injury to people. Manufacturers should provide adequate warnings that  
1125 medical advice should be sought in the case of self-injection (including for  
1126 adjuvants, oil-emulsion vaccine, preservatives, etc.) with warnings included on the  
1127 product label/leaflet so that the vaccinator is aware of any danger.

### 1128 **2.3.3. Efficacy requirements**

1129 The potency of the vaccine should be determined by inoculation into seronegative and  
1130 virus negative calves, followed by monitoring of the antibody response. Antigen content  
1131 can be assayed by ELISA and adjusted as required to a standard level for the particular  
1132 vaccine. Standardised assay protocols applicable to all vaccines do not exist. Live  
1133 vaccine batches may be assayed by infectivity titration. Each production batch of  
1134 vaccine should undergo potency and safety testing as batch release criteria. BVD  
1135 vaccines must be demonstrated to produce adequate immune responses, as outlined  
1136 above, when used in their final formulation according to the manufacturer's published  
1137 instructions.

### 1138 **2.3.4. Vaccines permitting a DIVA strategy (detection of infection in vaccinated animals)**

1139 To date, there are no commercially available vaccines for BVDV that support use of a  
1140 true DIVA strategy. Experimental subunit vaccines based on baculovirus-expressed  
1141 BVD viral glycoprotein E2 have been described but are not available commercially. They  
1142 offer a future prospect of 'marker vaccines' when used in connection with a  
1143 complementary serological test. Experimental BVDV E2 DNA vaccines and BVDV E2  
1144 subunit vaccines expressed using transgenic plants and alphavirus replicon or chimeric  
1145 pestivirus vaccines have also been described.

### 1146 **2.3.5. Duration of immunity**

1147 There are few published data on the duration of antibody following vaccination with a  
1148 commercial product. Protocols for their use usually recommend a primary course of two  
1149 inoculations and boosters at yearly intervals. Only limited data are available on the  
1150 antibody levels that correlate with protection against respiratory infections (Bolin &  
1151 Ridpath, 1995; Howard *et al.*, 1989) or *in-utero* infection (Brownlie *et al.*, 1995).  
1152 However, there are many different commercial formulations and these involve a range  
1153 of adjuvants that may support different periods of efficacy. Consequently, duration of  
1154 immunity data must be generated separately for each commercially available product  
1155 by undertaking challenge tests at the end of the period for which immunity has been  
1156 claimed.



1157 **2.3.6. Stability**

1158 There are no accepted guidelines for the stability of BVD vaccines, but it can be  
1159 assumed that attenuated virus vaccine (freeze-dried) should remain potent for at least  
1160 1 year if kept at 4°C. Inactivated virus vaccine could have a longer shelf life at 4°C.  
1161 Lower temperatures could prolong shelf life for either type, but adjuvants in killed  
1162 vaccine may preclude this. Bulk antigens that have not been formulated into finished  
1163 vaccine can be reliably stored frozen at low temperatures but the antigen quality should  
1164 be monitored with *in-vitro* assays prior to incorporation into a batch of vaccine.

1165 **REFERENCES**

- 1166 BAKER J.C. (1995). The clinical manifestations of bovine viral diarrhoea infection. *Vet. Clin. North. Am. –*  
1167 *Food Animal Practice*, **11**, 425–445.
- 1168 BAUERMANN F.V., FLORES E.F. & RIDPATH J.F. (2012). Antigenic relationships between bovine viral  
1169 diarrhoea virus 1 and 2 and HoBi virus: possible impacts on diagnosis and control. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*  
1170 (official publication of the American Association of Veterinary Laboratory Diagnosticians), **24**, 253–261.
- 1171 BAUERMANN F.V., HARMON A., FLORES E.F., FALKENBERG S.M., REECY J.M. & RIDPATH J.F. (2013). *In vitro*  
1172 neutralization of HoBi-like viruses by antibodies in serum of cattle immunized with inactivated or modified  
1173 live vaccines of bovine viral diarrhoea viruses 1 and 2. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **166**, 242–245.
- 1174 BOLIN S.R. & RIDPATH J.F. (1992). Differences in virulence between two noncytopathic bovine viral  
1175 diarrhoea viruses in calves. *Am. J. Vet. Res.*, **53**, 2157–2163.
- 1176 BOLIN S.R. & RIDPATH J.F. (1995). Assessment of protection from systemic infection or disease afforded  
1177 by low to intermediate titers of passively acquired neutralizing antibody against bovine viral diarrhoea  
1178 virus in calves. *Am. J. Vet. Res.*, **56**, 755–759.
- 1179 BROWNLIE J. (1985). Clinical aspects of the bovine virus diarrhoea/mucosal disease complex in cattle.  
1180 *In Practice*, **7**, 195–202.
- 1181 BROWNLIE J. (1990). The pathogenesis of bovine virus diarrhoea virus infections. *Rev. sci. tech. Off. int.*  
1182 *Epiz.*, **9**, 43–59.
- 1183 BROWNLIE J., CLARKE M.C., HOOPER L.B. & BELL G.D. (1995). Protection of the bovine fetus from bovine  
1184 viral diarrhoea virus by means of a new inactivated vaccine. *Vet. Rec.*, **137**, 58–62.
- 1185 CHEN M., LIU M., LIU S. & SHANG Y. (2021). HoBi-like pestivirus infection leads to bovine death and severe  
1186 respiratory disease in China. *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*, **68**, 1069–1074.
- 1187 CORNISH T.E., VAN OLPHEN A.L., CAVENDER J.L., EDWARDS J.M., JAEGER P.T., VIEYRA L.L., WOODARD L.F.,  
1188 MILLER D.R. & O'TOOLE D. (2005). Comparison of ear notch immunohistochemistry, ear notch antigen-  
1189 capture ELISA, and buffy coat virus isolation for detection of calves persistently infected with bovine  
1190 viral diarrhoea virus. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **17**, 110–117.
- 1191 DUFFELL S.J. & HARKNESS J.W. (1985). Bovine virus diarrhoea-mucosal disease infection in cattle. *Vet.*  
1192 *Rec.*, **117**, 240–245.
- 1193 EDWARDS S. (1990). The diagnosis of bovine virus diarrhoea-mucosal disease in cattle. *Rev. sci. tech.*  
1194 *Off. int. Epiz.*, **9**, 115–130.
- 1195 FRAY M.D., MANN G.E., BLEACH E.C.L., KNIGHT P.G., CLARKE M.C. & CHARLESTON B. (2002). Modulation  
1196 of sex hormone secretion in cows by acute infection with bovine viral diarrhoea virus. *Reproduction*,  
1197 **123**, 281–289.

- 1198 FULTON R.W., SALIKI J.T., BURGE L.J., DOFFAY J.M., BOLIN S.R., MAES R.K., BAKER J.C. & FREY M.L.  
1199 (1997). Neutralizing antibodies to type-1 and type-2 bovine viral diarrhoea viruses – detection by inhibition  
1200 of viral cytopathology and infectivity by immunoperoxidase assay. *Clin. Diagn. Lab. Immunol.*, **4**, 380–  
1201 383.
- 1202 FUX R. & WOLF G. (2012). Transient elimination of circulating bovine viral diarrhoea virus by colostral  
1203 antibodies in persistently infected calves: a pitfall for BVDV-eradication programs? *Vet. Microbiol.*, **161**,  
1204 **1**
- 1205 GIVENS M.D., RIDDELL K.P., WALZ P.H., RHOADES J., HARLAND R., ZHANG Y., GALIK P.K., BRODERSEN B.W.,  
1206 COCHRAN A.M., BROCK K.V., CARSON R.L. & STRINGFELLOW D.A. (2007). Noncytopathic bovine viral  
1207 diarrhoea virus can persist in testicular tissue after vaccination of peri-pubertal bulls but prevents  
1208 subsequent infection. *Vaccine*, **25**, 867–876.
- 1209 HOFFMANN B., DEPNER K., SCHIRRMIEIER H. & BEER M. (2006). A universal heterologous internal control  
1210 system for duplex real-time RT-PCR assays used in a detection system for pestiviruses *J. Virol.*  
1211 *Methods*, **136**, 200–209.
- 1212 HOUE H., BAKER J.C., MAES R.K., RUEGG P.L. & LLOYD J.W. (1995). Application of antibody titers against  
1213 bovine viral diarrhoea virus (BVDV) as a measure to detect herds with cattle persistently infected with  
1214 BVDV. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **7**, 327–332.
- 1215 HOWARD C.J., CLARKE M.C. & BROWNLIE J. (1989). Protection against respiratory infection with bovine  
1216 virus diarrhoea virus by passively acquired antibody. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **19**, 195–203.
- 1217 LETELLIER C. & KERKHOFS P. (2003). Real-time PCR for simultaneous detection and genotyping of bovine  
1218 viral diarrhoea virus. *J. Virol. Methods*, **114**, 21–27.
- 1219 MCGOLDRICK A., BENSUADE E., IBATA G., SHARP G. & PATON D. J. (1999). Closed one-tube reverse  
1220 transcription nested polymerase chain reaction for the detection of pestiviral RNA with fluorescent  
1221 probes. *J. Virol. Methods*, **79**, 85–95.
- 1222 MCGOWAN M.R. & KIRKLAND P.D. (1995). Early reproductive loss due to bovine pestivirus infection. *Br.*  
1223 *Vet. J.*, **151**, 263–270.
- 1224 MEYLING A. (1984). Detection of BVD virus in viraemic cattle by an indirect immunoperoxidase  
1225 technique. *In: Recent Advances in Virus Diagnosis (CEC Seminar)*, McNulty M.S. & McFerran J.B., eds.  
1226 Martinus Nijhoff, Belfast, UK, 37–46.
- 1227 MOENNIG V. & LIESS B. (1995). Pathogenesis of intrauterine infections with bovine viral diarrhoea virus.  
1228 *Vet. Clin. North. Am.*, **11**, 477–487.
- 1229 MOENNIG V., HOUE H. & LINDBERG A. (2005). BVD control in Europe: current status and perspectives.  
1230 *Anim. Health Res. Rev.*, **6**, 63–74.
- 1231 NISKANEN R. (1993). Relationship between the levels of antibodies to bovine viral diarrhoea virus in bulk  
1232 tank milk and the prevalence of cows exposed to the virus. *Vet. Rec.*, **133**, 341–344.
- 1233 PARK B.K. & BOLIN S.R. (1987). Molecular changes of bovine viral diarrhoea virus polypeptides treated  
1234 with binary ethylenimine, beta-propiolactone and formalin. *Res. Rep. Rural Dev. Admin. (L&V) Korea*,  
1235 **29**, 99–103.
- 1236 PATON D.J., SANDS J.J. LOWINGS J.P., SMITH J.E., IBATA G., EDWARDS S. (1995). A proposed division of  
1237 the pestivirus genus using monoclonal antibodies, supported by cross-neutralisation assays and genetic  
1238 sequencing. *Vet. Res.*, **26**, 92–109.

1239 POSTLER T.S., BEER M., BLITVICH B.J., BUKH J., DE LAMBALLERIE X., DREXLER J.F., IMRIE A., KAPOOR A.,  
1240 KARGANOVA G.G., LEMEY P., LOHMANN V., SIMMONDS P., SMITH D.B., STAPLETON J.T. & KUHN J.H. (2023).  
1241 Renaming of the genus Flavivirus to Orthoflavivirus and extension of binomial species names within the  
1242 family Flaviviridae. *Arch. Virol.*, **168**, DOI: 10.1007/s00705-023-05835-1

1243 READ A.J., GESTIER S., PARRISH K., FINLAISON D.S., GU X., O'CONNOR T.W. & KIRKLAND P.D. (2020).  
1244 Prolonged Detection of Bovine Viral Diarrhoea Virus Infection in the Semen of Bulls. *Viruses*, **12**, 674.  
1245 doi: 10.3390/v12060674. PMID: 32580423; PMCID: PMC7354483.

1246 SCHWEIZER M., STALDER H., HASLEBACHER A., GRISIGER M., SCHWERMER H. & DI LABIO E. (2021).  
1247 Eradication of bovine viral diarrhoea (BVD) in cattle in Switzerland: Lessons taught by the complex  
1248 biology of the virus. *Front. Vet. Sci.*, **8**, 702730.

1249 VILCEK S., PATON D.J., DURKOVIC B., STROJNY L., IBATA G., MOUSSA A., LOITSCH A., ROSSMANITH W., VEGA  
1250 S., SCICLUNA M.T. & PALFI V. (2001). Bovine viral diarrhoea virus genotype 1 can be separated into at  
1251 least eleven genetic groups. *Arch. Virol.*, **146**, 99–115.

1252 VOGES H., HORNER G.W., ROWE S. & WELLENBERG G.J. (1998). Persistent bovine pestivirus infection  
1253 localized in the testes of an immuno-competent, non-viremic bull. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **61**, 165–175.

1254 ZIMMER G., SCHOUSTRA W. & GRAAT E. A.M. (2002). Predictive values of serum and bulk milk sampling  
1255 for the presence of persistently infected BVDV carriers in dairy herds. *Res. Vet. Sci.*, **72**, 75–82.

1256 \*  
1257 \* \*

1258 **NB:** There are WOAHP Reference Laboratories for bovine viral diarrhoea (please consult the WOAHP  
1259 Web site:  
1260 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3> )  
1261 Please contact the WOAHP Reference Laboratories for any further information on  
1262 diagnostic tests, reagents and vaccines for bovine viral diarrhoea

1263 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 1990. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2015.

1  
2

**Appendix 1: Bovine viral diarrhoea**  
**Intended purpose of test: population freedom from infection**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>            | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>  | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u>         | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>References</u>  |
|---|--|--|---|--------------------------|---|---|--|
| <u>NA detection by (real-time) RT-PCR +++</u> | <u>Ear notch (skin), blood, milk</u>   | <u>Performance has been demonstrated under field conditions in large control programs</u>  | <u>Whole Swiss, German and Irish cattle populations</u> | <u>See references</u>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Very sensitive</u></li> <li>- <u>Rapid</u></li> <li>- <u>High-throughput</u></li> <li>- <u>Well established internationally</u></li> <li>- <u>Detects assay-dependent all BVDV species</u></li> <li>- <u>Allows assay-dependent for differentiation of BVDV types 1 and 2</u></li> <li>- <u>Detects persistent and transient infection</u></li> <li>- <u>Proficiency panel of different Pestivirus strains available</u></li> <li>- <u>Detection of viral RNA in skin biopsy samples unaffected by maternally-derived antibodies, therefore allows for identification of persistently infected animals early in life</u></li> <li>- <u>Successfully applied in ongoing or completed control programmes</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Possibility for contamination at sample collection or in laboratory, leading to false positive results</u></li> <li>- <u>Needs specialised equipment</u></li> <li>- <u>Detection of viral RNA does not imply per se that infectious virus is present</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Presi &amp; Heim (2010) <i>Vet. Microbiol.</i> <b>142</b>, 137–142</u></li> <li>- <u>Schweizer et al. (2021) <i>Front. Vet. Sci.</i> <b>8</b>, 702730</u></li> <li>- <u>Wernike et al. (2017) <i>Pathogens</i> <b>6</b> (4)</u></li> <li>- <u>Graham et al. (2021) <i>Front. Vet. Sci.</i> <b>8</b>, 674557</u></li> </ul> |
| <u>Antibody detection by ELISA +++</u>        | <u>Bulk milk, blood</u>                | <u>DSe and DSp differs based on the ELISA used (commercial/in-house) and the antibodies being tested (e.g. antibodies against structural (E2) and non-structural (NS2-3) proteins)</u> |   |                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Simple to perform and cost-effective</u></li> <li>- <u>Milk collection is non-invasive method with potential for herd screening with tank/bulk milk samples</u></li> <li>- <u>Bulk milk sensitive indicator for PI in herd</u></li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Some cross-reactivity with vaccines and other pestiviruses</u></li> <li>- <u>PI animal will usually be seronegative</u></li> <li>- <u>Bulk milk from herd excludes males, non-lactating or young stock</u></li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Beaudeau et al. (2001) <i>Vet. Microbiol.</i> <b>80</b>, 329–337</u></li> <li>- <u>Lanyon et al. (2013) <i>Aust. Vet. J.</i> <b>91</b>, 52–56</u></li> </ul>   |

| <u>Test with score and species</u>    | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation report</u>                                | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>References</u>  |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|---|---|---|---|--|
| <u>Antigen detection by ELISA +++</u> | <u>Serum, whole blood, skin biopsy</u> | <u>DSe 67–100% and DSp 98.8–100% relative to virus isolation reported</u>                               |   |   | <u>Relatively simple to perform, rapid, can be cost-effective (when compared to virus isolation and PCR) and suitable for high-throughput applications. There is no need for cell culture facility.</u> | <u>Maternal antibodies in colostrum may interfere with testing for antigen in serum using ELISA in calves. Ear notch samples are less affected. PI calves <i>in utero</i> defies detection.</u> | <u>Lanyon <i>et al.</i> (2013). <i>Vet. J.</i> 199, 201–209.</u> |
| <u>Virus isolation +</u>              | <u>Serum, whole blood</u>              | <u>Considered (historically) reference test: DSe &lt;90% compared with real-time RT-PCR ; DSp ~100%</u> | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <u>- High degree of specificity<br/>- Identifies presence of infectious virus</u>   | <u>- Requires specialised cell culture capabilities and access to BVDV free materials<br/>- Reduced sensitivity in presence of maternally-derived antibodies</u>                                | <u>N/A</u>   |
| <u>Virus neutralisation test +</u>    | <u>Serum</u>                           | <u>DSe &amp; DSp both extremely high, both &gt;99%. Historical reference serological test.</u>          | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <u>Very high specificity</u>  | <u>- ASe can vary depending on virus strain used<br/>- Requires cell culture, good quality samples<br/>- Labour intensive, takes 5 days to obtain results<br/>- Expensive</u>                   | <u>N/A</u>   |

3 N/A: not available

**Appendix 2: Bovine viral diarrhoea**  
**Intended purpose of test: individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>            | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u>                  | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation Report</u>                                | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>References</u>  |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| <u>Virus isolation ++</u>                     | <u>Serum, whole blood.</u>                              | <u>Considered reference test: DSe &lt;90% compared with real-time RT-PCR; DSp ~100%</u>   | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- High degree of specificity</li> <li>- Identifies presence of infectious virus</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Requires specialised cell culture capabilities and access to BVDV free materials</li> <li>- Reduced sensitivity in presence of MDA (diagnostic gap); takes several weeks for maximum DSe</li> </ul> | <u>Edmonson et al. (2007); Toker &amp; Yesilbag (2021)</u>   |
| <u>Antigen detection by ELISA +++</u>         | <u>Serum, whole blood, skin biopsy (e.g. ear notch)</u> | <u>DSe 67–100% and DSp 98.8–100% relative to virus isolation have been reported but usually DSe and DSp are extremely high</u>  |   |   | <u>Relatively simple to perform, rapid, can be cost-effective and suitable for high-throughput applications. There is no need for cell culture facility.</u>  | <u>Maternal antibodies in colostrum may interfere with testing for antigen in serum using ELISA in calves. Ear notch samples are less affected. PI calves in utero defies detection.</u>   | <u>Zimmer et al. (2004). Vet. Microbiol., 100, 145–149</u>   |
| <u>NA detection by (real-time) RT-PCR +++</u> | <u>Ear notch (skin), blood, nasal or oral swab</u>      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Depending on the assay analytical sensitivity of less than 10 genome copies/reaction</li> <li>- Accuracy 98.73% based on a proficiency test panel consisting of five ear notch and five serum samples</li> </ul> |   | <u>See references</u>                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Very sensitive</li> <li>- Rapid</li> <li>- High-throughput</li> <li>- Well established internationally</li> <li>- Depending on the assay detects all BVDV species</li> <li>- Allows assay-dependent for differentiation of BVDV types 1 and 2</li> <li>- Detects persistent and transient infection</li> <li>- Proficiency panel of different Pestivirus strains available</li> <li>- Detection of viral RNA in skin biopsy samples unaffected by maternally-derived antibodies</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Possibility for contamination at sample collection or in laboratory, leading to false positive results</li> <li>- Needs specialised equipment</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Hoffmann et al. (2006). J. Virol. Methods, 136, 200–209.</li> <li>- Wernike et al. (2019). Vet. Microbiol., 239, 108452.</li> </ul> |



| <u>Test with score and species</u>    | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>  | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation Report</u>                                | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>References</u> |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|---|---|---|--|-------------------|
| <u>Virus neutralisation test ++</u>   | <u>Serum</u>                           | <u>DSe &amp; DSp both extremely high, both &gt;99%. Historical reference serological test.</u>   | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <p><u>Very high specificity</u></p> <p><u>- Negative results generally indicate that an animal has not been infected provided it has been tested for virus/antigen</u></p> <p><u>Animals that give positive results have usually cleared the infection provided that they are not pregnant. Bulls present a special situation. If they seroconvert during a period of quarantine, there is a risk that there will be virus in their semen. Further, a small proportion of seropositive bulls may have a persistent testicular infection that may last for many months. To ensure freedom from infection, semen must be tested on several occasions using real-time RT-PCR. Virus isolation is not sufficiently sensitive and the presence of virus may be masked by antibodies.</u></p> | <p><u>- ASe can vary depending on virus strain used</u></p> <p><u>- Requires cell culture, good quality samples</u></p> <p><u>- time consuming to perform, takes 5 days to obtain results</u></p> <p><u>- Labour intensive</u></p> <p><u>- Due to the biology of the virus (birth of PI calves that are not able to amount a specific immune response to the virus strain they are infected with) antibody-negative animals could be PI (in non-BVDV-free populations)</u></p> | <u>N/A</u>        |
| <u>Antibody detection by ELISA ++</u> | <u>Blood, Individual milk sample</u>   | <u>DSe and DSp differs based on the ELISA used (commercial/in-house) and the antibodies being tested (e.g. antibodies against structural (E2) and non-structural (NS2-3) proteins.</u> |   |   | <p><u>- Simple to perform and cost-effective</u></p> <p><u>- Milk collection is non-invasive method</u></p> <p><u>- Paired samples can be used to confirm acute infection.</u></p> <p><u>- Ensure milk is collected directly from the teat rather than bulk-milk tank to ensure no cross contamination/false-positives</u></p>  | <p><u>- Maternal antibodies in colostrum may interfere with testing for antibodies in serum using ELISA in calves. Calves should be tested after 9 months of age after maternal antibodies have waned.</u></p> <p><u>- PI animal will be seronegative and may impact receiving herds if moved.</u></p> <p><u>- Using milk, limited to lactating cow only</u></p>   | <u>N/A</u>        |

6 N/A: not available

**Appendix 3: Bovine viral diarrhoea**  
**Intended purpose of test: contribute to eradication policies**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>            | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u>                   | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u>         | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>References</u>  |
|---|--|---|---|--------------------------|--|---|--|
| <u>Antigen detection by ELISA +++</u>         | <u>Serum, whole blood, skin biopsy</u>                   | <u>DSse 67%–100% and DSp 98.8–100% reported</u>                                       |   |                          | <u>Relatively simple to perform, rapid, can be cost-effective and suitable for high-throughput applications. There is no need for cell culture facility.</u>   | <u>Maternal antibodies in colostrum may interfere with testing for antigen in serum using ELISA in calves. Ear notch samples are less affected. PI calves <i>in utero</i> defy detection.</u>                   | <u>Zimmer <i>et al.</i> (2004). <i>Vet Microbiol.</i> <b>100</b>, 145–149</u>  |
| <u>NA detection by (real-time) RT-PCR +++</u> | <u>Ear notch (skin), blood, milk, nasal or oral swab</u> | <u>Utility has been demonstrated under field conditions in large control programs</u> | <u>Whole Swiss, German and Irish cattle populations</u> | <u>See references</u>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Very sensitive</u></li> <li>- <u>Rapid</u></li> <li>- <u>High-throughput</u></li> <li>- <u>Well established internationally</u></li> <li>- <u>Depending on assay, detects all BVDV species</u></li> <li>- <u>Allows assay-dependent differentiation of BVDV types 1 and 2</u></li> <li>- <u>Detects persistent and transient infection</u></li> <li>- <u>Proficiency panel of different Pestivirus strains available</u></li> <li>- <u>Detection of viral RNA in skin biopsy samples unaffected from maternally-derived antibodies, therefore allows for identification of persistently infected animals early in life</u></li> <li>- <u>Successfully applied in ongoing or completed control programmes (see references)</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Possibility for contamination at sample collection or in laboratory, leading to false positive results</u></li> <li>- <u>Needs specialised equipment</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Presi &amp; Heim (2010). <i>Vet Microbiol.</i> <b>142</b>, 137–142</u></li> <li>- <u>Schweizer <i>et al.</i> (2021). <i>Front. Vet. Sci.</i> <b>8</b>, 702730</u></li> <li>- <u>Wernike <i>et al.</i> (2017). <i>Pathogens</i> <b>6</b> (4)</u></li> <li>- <u>Graham <i>et al.</i> (2021). <i>Front. Vet. Sci.</i> <b>8</b>, 674557</u></li> </ul> |

| <u>Test with score and species</u>    | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>  | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation report</u>                                | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>References</u>             |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|---|---|--|---|-------------------------------|
| <u>Antibody detection by ELISA ++</u> | <u>Bulk milk, Blood</u>                | <u>DSe and DSp differs based on the ELISA used (commercial/in-house) and the antibodies being tested (e.g. antibodies against structural (E2) and non-structural (NS2-3) proteins.</u> |   |   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Simple to perform and cost-effective</u></li> <li>- <u>Milk collection is non-invasive method</u></li> <li>- <u>Can be used on a population basis to monitor freedom from infection by selection of appropriate aged animals e.g. borne after eradication achieved; for dairy herds by testing tank milk to monitor lactating animals</u></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Some cross-reactivity with antibodies from vaccines and other pestiviruses</u></li> <li>- <u>PI animal will be seronegative</u></li> <li>- <u>Bulk milk from herd does not include males, non-lactating or young stock</u></li> </ul> | <u>Laurevns et al. (2010)</u> |
| <u>Virus isolation ++</u>             | <u>Serum, whole blood</u>              | <u>Considered reference test : DSe &lt;90% compared with real-time RT-PCR; DSp ~100%</u>   | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>High degree of specificity</u></li> <li>- <u>Identifies presence of infectious virus</u></li> <li>- <u>used to confirm the status of difficult cases and to provide isolates for intensive analysis e.g. NA sequencing</u></li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Requires specialised cell culture capabilities and access to BVDV free materials</u></li> <li>- <u>Reduced sensitivity in presence of MDA (diagnostic gap)</u></li> </ul>   | <u>N/A</u>                    |
| <u>Virus neutralisation test ++</u>   | <u>Serum</u>                           | <u>DSe &amp; DSp both extremely high, both &gt;99%. Historical reference serological test.</u>   | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Very high specificity</u></li> <li>- <u>Used for confirming the virus free status of a population after eradication:</u></li> <li>- <u>Used as a confirmatory test when surveillance utilises an ELISA</u></li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>ASe can vary depending on virus strain used</u></li> <li>- <u>Requires cell culture, good quality samples</u></li> <li>- <u>Takes 5 days to obtain results</u></li> </ul>   | <u>N/A</u>                    |

9 N/A: not available

**Appendix 4: Bovine viral diarrhoea**  
**Intended purpose of test: confirmation of clinical cases**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>            | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u>  | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation report</u>                                | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>References</u>   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| <u>Virus isolation ++</u>                     | <u>Serum, whole blood, tissue extracts</u>  | <u>Considered reference test: DSe &lt;90% compared with real-time RT-PCR; DSp ~100%</u>     | <u>Not available</u>                            | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- High degree of specificity</li> <li>- Identifies presence of infectious virus</li> <li>- Preferred method to identify presence of cytopathogenic strains and hence confirmation of mucosal disease</li> <li>- Provides virus isolates for detailed characterisation</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Requires specialised cell culture capabilities and access to BVDV free materials</li> <li>- Reduced sensitivity in presence of maternally derived antibodies (diagnostic gap)</li> <li>- Requires high quality samples to avoid bacterial contamination</li> </ul> | <u>- Meyling (1984)</u>   |
| <u>Antigen detection by ELISA +++</u>         | <u>Serum, whole blood, skin biopsy</u>  | <u>DSe 67%–100% and DSp 98.8% to 100% reported</u>  |   |   | <u>Relatively simple to perform, rapid, can be cost-effective and suitable for high-throughput applications. There is no need for cell culture facility.</u>  | <u>Maternal antibodies in colostrum may interfere with testing for antigen in serum using ELISA in calves. Ear notch samples are less affected. PI calves in utero defies detection.</u>  |   |
| <u>NA detection by (real-time) RT-PCR +++</u> | <u>Blood; nasal, oral or conjunctival swab (in cases of respiratory disease) or faecal swab (enteric disease)</u> | <u>Depending on the assay analytical sensitivity of less than 10 genome copies/reaction</u> |   | <u>See reference</u>                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Very sensitive</li> <li>- Rapid</li> <li>- High-throughput</li> <li>- Well established internationally</li> <li>- Depending on the assay detects all BVDV species</li> <li>- Allows assay-dependent for differentiation of BVDV types 1 and 2</li> <li>- Detects persistent and transient infection</li> <li>- Proficiency panel of different Pestivirus strains available</li> <li>- Detection of viral RNA in skin biopsy samples unaffected from maternally derived antibodies</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Possibility for contamination at sample collection or in laboratory, leading to false positive results</li> <li>- Needs specialised equipment</li> </ul>   | <u>- Hoffmann et al. (2006). J. Virol. Methods. 136. 200–209.</u> |
| <u>Antigen detection by IHC ++</u>            | <u>Fixed tissues or frozen sections for Ag detection or NA if using ISH</u>                                       | <u>Lower DSe than other methods; high DSp</u>   | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>N/A</u>  | <u>Allows visualisation of viral components in lesions and assessment of tissue distribution</u>  | <u>Technically demanding, limited reagents for detection of Ag in formalin-fixed tissues</u>  |   |
| <u>Antibody detection by ELISA +</u>          | <u>Paired serum samples, fetal fluids (blood,</u>   | <u>DSe and DSp may differ depending on the ELISA used (commercial/in-</u>                   |   |   | <u>- Simple to perform and cost-effective.</u>  | <u>- Some cross-reactivity with antibodies induced by other pestiviruses.</u>   |   |

| <u>Test with score and species</u> | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>References</u> |
|------------------------------------|--|---|---|--------------------------|--|--|-------------------|
|                                    | <u>pericardial, thoracic</u>           | <u>house) and the antibodies being tested (e.g. antibodies against structural (E2) and non-structural (NS2-3) proteins.</u> |   |                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- <u>Can be used to differentiate between acute and persistent infections by demonstration of seroconversion in acute infections</u></li> <li>- <u>Detection of antibodies in aborted fetuses, stillborn animals can confirm <i>in utero</i> infection in second half of gestation</u></li> </ul> | <u>- PI animals are usually seronegative (in both of the paired samples)</u> |                   |

12 N/A: not available

**Appendix 5: Bovine viral diarrhoea**  
**Intended purpose of test: prevalence of infection – surveillance**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>            | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u>   | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u>         | <u>Validation report</u>                                | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>  | <u>References</u>  |
|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|--|
| <u>Antigen detection by ELISA +++</u>         | <u>Serum, whole blood</u>              | <u>DSe 67–100% and DSp 98.8–100% reported</u>   |   |   | <u>Relatively simple to perform, rapid, very cost-effective and suitable for high-throughput applications. There is no need for cell culture facility.</u>   | <u>Maternal antibodies in colostrum may interfere with testing for antigen in serum using ELISA in calves. Ear notch samples are less affected. PI calves <i>in utero</i> defies detection.</u>   | <u>Sarrazin <i>et al.</i> (2013). <i>Prev. Vet. Med.</i>, <b>108</b>, 28–37</u>  |
| <u>NA detection by (real-time) RT-PCR +++</u> | <u>Ear notch (skin), blood, milk</u>   |   | <u>Whole Swiss, German and Irish cattle populations</u> | <u>See references</u>                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Very sensitive</li> <li>- Rapid</li> <li>- High-throughput</li> <li>- Well established internationally</li> <li>- Depending on the assay, detects all BVDV species</li> <li>- Allows assay-dependent for differentiation of BVDV types 1 and 2</li> <li>- Detects persistent and transient infection</li> <li>- Proficiency panel of different Pestivirus strains available</li> <li>- Detection of viral RNA in skin biopsy samples unaffected from maternally-derived antibodies</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Possibility for contamination at sample collection or in laboratory, leading to false positive results</li> <li>- Needs specialised equipment</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Presi &amp; Heim (2010). <i>Vet. Microbiol.</i>, <b>142</b>, 137–142</li> <li>- Schweizer <i>et al.</i> (2021). <i>Front. Vet. Sci.</i>, <b>8</b>, 702730</li> <li>- Wemike <i>et al.</i> (2017). <i>Pathogens</i>, <b>6</b> (4)</li> <li>- Graham <i>et al.</i> (2021). <i>Front. Vet. Sci.</i>, <b>8</b>, 674557</li> </ul> |
| <u>Antibody detection by ELISA +++</u>        | <u>Bulk milk, blood</u>                | <u>DSe and DSp may differ depending on the ELISA used (commercial/in-house) and the antibodies being tested (e.g. antibodies against structural (E2) and non-structural (NS2-3) proteins.</u> |   |   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Simple to perform and cost-effective</li> <li>- Milk collection is non-invasive method</li> </ul>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Some cross-reactivity with antibodies induced by vaccines and other pestiviruses.</li> <li>- PI animal will be seronegative</li> <li>- Bulk milk from herd excludes males, non-lactating or young stock.</li> </ul>                | <u>Barrett <i>et al.</i> (2022) <i>BMC Vet Res.</i>, <b>18</b>, 210.</u>   |
| <u>Virus neutralisation test +</u>            | <u>Serum</u>                           | <u>DSe &amp; DSp both extremely high, both &gt;99%. Historical reference serological test.</u>  | <u>N/A</u>  | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Very high specificity</li> <li>- Allows differentiation of antibodies to BVDV species</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- ASe can vary depending on virus strain used</li> <li>- Requires cell culture, good quality samples</li> <li>- Takes 5 days to obtain results. Labour intensive - not amenable to testing very large numbers of samples.</li> </ul> | <u>N/A</u>   |



| <u>Test with score and species</u> | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u> | <u>Accuracy</u> | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation report</u> | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u> | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>                         | <u>References</u> |
|------------------------------------|--|-----------------|---|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|-------------------|
|                                    |  |                 |   |                          |                                   | - No differentiation between infected and vaccinated animals |                   |

15 N/A: not available

16  
17

**Appendix 6: Bovine viral diarrhoea**

**Intended purpose of test: immune status in individual animals or populations (post-vaccination)**

| <u>Test with score and species</u>     | <u>Sample type and target analytes</u>   | <u>Accuracy</u>  | <u>Test population used to measure accuracy</u> | <u>Validation report</u>                                | <u>Advantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>Disadvantages: expert opinion</u>   | <u>References</u>  |
|--|--|--|---|---|---|--|--|
| <u>Antibody detection by ELISA +++</u> | <u>Individual milk, bulk milk, blood (antibodies present against structural and non-structural proteins)</u> | <u>DSe and DSp differs based on the ELISA used (commercial/in-house) and the antibodies being tested (e.g. antibodies against structural (E2) and non-structural (NS2-3) proteins)</u> |   |   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Simple to perform and cost-effective</li> <li>- Milk collection is non-invasive method</li> </ul>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Some cross-reactivity with antibodies induced by vaccines and other pestiviruses.</li> <li>- While a DIVA capability is preferred, this is very difficult to achieve using the combinations of existing vaccines and serological assays. Live attenuated vaccines preclude a DIVA capability unless genetically modified to include a 'marker' gene or deletion that can be detected by a serological assay.</li> <li>- PI animal will be seronegative</li> <li>- Bulk milk from herd excludes males, non-lactating or young stock</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>Raue et al. (2011). Vet. J. 187, 330–334.</u></li> <li><u>Gonzalez et al. (2014). Vet. J. 199, 424–428.</u></li> <li><u>Savers et al. (2015). Vet. J. 205, 56–61.</u></li> </ul> |
| <u>Virus neutralisation test +++</u>   | <u>Serum</u>   | <u>DSe &amp; DSp both extremely high, both &gt;99%. Historical reference serological test.</u>   | <u>N/A</u>                                      | <u>Historical information with no formal validation</u> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Very high specificity</li> <li>- Good correlation with immunity</li> <li>- Can provide a measure of cross protection between BVDV species</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- ASe can vary depending on virus strain used</li> <li>- Requires cell culture, good quality samples</li> <li>- Labour intensive, takes 5 days to obtain results</li> <li>- No differentiation between infected and vaccinated animals</li> </ul>   | <u>N/A</u>   |

18 N/A: not available

## Annexe 12. Chapter 3.4.12 ‘Lumpy skin disease’

### CHAPTER 3.4.12.

## LUMPY SKIN DISEASE

---

### SUMMARY

**Description of the disease:** Lumpy skin disease (LSD) is a poxvirus disease of cattle characterised by fever, nodules on the skin, mucous membranes and internal organs, emaciation, enlarged lymph nodes, oedema of the skin, and sometimes death. The disease is of economic importance as it can cause a temporary reduction in milk production, temporary or permanent sterility in bulls, damage to hides and, occasionally, death. Various strains of capripoxvirus are responsible for the disease. These are antigenically indistinguishable from strains causing sheep pox and goat pox yet distinct at the genetic level. LSD has a partially different geographical distribution from sheep and goat pox, suggesting that cattle strains of capripoxvirus do not infect and transmit between sheep and goats. Transmission of LSD virus (LSDV) is thought to be predominantly by arthropods, natural contact transmission in the absence of vectors being inefficient. Lumpy skin disease is endemic in ~~most many~~ African and Middle Eastern countries. Between 2012 and 2022, LSD spread into south-east Europe, the Balkans, Russia and Asia as part of the Eurasian LSD epidemic.

**Pathology:** the nodules are firm and may extend to the underlying subcutis and muscle. Acute histological key lesions consist of epidermal vacuolar changes with intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies and dermal vasculitis. Chronic key histological lesions consist of fibrosis and necrotic sequestrae.

**Detection of the agent:** Laboratory confirmation of LSD is most rapid using a real-time or conventional polymerase chain reaction (PCR) method specific for capripoxviruses in combination with a clinical history of a generalised nodular skin disease and enlarged superficial lymph nodes in cattle. Ultrastructurally, capripoxvirus virions are distinct from those of parapoxvirus, which causes bovine papular stomatitis and pseudocowpox, but cannot be distinguished morphologically from orthopoxvirus virions, including cowpox and vaccinia viruses, both of which can cause disease in cattle, although neither causes generalised infection and both are uncommon in cattle. LSDV will grow in tissue culture of bovine, ovine or caprine origin. In cell culture, LSDV causes a characteristic cytopathic effect and intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies that is distinct from infection with Bovine herpesvirus 2, which causes pseudo-lumpy skin disease and produces syncytia and intranuclear inclusion bodies in cell culture. Capripoxvirus antigens can be demonstrated in tissue culture using immunoperoxidase or immunofluorescent staining and the virus can be neutralised using specific antisera.

A variety of conventional and real-time PCR tests as well as isothermal amplification tests using capripoxvirus-specific primers have been published for use on a variety of samples.

**Serological tests:** The virus neutralisation test (VNT) and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) are widely used and have been validated. The agar gel immunodiffusion test and indirect immunofluorescent antibody test are less specific than the VNT due to cross-reactions with antibody to other poxviruses. Western blotting using the reaction between the P32 antigen of LSDV with test sera is both sensitive and specific, but is difficult and expensive to carry out.

41 **Requirements for vaccines:** All strains of capripoxvirus examined so far, whether derived from  
42 cattle, sheep or goats, are antigenically similar. Attenuated cattle strains, and strains derived from  
43 sheep and goats have been used as live vaccines against LSDV.

## 44 A. INTRODUCTION

45 Lumpy skin disease (LSD) was first seen in Zambia in 1929, spreading into Botswana by 1943 (Haig, 1957),  
46 and then into South Africa the same year, where it affected over eight million cattle causing major economic  
47 loss. In 1957 it entered Kenya, ~~at the same time as~~ associated with an outbreak of sheep pox (Weiss, 1968).  
48 In 1970 LSD spread north into the Sudan, by 1974 it had spread west as far as Nigeria, and in 1977 was  
49 reported from Mauritania, Mali, Ghana and Liberia. Another epizootic of LSD between 1981 and 1986 affected  
50 Tanzania, Kenya, Zimbabwe, Somalia and the Cameroon, with reported mortality rates in affected cattle of  
51 20%. The occurrence of LSD north of the Sahara desert and outside the African continent was confirmed for  
52 the first time in Egypt and Israel between 1988 and 1989, and was reported again in 2006 (Brenner *et al.*,  
53 2006). In the past decade, LSD occurrences have been reported in the Middle Eastern, European and Asian  
54 regions (for up-to-date information, consult WOAAH WAHIS interface<sup>1</sup>). Lumpy skin disease outbreaks tend to  
55 be sporadic, depending upon animal movements, immune status, and wind and rainfall patterns affecting  
56 vector populations. The principal method of transmission is thought to be mechanical by various arthropod  
57 vectors (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2015).

58 Lumpy skin disease virus (LSDV) belongs to the family *Poxviridae*, subfamily **Chordopoxvirinae**  
59 **Chordopoxviridae**, and genus *Capripoxvirus*. In common with other poxviruses LSDV replicates in the  
60 cytoplasm of an infected cell, forming distinct perinuclear viral factories. The LSDV virion is large and brick-  
61 shaped measuring 293–299nm (length) and 262–273nm (width). The LSDV genome structure is also similar  
62 to other poxviruses, consisting of double-stranded linear DNA that is 25% GC-rich, approximately 150,000 bp  
63 in length, and encodes around 156 open reading frames (ORFs). An inverted terminal repeat sequence of  
64 2200–2300 bp is found at each end of the linear genome. The linear ends of the genome are joined with a  
65 hairpin loop. The central region of the LSDV genome contains ORFs predicted to encode proteins required for  
66 virus replication and morphogenesis and exhibit a high degree of similarity with genomes of other mammalian  
67 poxviruses. The ORFs in the outer regions of the LSDV genome have lower similarity and likely encode  
68 proteins involved in viral virulence and host range determinants.

69 Phylogenetic analysis shows the majority of LSDV strains group into two monophyletic clusters (cluster 1.1  
70 and 1.2) (Biswas *et al.*, 2020; Van Schalkwyk *et al.*, 2021). Cluster 1.1 consists of LSDV Neethling vaccine  
71 strains that are based on the LSDV/Neethling/LW-1959 vaccine strain (Kara *et al.*, 2003; Van Rooyen *et al.*,  
72 1959; van Schalkwyk *et al.*, 2020) and historic wild-type strains from South Africa. Cluster 1.2 consists of wild-  
73 type strains from southern Africa, Kenya, the northern hemisphere, and the Kenyan KSGP O-240 commercial  
74 vaccine. In addition to these two clusters, there have recently been recombinant LSDV strains isolated from  
75 clinical cases of LSD in the field in Russia and central Asia (Flannery *et al.*, 2021; Sprygin *et al.*, 2018; 2020;  
76 Wang *et al.*, 2021). These recombinant viruses show unique patterns of accessory gene alleles, consisting of  
77 sections of both wild-type and “vaccine” LSDV strains.

78 The severity of the clinical signs of LSD is highly variable and depends on a number of factors, including the  
79 strain of capripoxvirus, the age of the host, immunological status and breed. *Bos taurus* is generally more  
80 susceptible to clinical disease than *Bos indicus*; the Asian buffalo (*Bubalus spp.*) has also been reported to be  
81 susceptible. Within *Bos taurus*, the fine-skinned Channel Island breeds develop more severe disease, with  
82 lactating cows appearing to be the most at risk. However, even among groups of cattle of the same breed kept  
83 together under the same conditions, there is a large variation in the clinical signs presented, ranging from  
84 subclinical infection to death (Carn & Kitching, 1995). There may be failure of the virus to infect the whole group,  
85 probably depending on the virulence of the virus isolate, immunological status of the host, host genotype, and  
86 vector prevalence. Seroprevalence studies, experimental infections and case reports have provided indications  
87 that several wildlife species (e.g. springbok, impala, giraffe, camel, banteng) are susceptible to LSDV infection  
88 (Dao *et al.*, 2022; Hedger & Hamblin, 1983; Kumar *et al.*, 2023; Porco *et al.*, 2023). The scarcity of documented  
89 outbreaks in wildlife and the fact that available studies remain limited in number and mostly involve only a few  
90 animals, make it difficult to determine the role of wildlife in LSDV epidemiology. This topic deserves further study.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-do/animal-health-and-welfare/disease-data-collection/>

91 especially given the current spread of LSDV in new geographical areas where large numbers of naïve, potentially  
 92 susceptible wild bovines and other ruminants are present.

93 The incubation period under field conditions has not been reported, but following experimental inoculation is  
 94 6–9 days until the onset of fever. In the acutely infected animal, there is an initial pyrexia, which may exceed  
 95 41°C and persist for 1 week. All the superficial lymph nodes become enlarged. In lactating cattle there is a  
 96 marked reduction in milk yield. Lesions develop over the body, particularly on the head, neck, udder, scrotum,  
 97 vulva and perineum between 7 and 19 days after virus inoculation (Coetzer, 2004). The characteristic  
 98 integumentary lesions are multiple, well circumscribed to coalescing, 0.5–5 cm in diameter, firm, flat-topped  
 99 papules and nodules. The nodules involve the dermis and epidermis, and may extend to the underlying  
 100 subcutis and occasionally to the adjacent striated muscle. These nodules have a creamy grey to white colour  
 101 on cut section, which may initially exude serum, but over the ensuing 2 weeks a cone-shaped central core or  
 102 sequestrum of necrotic material/necrotic plug (“sit-fast”) may appear within the nodule. The acute histological  
 103 lesions consist of epidermal vacuolar changes with intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies and dermal vasculitis.  
 104 The inclusion bodies are numerous, intracytoplasmic, eosinophilic, homogenous to occasionally granular and  
 105 they may occur in endothelial cells, fibroblasts, macrophages, pericytes, and keratinocytes. The dermal lesions  
 106 include vasculitis with fibrinoid necrosis, oedema, thrombosis, lymphangitis, dermal-epidermal separation, and  
 107 mixed inflammatory infiltrate. The chronic lesions are characterised by an infarcted tissue with a sequestered  
 108 necrotic core, often rimmed by granulation tissue gradually replaced by mature fibrosis. At the appearance of  
 109 the nodules, the discharge from the eyes and nose becomes mucopurulent, and keratitis may develop.  
 110 Nodules may also develop in the mucous membranes of the mouth and alimentary tract, particularly the  
 111 abomasum and in the trachea and the lungs, resulting in primary and secondary pneumonia. The nodules on  
 112 the mucous membranes of the eyes, nose, mouth, rectum, udder and genitalia quickly ulcerate, and by then  
 113 all secretions, ocular and nasal discharge and saliva contain LSD virus (LSDV). The limbs may be oedematous  
 114 and the animal is reluctant to move. Pregnant cattle may abort, and there is a report of intrauterine transmission  
 115 (Rouby & Aboulsoudb, 2016). Bulls may become permanently or temporarily infertile and the virus can be  
 116 excreted in the semen for prolonged periods (Irons *et al.*, 2005). Recovery from severe infection is slow; the  
 117 animal is emaciated, may have pneumonia and mastitis, and the necrotic plugs of skin, which may have been  
 118 subject to fly strike, are shed leaving deep holes in the hide (Prozesky & Barnard, 1982).

119 The main differential diagnosis is pseudo-LSD caused by bovine herpesvirus 2 (BoHV-2). This is usually a  
 120 milder clinical condition, characterised by superficial nodules, resembling only the early stage of LSD. Intra-  
 121 nuclear inclusion bodies and viral syncytia are histopathological characteristics of BoHV-2 infection not seen  
 122 in LSD. Other differential diagnoses (for integumentary lesions) include: dermatophilosis, dermatophytosis,  
 123 bovine farcy, photosensitisation, actinomycosis, actinobacillosis, urticaria, insect bites, besnoitiosis,  
 124 nocardiosis, demodicosis, onchocerciasis, pseudo-cowpox, and cowpox. Differential diagnoses for mucosal  
 125 lesions include: foot and mouth disease, bluetongue, mucosal disease, malignant catarrhal fever, infectious  
 126 bovine rhinotracheitis, and bovine papular stomatitis.

127 LSDV is not transmissible to humans. However, all laboratory manipulations must be performed at an  
 128 appropriate containment level determined using biorisk analysis (see Chapter 1.1.4 *Biosafety and biosecurity:*  
 129 *Standard for managing biological risk in the veterinary laboratory and animal facilities*).

## 130 B. DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES

131 **Table 1.** Test methods available for the diagnosis of LSD and their purpose

| Method                        | Purpose                           |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|---|
|                               | Population freedom from infection | Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement | Contribute to eradication policies | Confirmation of clinical cases | Prevalence of infection – surveillance | Immune status in individual animals or populations post-vaccination |
| <b>Detection of the agent</b> |                                   |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
| <b>Virus isolation</b>        | +                                 | ++   | +                                  | +++                            | +                                      | –   |

| Method                              | Purpose                           |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|---|
|                                     | Population freedom from infection | Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement | Contribute to eradication policies | Confirmation of clinical cases | Prevalence of infection – surveillance | Immune status in individual animals or populations post-vaccination |
| PCR                                 | ++                                | +++  | ++                                 | +++                            | +                                      | –   |
| TEM                                 | –                                 | –  | –                                  | +                              | –                                      | –   |
| <b>Detection of immune response</b> |                                   |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
| VNT                                 | ++                                | ++   | ++                                 | ++                             | ++                                     | ++  |
| IFAT                                | +                                 | +  | +                                  | +                              | +                                      | +   |
| ELISA                               | ++                                | ++   | ++                                 | ++                             | ++                                     | ++  |

Key: +++ = recommended for this purpose; ++ recommended but has limitations;  
+ = suitable in very limited circumstances; – = not appropriate for this purpose.

PCR = polymerase chain reaction; TEM = Transmission electron microscopy; VNT = virus neutralisation test;  
IFAT = indirect fluorescent antibody test; ELISA = enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay.

132  
133  
134  
135

## 136 1. Detection of the agent

### 137 1.1. Specimen collection, submission and preparation

138 Material for virus isolation and antigen detection should be collected as biopsies or from skin nodules  
139 at post-mortem examination. Samples for virus isolation should preferably be collected within the first  
140 week of the occurrence of clinical signs, before the development of neutralising antibodies (Davies,  
141 1991; Davies *et al.*, 1971), however virus can be isolated from skin nodules for at least 3–4 weeks  
142 thereafter. Samples for genome detection using conventional or real-time polymerase chain reaction  
143 (PCR) may be collected when neutralising antibody is present. Following the first appearance of the  
144 skin lesions, the virus can be isolated for up to 35 days and viral nucleic acid can be demonstrated  
145 via PCR for up to 3 months (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2005; Weiss, 1968). Buffy coat from blood collected  
146 into heparin or EDTA (ethylene diamine tetra-acetic acid) during the viraemic stage of LSD (before  
147 generalisation of lesions or within 4 days of generalisation), can also be used for virus isolation.  
148 Samples for histology should include the lesion and tissue from the surrounding (non-lesion) area,  
149 be a maximum size of 2 cm<sup>3</sup>, and be placed immediately following collection into ten times the sample  
150 volume of 10% neutral buffered formal saline.

151 Tissues in formalin have no special transportation requirements in regard to biorisks. Blood samples  
152 with anticoagulant for virus isolation from the buffy coat should be placed immediately on ice after  
153 gentle mixing and processed as soon as possible. In practice, the samples may be kept at 4°C for  
154 up to 2 days prior to processing, but should not be frozen or kept at ambient temperatures. Tissues  
155 for virus isolation and antigen detection should be kept at 4°C, on ice or at –20°C. If it is necessary  
156 to transport samples over long distances without refrigeration, the medium should contain 10%  
157 glycerol; the samples should be of sufficient size (e.g. 1 g in 10 ml) that the transport medium does  
158 not penetrate the central part of the biopsy, which should be used for virus isolation.

159 ~~Samples for histology should include the lesion and tissue from the surrounding (non-lesion) area,~~  
160 ~~be a maximum size of 2 cm<sup>3</sup>, and be placed immediately following collection into ten times the sample~~  
161 ~~volume of 10% neutral buffered formaldehyde. Tissues in formalin have no special transportation~~  
162 ~~requirements in regard to biorisks.~~ Material for histology should be prepared using standard  
163 techniques and stained with haematoxylin and eosin (H&E) (Burdin, 1959). Lesion material for virus  
164 isolation and antigen detection is minced using a sterile scalpel blade and forceps and then  
165 macerated in a sterile steel ball-bearing mixer mill, or ground with a pestle in a sterile mortar with  
166 sterile sand and an equal volume of sterile phosphate buffered saline (PBS) or serum-free modified  
167 Eagle's medium containing sodium penicillin (1000 international units [IU]/ml), streptomycin sulphate



168 (1 mg/ml), mycostatin (100 IU/ml) or fungizone (amphotericin, 2.5 µg/ml) and neomycin (200 IU/ml).  
169 The suspension is freeze–thawed three times and then partially clarified using a bench centrifuge at  
170 600 **g** for 10 minutes. In cases where bacterial contamination of the sample is expected (such as  
171 when virus is isolated from skin samples), the supernatant can be filtered through a 0.45 µm pore  
172 size filter after the centrifugation step. Buffy coats may be prepared from unclotted blood using  
173 centrifugation at 600 **g** for 15 minutes, and the buffy coat carefully removed into 5 ml of cold double-  
174 distilled water using a sterile Pasteur pipette. After 30 seconds, 5 ml of cold double-strength growth  
175 medium is added and mixed. The mixture is centrifuged at 600 **g** for 15 minutes, the supernatant is  
176 discarded and the cell pellet is suspended in 5 ml growth medium, such as Glasgow’s modified  
177 Eagle’s medium (GMEM). After centrifugation at 600 **g** for a further 15 minutes, the resulting pellet  
178 is suspended in 5 ml of fresh GMEM. Alternatively, the buffy coat may be separated from a  
179 heparinised sample by using a Ficoll gradient.

## 180 **1.2. Virus isolation on cell culture**

181 LSDV will grow in tissue culture of bovine, ovine or caprine origin. MDBK (Madin–Darby bovine  
182 kidney) cells are often used, as they support good growth of the virus and are well characterised  
183 (Fay *et al.*, 2020). Primary cells, such as lamb testis (LT) cells also support viral growth, but care  
184 needs to be taken to ensure they are not contaminated with viruses such as bovine viral diarrhoea  
185 virus. One ml of clarified supernatant or buffy coat is inoculated onto a confluent monolayer in a  
186 25 cm<sup>2</sup> culture flask at 37°C and allowed to adsorb for 1 hour. The culture is then washed with warm  
187 PBS and covered with 10 ml of a suitable medium, such as GMEM, containing antibiotics and 2%  
188 fetal calf serum. If available, tissue culture tubes containing appropriate cells and a flying cover-slip,  
189 or tissue culture microscope slides, are also infected.

190 The flasks/tissue culture tubes are examined daily for 7–14 days for evidence of cytopathic effects  
191 (CPE). Infected cells develop a characteristic CPE consisting of retraction of the cell membrane from  
192 surrounding cells, and eventually rounding of cells and margination of the nuclear chromatin. At first  
193 only small areas of CPE can be seen, sometimes as soon as 2 days after infection; over the following  
194 4–6 days these expand to involve the whole cell monolayer-sheet. If no CPE is apparent by day 14,  
195 the culture should be freeze–thawed three times, and clarified supernatant inoculated on to a fresh  
196 cell monolayer. At the first sign of CPE in the flasks, or earlier if a number of infected cover-slips are  
197 being used, a cover-slip should be removed, fixed in acetone and stained using H&E. Eosinophilic  
198 intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies, which are variable in size but up to half the size of the nucleus and  
199 surrounded by a clear halo, are diagnostic for poxvirus infection. PCR may be used as an alternative  
200 to H&E for confirmation of the diagnosis. The CPE can be prevented or delayed by adding specific  
201 anti-LSDV serum to the medium. In contrast, the herpesvirus that causes pseudo-LSD produces a  
202 Cowdry type A intranuclear inclusion body. It also forms syncytia.

203 An ovine testis cell line (OA3.Ts) has been evaluated for the propagation of capripoxvirus isolates  
204 (Babiuk *et al.*, 2007), however this cell line has been found to be contaminated with pestivirus and  
205 should be used with caution.

## 206 **1.3. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)**

207 The conventional gel-based PCR method described below is a simple, fast and sensitive method for  
208 the detection of capripoxvirus genome in EDTA blood, semen or tissue culture samples (Tuppurainen  
209 *et al.*, 2005).

### 210 **1.3.1. Test procedure**

211 The extraction method described below can be replaced using commercially available DNA  
212 extraction kits.

- 213 i) Freeze and thaw 200 µl of blood in EDTA, semen or tissue culture supernatant and  
214 suspend in 100 µl of lysis buffer containing 5 M guanidine thiocyanate, 50 mM potassium  
215 chloride, 10 mM Tris/HCl (pH 8); and 0.5 ml Tween 20.

- 216 ii) Cut skin and other tissue samples into fine pieces using a sterile scalpel blade and  
 217 forceps. Grind with a pestle in a mortar. Suspend the tissue samples in 800 µl of the  
 218 above mentioned lysis buffer.
- 219 iii) Add 2 µl of proteinase K (20 mg/ml) to blood samples and 10 µl of proteinase K  
 220 (20 mg/ml) to tissue samples. Incubate at 56°C for 2 hours or overnight, followed by  
 221 heating at 100°C for 10 minutes. Add phenol:chloroform:isoamylalcohol (25:24:1 [v/v]) to  
 222 the samples in a 1:1 ratio. Vortex and incubate at room temperature for 10 minutes.  
 223 Centrifuge the samples at 16,060 **g** for 15 minutes at 4°C. Carefully collect the upper,  
 224 aqueous phase (up to 200 µl) and transfer into a clean 2.0 ml tube. Add two volumes of  
 225 ice cold ethanol (100%) and 1/10 volume of 3 M sodium acetate (pH 5.3). Place the  
 226 samples at -20°C for 1 hour. Centrifuge again at 16,060 **g** for 15 minutes at 4°C and  
 227 discard the supernatant. Wash the pellets with ice cold 70% ethanol (100 µl) and  
 228 centrifuge at 16,060 **g** for 1 minute at 4°C. Discard the supernatant and dry the pellets  
 229 thoroughly. Suspend the pellets in 30 µl of nuclease-free water and store immediately at  
 230 -20°C (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2005). Alternatively a column-based extraction kit may be  
 231 used.
- 232 iv) The primers for this PCR assay were developed from the gene encoding the viral  
 233 attachment protein. The size of the expected amplicon is 192 bp (Ireland & Binopal,  
 234 1998). The primers have the following gene sequences:
- 235 Forward primer 5'-TCC-GAG-CTC-TTT-CCT-GAT-TTT-TCT-TAC-TAT-3'
- 236 Reverse primer 5'-TAT-GGT-ACC-TAA-ATT-ATA-TAC-GTA-AAT-AAC-3'.
- 237 v) DNA amplification is carried out in a final volume of 50 µl containing: 5 µl of 10 × PCR  
 238 buffer, 1.5 µl of MgCl<sub>2</sub> (50 mM), 1 µl of dNTP (10 mM), 1 µl of forward primer, 1 µl of  
 239 reverse primer, 1 µl of DNA template (~10 ng), 0.5 µl of *Taq* DNA polymerase and 39 µl  
 240 of nuclease-free water. The volume of DNA template required may vary and the volume  
 241 of nuclease-free water must be adjusted to the final volume of 50 µl.
- 242 vi) Run the samples in a thermal cycler as follows: 2 minutes at 95°C; then 45 seconds at  
 243 95°C, 50 seconds at 50°C and 1 minute at 72°C (34 cycles); 2 minutes at 72°C and hold  
 244 at 4°C until analysis.
- 245 vii) Mix 10 µl of each sample with loading dye and load onto a 1.5% agarose gel in TAE buffer  
 246 (Tris/acetate buffer containing EDTA). Load a parallel lane with a 100 bp DNA-marker  
 247 ladder. Electrophoretically separate the products using approximately 8–10 V/cm for 40–  
 248 60 minutes and visualise with a suitable DNA stain and transilluminator.

249 Quantitative real-time PCR methods have been described that are reported to be faster and have  
 250 higher sensitivity than conventional PCRs (Balinsky *et al.*, 2008; Bowden *et al.*, 2008). A real-time  
 251 PCR method that differentiates between LSDV, sheep pox virus and goat pox virus has been  
 252 published (Lamien *et al.*, 2011).

253 Quantitative real-time PCR assays have been designed to differentiate between Neethling-based  
 254 LSDV strains, which are often used for vaccination, and wild-type LSDV strains from cluster 1.2  
 255 (Agianniotaki *et al.*, 2017; Pestova *et al.*, 2018; Vidanovic *et al.*, 2016). These “DIVA” assays (DIVA:  
 256 differentiation of infected from vaccinated animals) enable, for example, differentiation of “Neethling  
 257 response” caused by vaccination with a LSDV Neethling vaccine strain from disease caused by  
 258 infection with a cluster 1.2 wild-type virus. However these DIVA PCR assays cannot distinguish  
 259 between a LSDV Neethling vaccine strain and the novel recombinant LSDV strains recently isolated  
 260 from disease outbreaks in Asia (Byadovskaya *et al.*, 2024; Flannery *et al.*, 2021). These DIVA assays  
 261 are also not capable of discriminating between LSDV Neethling vaccine strains and recently  
 262 characterised (historic) wild-type viruses from South Africa belonging within cluster 1.1 (Van  
 263 Schalkwyk *et al.*, 2020; 2021). Consequently, in regions where recombinant strains (currently Asia  
 264 and possibly elsewhere) or wild-type cluster 1.1 strains are circulating (currently South Africa  
 265 and possibly elsewhere), these DIVA assays are not suitable for distinguishing vaccine and wild-type  
 266 virus. Thus, in order to overcome these constraints, whole genome sequencing is recommended.

267

## 1.4. Transmission electron microscopy

268  
269  
270

The characteristic poxvirus virion can be visualised using a negative staining preparation technique followed by examination with an electron microscope. There are many different negative staining protocols, an example of which is given below.

271

### 1.4.1. Test procedure

272  
273  
274  
275  
276  
277  
278  
279  
280  
281

Before centrifugation, material from the original biopsy suspension is prepared for examination under the transmission electron microscope by floating a 400-mesh hexagonal electron microscope grid, with pioloform-carbon substrate activated by glow discharge in pentylamine vapour, onto a drop of the suspension placed on parafilm or a wax plate. After 1 minute, the grid is transferred to a drop of Tris/EDTA buffer, pH 7.8, for 20 seconds and then to a drop of 1% phosphotungstic acid, pH 7.2, for 10 seconds. The grid is drained using filter paper, air-dried and placed in the electron microscope. The capripox virion is brick shaped, covered in short tubular elements and measures approximately 290 × 270 nm. A host-cell-derived membrane may surround some of the virions, and as many as possible should be examined to confirm their appearance (Kitching & Smale, 1986).

282  
283  
284  
285  
286  
287  
288  
289  
290  
291  
292  
293

The ~~capripox~~ virions of capripoxvirus are indistinguishable from those of orthopoxvirus, but, apart from vaccinia virus and cowpox virus, which are both uncommon in cattle and do not cause generalised infection, no other orthopoxvirus is known to cause lesions in cattle. However, vaccinia virus may cause generalised infection in young immunocompromised calves. In contrast, orthopoxviruses are a common cause of skin disease in domestic buffalo (*Bubalus bubalis*) causing buffalo pox, a disease that usually manifests as pock lesions on the teats, but may cause skin lesions at other sites, such as the perineum, the medial aspects of the thighs and the head. Orthopoxviruses that cause buffalo pox cannot be readily distinguished from capripoxvirus by electron microscopy. The virions of parapoxvirus ~~virions~~ that cause bovine papular stomatitis and pseudocowpox are smaller, oval in shape and each is covered in a single continuous tubular element that appears as striations over the virion. Capripoxvirus virions are also distinct from the herpesvirus that causes pseudo-LSD (also known as "Allerton" or bovine herpes mammillitis).

294

## 1.5. Fluorescent antibody tests

295  
296  
297  
298  
299  
300  
301  
302

Capripoxvirus antigen can be identified on infected cover-slips or tissue culture slides using fluorescent antibody tests. Cover-slips or slides should be washed and air-dried and fixed in cold acetone for 10 minutes. The indirect test using immune cattle sera is subject to high background colour and nonspecific reactions. However, a direct conjugate can be prepared from sera from convalescent cattle (or from sheep or goats convalescing from capripox) or from rabbits hyperimmunised with purified capripoxvirus. Uninfected tissue culture should be included as a negative control as cross-reactions can cause problems due to antibodies to cellular components (pre-absorption of these from the immune serum helps solve this issue).

303

## 1.6. Immunohistochemistry

304  
305  
306

Immunohistochemistry using F80G5 monoclonal antibody specific for capripoxvirus ORF 057 has been described for detection of LSDV antigen in the skin of experimentally infected cattle (Babiuk *et al.*, 2008).

307

## 1.7. Isothermal genome amplification

308  
309  
310  
311

Molecular tests using loop-mediated isothermal amplification to detect capripoxvirus genomes are reported to provide sensitivity and specificity similar to real-time PCR with a simpler method and lower cost (Das *et al.*, 2012; Murray *et al.*, 2013). Field validation of the Das *et al.* method was reported by Omega *et al.* (2016).

312 **2. Serological tests**

313 All the viruses in the genus *Capripoxvirus* share a common major antigen for neutralising antibodies and  
314 it is thus not possible to distinguish strains of capripoxvirus from cattle, sheep or goats using serological  
315 techniques.

316 **2.1. Virus neutralisation**

317 A test serum can either be titrated against a constant titre of capripoxvirus (100 TCID<sub>50</sub> [50% tissue  
318 culture infective dose]) or a standard virus strain can be titrated against a constant dilution of test  
319 serum in order to calculate a neutralisation index. Because of the variable sensitivity of tissue culture  
320 to capripoxvirus, and the consequent difficulty of ensuring the accurate and repeatable seeding of  
321 100 TCID<sub>50</sub>/well, the neutralisation index is the preferred method in most laboratories, although it  
322 does require a larger volume of test sera. The test is described using 96-well flat-bottomed tissue-  
323 culture grade microtitre plates, but it can be performed equally well in tissue culture tubes with the  
324 appropriate changes to the volumes used, although it is more difficult to read an end-point in tubes.

325 **2.1.1. Test procedure**

- 326 i) Test sera, including a negative and a positive control, are diluted 1/5 in Eagle's/HEPES  
327 (N-2-hydroxyethylpiperazine, N-2-ethanesulphonic acid) buffer and inactivated at 56°C  
328 for 30 minutes.
- 329 ii) Next, 50 µl of the first inactivated serum is added to columns 1 and 2, rows A to H of the  
330 microtitre plate. The second serum is placed in columns 3 and 4, the third in columns 5  
331 and 6, the positive control serum is placed in columns 7 and 8, the negative control serum  
332 is placed in columns 9 and 10, and 50 µl of Eagle's/HEPES buffer (without serum) is  
333 placed in columns 11 and 12, and to all wells in row H.
- 334 iii) A reference strain of capripoxvirus, usually a vaccine strain known to grow well in tissue  
335 culture, with a titre of over log<sub>10</sub> 6 TCID<sub>50</sub> per ml is diluted in Eagle's/HEPES in bijoux  
336 bottles to give a log dilution series of log<sub>10</sub> 5.0, 4.0, 3.5, 3.0, 2.5, 2.0, 1.5 TCID<sub>50</sub> per ml  
337 (equivalent to log<sub>10</sub> 3.7, 2.7, 2.2, 1.7, 1.2, 0.7, 0.2 TCID<sub>50</sub> per 50 µl).
- 338 iv) Starting with row G and the most diluted virus preparation, 50 µl of virus is added to each  
339 well in that row. This is repeated with each virus dilution, the highest titre virus dilution  
340 being placed in row A.
- 341 v) The plates are covered and incubated for 1 hour at 37°C.
- 342 vi) An appropriate cell suspension (such as MDBK cells) is prepared from pregrown  
343 monolayers as a suspension of 10<sup>5</sup> cells/ml in Eagle's medium containing antibiotics and  
344 2% fetal calf serum. Following incubation of the microtitre plates, 100 µl of cell suspension  
345 is added to all the wells, except wells H11 and H12, which serve as control wells for the  
346 medium. The remaining wells of row H are cell and serum controls.
- 347 vii) The microtitre plates are covered and incubated at 37°C for 9 days.
- 348 viii) Using an inverted microscope, the monolayers are examined daily from day 4 for  
349 evidence of CPE. There should be no CPE in the cells of row H. Using the 0240 KSGP  
350 vaccine strain of capripoxvirus, by way of example, the final reading is taken on day 9,  
351 and the titre of virus in each duplicate titration is calculated using the Kärber method. If  
352 left longer, there is invariably a 'breakthrough' of virus in which virus that was at first  
353 neutralised appears to disassociate from the antibody.
- 354 ix) *Interpretation of the results:* The neutralisation index is the log titre difference between  
355 the titre of the virus in the negative serum and in the test serum. An index of ≥1.5 is  
356 positive. The test can be made more sensitive if serum from the same animal is examined  
357 before and after infection. Because the immunity to capripoxviruses is predominantly cell  
358 mediated, a negative result, particularly following vaccination, after which the antibody  
359 response may be low, does not imply that the animal from which the serum was taken is  
360 not protected.

361 Antibodies to capripoxvirus can be detected from 1 to 2 days after the onset of clinical  
362 signs. These remain detectable for about 7 months.

## 363 2.2. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay

364 Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) for the detection of capripoxviral antibodies are  
365 widely used and are available in commercial kit form (Milovanovic *et al.*, 2019; Samojlovic *et al.*,  
366 2019).

## 367 2.3. Indirect fluorescent antibody test

368 Capripoxvirus-infected tissue culture grown on cover-slips or tissue culture microscope slides can be  
369 used for the indirect fluorescent antibody test. Uninfected tissue culture control, and positive and  
370 negative control sera, should be included in the test. The infected and control cultures are fixed in  
371 acetone at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 10 minutes and stored at  $4^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Dilutions of test sera are made in PBS, starting  
372 at 1/20 or 1/40, and positive samples are identified using an anti-bovine gamma-globulin conjugated  
373 with fluorescein isothiocyanate. Antibody titres may exceed 1/1000 after infection. Sera may be  
374 screened at 1/50 and 1/500. Cross-reactions can occur with orf virus (contagious pustular dermatitis  
375 virus of sheep), bovine papular stomatitis virus and perhaps other poxviruses.

## 376 2.4. Western blot analysis

377 Western blotting of test sera against capripoxvirus-infected cell lysate provides a sensitive and  
378 specific system for the detection of antibody to capripoxvirus structural proteins, although the test is  
379 expensive and difficult to carry out.

380 Capripoxvirus-infected LT cells should be harvested when 90% CPE is observed, freeze-thawed  
381 three times, and the cellular debris pelleted using centrifugation. The supernatant should be  
382 decanted, and the proteins should be separated using SDS/PAGE (sodium dodecyl  
383 sulphate/polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis). A vertical discontinuous gel system, using a stacking  
384 gel made up of acrylamide (5%) in Tris (125 mM), pH 6.8, and SDS (0.1%), and a resolving gel made  
385 up of acrylamide (10–12.5%) in Tris (560 mM), pH 8.7, and SDS (0.1%), is recommended for use  
386 with a glycine running buffer containing Tris (250 mM), glycine (2 M), and SDS (0.1%). Samples of  
387 supernatant should be prepared by boiling for 5 minutes with an appropriate lysis buffer prior to  
388 loading. Alternatively, purified virus or recombinant antigens may replace tissue-culture-derived  
389 antigen.

390 Molecular weight markers should be run concurrently with the protein samples. The separated  
391 proteins in the SDS/PAGE gel should be transferred electrophoretically to a nitrocellulose membrane  
392 (NCM). After transfer, the NCM is rinsed thoroughly in PBS and blocked in 3% bovine serum albumin  
393 (BSA) in PBS, or 5% skimmed milk powder in PBS, on a rotating shaker at  $4^{\circ}\text{C}$  overnight. The NCM  
394 can then be separated into strips by employing a commercial apparatus to allow the concurrent  
395 testing of multiple serum samples, or may be cut into strips and each strip incubated separately  
396 thereafter. The NCM is washed thoroughly with five changes of PBS for 5 minutes on a rotating  
397 shaker, and then incubated at room temperature on the shaker for 1.5 hours, with the appropriate  
398 serum at a dilution of 1/50 in blocking buffer (3% BSA and 0.05% Tween 20 in PBS; or 5% milk  
399 powder and 0.05% Tween 20 in PBS). The membrane is again thoroughly washed and incubated (in  
400 blocking buffer) with anti-species immunoglobulin horseradish-peroxidase-conjugated  
401 immunoglobulins at a dilution determined using titration. After further incubation at room temperature  
402 for 1.5 hours, the membrane is washed and a solution of diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride (10 mg  
403 in 50 ml of 50 mM Tris/HCl, pH 7.5, and 20  $\mu\text{l}$  of 30% [v/v] hydrogen peroxide) is added.  
404 Incubation is then undertaken for approximately 3–7 minutes at room temperature on a shaker with  
405 constant observation, and the reaction is stopped by washing the NCM in PBS before excessive  
406 background colour is seen. A positive and negative control serum should be used on each occasion.

407 Positive test samples and the positive control will produce a pattern consistent with reaction to  
408 proteins of molecular weights 67, 32, 26, 19 and 17 kDa – the major structural proteins of  
409 capripoxvirus – whereas negative serum samples will not react with all these proteins. Hyperimmune



410 serum prepared against parapoxvirus (bovine papular stomatitis or pseudocowpox virus) will react  
411 with some of the capripoxvirus proteins, but not the 32 kDa protein that is specific for capripoxvirus.

## 412 C. REQUIREMENTS FOR VACCINES

### 413 1. Background: rationale and intended use of the product

414 Live attenuated strains of capripoxvirus have been used as vaccines specifically for the control of LSD (Brenner  
415 *et al.*, 2006; Capstick & Coakley, 1961; Carn, 1993). Capripoxviruses are cross-reactive within the genus.  
416 Consequently, it is possible to protect cattle against LSD using strains of capripoxvirus derived from sheep or  
417 goats (Coakley & Capstick, 1961). However, it is recommended to carry out controlled trials, using the most  
418 susceptible breeds, prior to introducing a vaccine strain not usually used in cattle. The duration of protection  
419 provided by LSD vaccination is unknown.

420 Capripoxvirus vaccine strains can produce a large local reaction at the site of inoculation in *Bos taurus* breeds  
421 (Davies, 1991), which some stock owners find unacceptable. This has discouraged the use of vaccine, even  
422 though the consequences of an outbreak of LSD are invariably more severe. Risk-benefit of vaccination should  
423 be assessed following stakeholder discussion.

424 Vaccines are a key tool to control LSD. Different types of LSD vaccines have been developed and several are  
425 commercially available (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2021).

426 Live attenuated vaccines (LAV) based on the Neethling LSDV strain (homologous LAV vaccines) have been  
427 shown to offer high levels of protection against LSD under experimental conditions (Haegeman *et al.*, 2021)  
428 and have been used successfully to control the disease in the field, through systematic vaccination of the entire  
429 country's cattle population for a number of consecutive years (Klement *et al.*, 2020). Homologous vaccines  
430 may induce fever, produce a local reaction at the site of inoculation, cause a temporary reduction in milk  
431 production and on rare occasions induce a 'Neethling' response (Ben-Gera *et al.*, 2015; Davies, 1991;  
432 Haegeman *et al.*, 2021). Such adverse effects, however, usually resolve within a few days and are largely  
433 outweighed by the overall benefits of vaccination with homologous vaccines. The duration of immunity induced  
434 by good quality live attenuated LSDV vaccines was shown to be at least 18 months (Haegeman *et al.*, 2023).

435 As capripoxviruses provide cross-reactive protection within the genus, heterologous LAVs comprising  
436 sheepox virus or goatpox virus strains have also been tested and used to protect cattle against LSD.  
437 Sheepox virus-based heterologous vaccines usually contain higher doses of virus than when administered  
438 to sheep. Although safe, their effectiveness in protecting cattle against LSD is inferior compared to homologous  
439 vaccines (Ben-Gera *et al.*, 2015; Zhugunissoff *et al.*, 2020). Heterologous vaccines containing goatpox virus  
440 strains for use in cattle against LSD have been developed more recently. One such vaccine based on the  
441 Gorgan strain provided protection under experimental conditions comparable to homologous vaccines (Gari *et*  
442 *al.*, 2015). On the other hand, a goat pox vaccine based on an attenuated Uttarkashi goatpox virus strain  
443 performed suboptimally under field conditions in India (Naveem *et al.*, 2023), indicating that further research  
444 is warranted before asserting that all goatpox virus-based vaccines induce protection equal to homologous  
445 vaccines in cattle against LSD.

446 In addition, homologous inactivated vaccines against LSD have been developed and tested (Haegeman *et al.*,  
447 2023; Hamdi *et al.*, 2020; Wolff *et al.*, 2022). These vaccines are reported to be safe and efficacious. They  
448 however require a booster vaccination one month after primo-vaccination and then every 6 months thereafter,  
449 based on the fact that the duration of immunity is shorter than 1 year (Haegeman *et al.*, 2023).

450 None of the commercial vaccines currently available has practical DIVA capacity. This problem may be  
451 resolved in the future by introducing new types of vaccines (e.g. vector-vaccines, subunit vaccines, mRNA  
452 vaccines) that are at various stages of development and evaluation.



## 453 **2. Outline of production of LSD vaccines and minimum requirements for conventional** 454 **vaccines**

455 General requirements set for the facilities used for the production of vaccines and for the documentation and  
456 record keeping throughout the whole manufacturing process are described in Chapter 1.1.8 *Principles of*  
457 *veterinary vaccine production*. The documentation should include standard operating procedures (SOP) for  
458 the method of manufacture and each step for the testing of cells and reagents used in the process, each batch  
459 and the final product.

460 The production of vaccines, including LSD vaccines, starts within research and development (R&D) facilities  
461 where vaccine candidates are produced and tested in preclinical studies to demonstrate the quality, safety and  
462 efficacy of the product.

463 Minimum requirements for different production stages of veterinary vaccines are available in different chapters  
464 of the *Terrestrial Manual*. These are intended to be used in combination with country-specific regulatory  
465 requirements for vaccine production and release. Here we outline the most important requirements for the  
466 production of live and inactivated LSD vaccines. Full requirements are available in Chapter 1.1.8 *Principles of*  
467 *veterinary vaccine production*, Chapter 2.3.3 *Minimum requirements for the organisation and management of*  
468 *a vaccine manufacturing facility* and Chapter 2.3.4 *Minimum requirements for the production and quality control*  
469 *of vaccine*, and other regulatory documentation.

### 470 **2.1. Quality assurance**

471 Facilities for manufacturing LSD vaccines should operate in line with the concepts of good laboratory  
472 practice (GLP) and good manufacturing practice (GMP) to produce high quality products. Quality risk  
473 management and quality control with adequate documentation management, as an integral part of  
474 the production process, have to be in place. In case some activities of the production process are  
475 outsourced, those should also be appropriately defined, recorded and controlled.

476 The vaccine production process (Outline of Production) should be documented in a series of  
477 standard operating procedures (SOPs), or other documents describing the manufacturing of each  
478 batch and the final product (including starting materials to be used, manufacturing steps, in-process  
479 controls and controls on the final product). Detailed requirements for documentation management in  
480 the process of vaccine production are available in Chapter 2.3.3.

481 A completed Outline of Production is to be enclosed in a vaccine candidate dossier and used for the  
482 evaluation of the production process and product by regulatory bodies.

### 483 **2.2. Process validation**

484 The dossier with the enclosed Outline of Production for the vaccine candidate has to be submitted  
485 for regulatory approval, so it can be assessed and authorised by the competent authority to ensure  
486 compliance with local regulatory requirements. Among others, data on quality, safety, and efficacy  
487 will be assessed. The procedures necessary to obtain these data are described in the subsequent  
488 sections.

489 National regulatory authorities might also require official control authority re-testing (check testing)  
490 of final products and batches in government laboratories or an independent batch quality control by  
491 a third party.

## 492 **3. Requirements for LSD vaccine candidates and batch production**

### 493 **3.1. Requirements for starting materials**

494 Live attenuated vaccines (LAV) and inactivated vaccines (IV) for LSD are produced using the system  
495 of limited and controlled passages of master seed and working seed virus and cell banks with a  
496 specified maximum. This approach aims to prevent possible and unwanted drift of properties of seed  
497 virus and cells that might arise from repeated passaging.

498

### 3.1.1. Characteristics of the seed virus

499  
500  
501  
502

Each seed strain of capripoxvirus used for vaccine production must be accompanied by records clearly and accurately describing its origin, isolation and tissue culture or animal passage history. Preferably, the species and strain of capripoxvirus are characterised using PCR or DNA sequencing techniques.

503  
504  
505

A quantity of master seed vaccine virus should be prepared, frozen or desiccated and stored at low temperatures such as -80°C and used to produce a consistent working seed for regular vaccine production.

506  
507  
508  
509

Each master seed strain must be non-transmissible, remain attenuated after further tissue culture passage, and provide complete protection against challenge with virulent field strains for a minimum of 1 year. It must produce a minimal clinical reaction in cattle when given via the recommended route.

510  
511

The necessary safety and potency tests are described in Section C.2.2.4 *Final product batch tests*.

512

### 2.1.2. Quality criteria (sterility, purity, freedom from extraneous agents)

513  
514  
515

Each master seed must be tested to ensure its identity and shown to be free from adventitious viruses, in particular pestiviruses, such as border disease and bovine viral diarrhoea virus, and free from contamination with bacteria, fungi or mycoplasmas.

516  
517

The general procedures for sterility or purity tests are described in Chapter 1.1.9 *Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended for veterinary use*.

518  
519  
520  
521  
522  
523  
524

Master seed virus is a quantity of virus of uniform composition derived from an original isolate, passaged for a documented number of times and distributed into containers at one time and stored adequately to ensure stability (via freezing or lyophilisation). Selection of master seed viruses (MSVs) should ideally be based on their ease of growth in cell culture, virus yield, and in accordance with the regional epidemiological importance. Also, measures to minimise transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSE) contamination should be taken into account (see Section C.3.5.1 *Purity tests*).

525  
526

For each seed strain selected for LSD vaccine production, the following information should be provided:

527  
528

- Historical record: geographical origin, animal species from which the virus was recovered, isolation procedure, tissue culture or animal passage history

529

- Identity: species and strain identification using DNA sequencing

530  
531  
532

- Purity: the absence of bacteria, fungi, mycoplasma, and other viruses (see Chapter 1.1.9 *Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended for veterinary use*)

533  
534

- Safety (overdose, one/repeated dose tests, and reversion to virulence tests) (see Section C.3.3 *Vaccine safety*)

535  
536

- Efficacy data, linked to a specified (protective) dose (see Section C.3.4 *Vaccine efficacy*)  
- Stability

537  
538  
539  
540

Each master seed strain selected for production of live attenuated LSD vaccines must remain attenuated after further passage in animals (see Section C.3.3. *Vaccine safety*), produce minimal clinical reaction when given via the recommended route, provide complete protection against challenge with virulent field strains, and is ideally not transmissible.

541  
542

A quantity of master seed virus should be prepared and stored to be further used for the preparation of working seeds and production seeds. Working seed viruses may be expanded

543 in one or more (but, limited) cell culture passages from the master seed stock and used to  
544 produce vaccine batches. This approach and limitation of seed virus passaging will assist in  
545 maintaining uniformity and consistency in production.

### 546 **3.1.2. Master cell stocks**

547 The production process of LSD vaccines ideally employs an established master cell stock  
548 (MCS) system with defined lowest and highest cell passage to be used to grow the vaccine  
549 virus. Primary cells derived from normal tissues can be used in the production process, but  
550 the use of primary cells has an inherently higher risk of introducing extraneous agents  
551 compared with the use of established (well characterised) cell lines and should be avoided  
552 where alternative methods of producing effective vaccines exist. For each MCS,  
553 manufacturers should demonstrate:

- 554 - MCS identity
- 555 - genetic stability by subculturing from the lowest to the highest passage used for  
556 production
- 557 - stable MCS karyotype with a low level of polyploidy
- 558 - freedom from oncogenicity or tumorigenicity by using *in-vivo* studies using the highest  
559 cell passage that may be used for production
- 560 - purity of MCSs from extraneous bacteria, fungi, mycoplasma, and viruses
- 561 - implemented measures to lower TSE contamination risk (see Section C.3.5.1 *Purity*  
562 *tests*).

### 563 **3.2. Method of vaccine manufacturing**

564 The method of manufacture should be documented as the Outline of Production.

#### 565 **2.2.1. Procedure**

##### 566 **3.2.1. LSD vaccine batch production**

567 Vaccine batches are produced on an appropriate cell line such as MDBK. As already  
568 mentioned in the first paragraphs of Section C, all steps undertaken in the production of  
569 vaccine batches should be described and documented in the Outline of Production. The  
570 production of LAV and IV against LSD starts with the inoculation of the required number of  
571 working vials of seed virus is reconstituted with GMEM or other in appropriate medium and  
572 inoculated onto a suitable primary or continuous cell line grown in suspension or monolayer.  
573 Cells should be harvested after 4–8 days when they exhibit 50–70% CPE for maximum in the  
574 exponential growth phase. At the time highest viral infectivity, or earlier if CPE is extensive  
575 and cells appear ready to detach. Techniques such as loads are present, sonication or  
576 repeated freeze–thawing are is used to release the intracellular virus from the cytoplasm. The  
577 lysate may then be clarified using centrifugation to remove cellular debris (for example by use  
578 of centrifugation at 600 g for 20 minutes, with retention of the supernatant). A second passage  
579 of the virus may be required to produce sufficient virus for a production batch.

580 An aliquot of the virus suspension is titrated to check the virus titre. For LAV, the virus-  
581 containing suspension is diluted to attain the dose at which the vaccine candidate will be  
582 evaluated or to at least the determined protective dose for approved vaccines and is then  
583 mixed with a suitable protectant such as an equal volume of sterile, chilled 5% lactalbumin  
584 hydrolysate and 10% sucrose (dissolved in double distilled water or appropriate balanced salt  
585 solution), and transferred to individually numbered labelled bottles or bags for storage at low  
586 temperatures such as –80°C, or for freeze–drying. A written record of all the procedures  
587 followed must be kept for all vaccine batches.

#### 588 **2.2.2. Requirements for substrates and media**

589 The specification and source of all ingredients used in the manufacturing procedure should be  
590 documented and the freedom of extraneous agents (bacteria, fungi, mycoplasma and viruses)  
591 should be tested. The detailed testing procedure is described in Chapter 1.1.9. The use of  
592 antibiotics must meet the requirements of the licensing authority.

### 593 **2.2.3. In-process control**

#### 594 i) Cells

595 Records of the source of the master cell stocks should be maintained. The highest and  
596 lowest passage numbers of the cells that can be used for vaccine production must be  
597 indicated in the Outline of the Production. The use of a continuous cell line (such as  
598 MDBK, etc.) is strongly recommended, unless the virus strain only grows on primary cells.  
599 The key advantage of continuous over primary cell lines is that there is less risk of  
600 introduction of extraneous agents.

#### 601 ii) Serum

602 Serum used in the growth or maintenance medium must be free from antibodies to  
603 capripoxvirus and free from contamination with pestivirus or other viruses, extraneous  
604 bacteria, mycoplasma or fungi.

#### 605 iii) Medium

606 Media must be sterile before use.

#### 607 iv) Virus

608 Seed virus and final vaccine must be titrated and pass the minimum release titre set by  
609 the manufacturer. For example, the minimum recommended field dose of the South  
610 African Neethling strain vaccines (Mathijs *et al.*, 2016) is  $\log_{10}$  3.5 TCID<sub>50</sub>, although the  
611 minimum protective dose is  $\log_{10}$  2.0 TCID<sub>50</sub>. Capripoxvirus is highly susceptible to  
612 inactivation by sunlight and allowance should be made for loss of activity in the field.

613 The recommended field dose of the Romanian sheep pox vaccine for cattle is  $\log_{10}$   
614 2.5 sheep infective doses (SID<sub>50</sub>), and the recommended dose for cattle of the RM65-  
615 adapted strain of Romanian sheep pox vaccine is  $\log_{10}$  3 TCID<sub>50</sub> (Coakley & Capstick,  
616 1964).

### 617 **3.2.2. Inactivation process for inactivated LSD vaccines**

618 Unlike LAV, inactivated LSD vaccines contain inactivated antigens in combination with  
619 adjuvants to strengthen the induced immune response after administration. The vaccine  
620 evaluation process described below needs to show the amount of antigen necessary to elicit  
621 a protective immune response. Currently, literature data indicate that an inactivated vaccine  
622 originating from an LSDV virus stock with titre  $10^4$  cell culture infectious dose<sub>50</sub> (CCID<sub>50</sub>)/ml  
623 before inactivation can be sufficient to induce an efficient immune response to prevent clinical  
624 disease, viremia and virus shedding after challenge of young cattle (Wolf *et al.*, 2022)

625 To monitor the inactivation process and the level of antigen inactivation, samples are taken at  
626 regular intervals during inactivation and titrated. Inactivation conditions and the length of initial  
627 and repeated exposure should be documented in detail since one or more factors during the  
628 process could influence the outcomes. The inactivation kinetics should reach a predefined  
629 target e.g. one remaining infectious unit per million doses ( $1 \times 10^{-6}$  infectious units/dose) as  
630 suggested by APHIS (2013). The confirmatory testing of inactivation is performed on each  
631 vaccine lot and represents an important part of the inactivation process monitoring. In addition  
632 to all the procedures mentioned above, the inactivation procedure and tests demonstrating  
633 that antigen inactivation is complete and consistent must additionally be documented in the  
634 Outline of Production.

635

### **3.3. Vaccine safety**

636 During the vaccine development process, vaccine safety must be evaluated in the target animal  
637 (target animal batch safety test –TABST) to demonstrate the safety of the dose intended for  
638 registration. The animals used in the safety testing should be representative (species, age and  
639 category [calves, heifers, bulls, cows.]) for all the animals for which the vaccine is intended.  
640 Vaccinated and control groups are appropriately acclimatised, housed and managed in line with  
641 animal welfare standards. Animal suffering has to be eliminated or reduced and euthanasia is  
642 recommended in moribund animals.

643 Essential parameters to be evaluated in safety studies are local and systemic reactions to  
644 vaccination, including local reactions at the site of administration, fever, effect on milk production,  
645 and induction of a 'Neethling' response. The effect of the vaccine on reproduction needs to be  
646 evaluated where applicable.

647 A part of the safety evaluation of LAV and IV can be performed during the efficacy trials (see Section  
648 C.3.4 Vaccine efficacy) by measuring local and systemic responses following vaccination and before  
649 challenge.

650 Guidelines for safety evaluation are provided by the European Medicine Agency (EMA) in VICH  
651 GL44: TABST for LAV and IV (EMA, 2009). Safety aspects of LAV and IV against LSD to be  
652 evaluated are:

#### **3.3.1. Overdose test for LAV**

654 Local and systemic responses should be measured following an overdose test whereby 10×  
655 the maximum vaccine titre is administered. If the maximum vaccine titre is not specified, 10×  
656 the minimum vaccine titre can be applied in multiple injection sites. Ideally, the 10× dose is  
657 dissolved in the 1× dose volume of the adjuvants or diluent. Generally, eight animals per group  
658 should be used (EMA, 2009).

#### **3.3.2. One dose and repeat dose test**

660 This aims to test the safety of the vaccine dose applied in the vaccination regime intended for  
661 registration. LAV LSD vaccines require one dose per year, while inactivated LSD vaccines  
662 require a booster dose in addition to the primary dose. The minimal recommended interval  
663 between administrations is 14 days.

664 Generally, eight animals per group should be used unless otherwise justified (EMA, 2009).  
665 For each target species, the most sensitive breed, age and sex proposed on the label should  
666 be used. Seronegative animals should be used. In cases where seronegative animals are not  
667 reasonably available, alternatives should be justified.

#### **3.3.3. Reversion to virulence tests**

669 Live attenuated vaccines inherently carry the risk of vaccine virus reverting to virulence when  
670 repeated passages in a host species could occur due to shedding and transmission from  
671 vaccinated animals to contact animals. LAV LSD vaccines should therefore be tested for non-  
672 reversion to virulence by means of passage studies. Vaccine virus (MSV, not the finished  
673 vaccine) is inoculated in a group of target animals of susceptible age via the natural route of  
674 infection or the route that is most likely to result in infection. The vaccine virus is subsequently  
675 recovered from tissues or excretions and is used directly to inoculate a further group of  
676 animals. After not less than four passages (see chapter 1.1.8), i.e. use of a total of five groups  
677 of animals, the re-isolate must be fully characterised, using the same procedures used to  
678 characterise the master seed virus.

#### **3.3.4. Environmental consideration**

680 This includes the evaluation of the ability of LAV LSD vaccines to be shed, to spread and to  
681 infect contact target and non-target animals, and to persist in the environment.

682  
683  
684  
685  
686  
  
687  
  
688  
689  
690  
691  
692  
693  
694  
695  
696  
697  
698  
699  
700  
701  
702  
703  
704  
705  
706  
707  
708  
  
709  
710  
711  
712  
  
713  
  
714  
715  
716  
717  
718  
719  
720  
721  
722  
723  
724  
725  
726  
727  
  
728  
  
729  
730  
731  
732

#### **2.2.4. Final product batch tests**

i) ~~Sterility/purity~~

~~Vaccine samples must be tested for sterility/purity. Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended for veterinary use may be found in Chapter 4.1.9.~~

ii) ~~Safety and efficacy~~

~~The efficacy and safety studies should be demonstrated using statistically valid vaccination challenge studies using seronegative young LSDV susceptible dairy cattle breeds. The group numbers recommended here can be varied if statistically justified. Fifteen cattle are placed in a high containment level large animal unit and serum samples are collected. Five randomly chosen vials of the freeze-dried vaccine are reconstituted in sterile PBS and pooled. Two cattle are inoculated with 10 times the recommended field dose of the vaccine, and eight cattle are inoculated with the recommended field dose. The remaining five cattle are unvaccinated control animals. The animals are clinically examined daily and rectal temperatures are recorded. On day 21 after vaccination, the animals are again serum sampled and challenged with a known virulent capripoxvirus strain. The challenge virus solution should also be tested free from extraneous viruses. The clinical response is recorded during the following 14 days. Animals in the unvaccinated control group should develop the typical clinical signs of LSD, whereas there should be no local or systemic reaction in the vaccinates other than a raised area in the skin at the site of vaccination, which should disappear after 4 days. Serum samples are again collected on day 30 after vaccination. The day 21 serum samples are examined for seroconversion to selected viral diseases that could have contaminated the vaccine, and the days 0 and 30 samples are compared to confirm the absence of antibody to pestivirus. Because of the variable response in cattle to LSD challenge, generalised disease may not be seen in all of the unvaccinated control animals, although there should be a large local reaction.~~

~~Once the efficacy of the particular strain being used for vaccine production has been determined in terms of minimum dose required to provide immunity, it is not necessary to repeat this on the final product of each batch, provided the titre of virus present has been ascertained.~~

iii) ~~Batch potency~~

~~Potency tests in cattle must be undertaken for vaccine strains of capripoxvirus if the minimum immunising dose is not known. This is usually carried out by comparing the titre of a virulent challenge virus on the flanks of vaccinated and control animals. Following vaccination, the flanks of at least three animals and three controls are shaved of hair. Log<sub>10</sub> dilutions of the challenge virus are prepared in sterile PBS and six dilutions are inoculated intradermally (0.1 ml per inoculum) along the length of the flank; four replicates of each dilution are inoculated down the flank. An oedematous swelling will develop at possibly all 24 inoculation sites on the control animals, although preferably there will be little or no reaction at the four sites of the most dilute inocula. The vaccinated animals may develop an initial hypersensitivity reaction at sites of inoculation within 24 hours, which should quickly subside. Small areas of necrosis may develop at the inoculation site of the most concentrated challenge virus. The titre of the challenge virus is calculated for the vaccinated and control animals; a difference in titre >log<sub>10</sub> 2.5 is taken as evidence of protection.~~

#### **3.4. Vaccine efficacy**

Data enclosed in the vaccine candidate dossier should support the efficacy of the vaccine in each animal species for each vaccination regimen that is described in the product label recommendation. This includes studies regarding the onset of protection when claims for onset are made and for the duration of immunity. Efficacy studies should be conducted with the vaccine candidate that has been



733 produced at the highest passage level permitted for vaccine production as specified in the Outline of  
734 Production.

735 Efficacy (and safety) should be demonstrated in vaccination–challenge studies using representative  
736 (by species, age and category) seronegative healthy animals for which the vaccine is intended and  
737 which are tested negative for standard viral pathogens.

738 An example of a vaccination-challenge test set-up is outlined here. The group numbers mentioned  
739 can be varied if statistically justified. Thirteen animals are placed in a high containment large animal  
740 unit and are divided into two groups:

741 - single/repeated dose test group (n=8) – animals inoculated with the vaccine dose and route  
742 intended for registration (in case of an IV against LSD, a booster dose should follow primary  
743 vaccination after minimum 14 days).

744 - control group (n=5) – non-vaccinated animals

745 Throughout the *in-vivo* study, all animals are clinically examined and rectal temperatures recorded.  
746 Blood, serum and swab samples are regularly collected and subjected to laboratory testing. On day  
747 21 after the vaccination with a LAV or after the booster vaccination for an IV, the animals in both  
748 groups are challenged with a known virulent LSDV strain. The challenge virus solution should be of  
749 known titre and tested free from extraneous viruses. Experience obtained from previous animal  
750 experiments indicates that a dose of challenge virus between  $10^{4.0}$  and  $10^{6.5}$  TCID<sub>50</sub> produces clinical  
751 disease in about half of the susceptible experimental cattle (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2021).

752 The clinical response following challenge is recorded over a period of 14 days. No clinical signs  
753 should occur in the vaccinates, other than a local reaction at the site of inoculation. At least 1 animal  
754 in the unvaccinated control group should develop the typical clinical signs of LSD. Although a  
755 generalised disease with skin nodules may not be seen in all the unvaccinated control animals based  
756 on the knowledge that the outcome of a LSDV infection can range from inapparent to severe, at the  
757 very least a large local reaction is to be expected.

758 Clinical and laboratory results will enable assessment of the safety and efficacy of the LSD vaccine  
759 candidate and the induced immune responses. Serum samples collected at different time points  
760 during the trial can be examined to study seroconversion against selected viral diseases that could  
761 have contaminated the vaccine.

## 762 **2.3. Requirements for regulatory approval**

### 763 **2.3.1. Safety requirements**

#### 764 i) Target and non-target animal safety

765 The vaccine must be safe to use in all breeds of cattle for which it is intended, including  
766 young and pregnant animals. It must also be non-transmissible and remain attenuated  
767 after further tissue culture passage.

768 Safety tests should be carried out on the final product of each batch as described in  
769 Section C.2.2.4.

#### 770 ii) Reversion to virulence for attenuated/live vaccines

771 The selected final vaccine should not revert to virulence during further passages in target  
772 animals.

#### 773 iii) Environmental consideration

774 Attenuated vaccine should not be able to perpetuate autonomously in a cattle population.  
775 Strains of LSDV are not a hazard to human health.

### 776 **2.3.2. Efficacy requirements**

777 i) For animal production

778 The efficacy of the vaccine must be demonstrated in statistically valid vaccination  
779 challenge experiments under laboratory conditions. The group numbers recommended  
780 here can be varied if statistically justified. Fifteen cattle are placed in a high containment  
781 level large animal unit and serum samples are collected. Five randomly chosen vials of  
782 the freeze-dried vaccine are reconstituted in sterile PBS and pooled. Two cattle are  
783 inoculated with 10 times the field dose of the vaccine, eight cattle are inoculated with the  
784 recommended field dose. The remaining five cattle are unvaccinated control animals. The  
785 animals are clinically examined daily and rectal temperatures are recorded. On day 21  
786 after vaccination, the animals are again serum sampled and challenged with a known  
787 virulent capripoxvirus strain using intravenous and intradermal inoculation (the challenge  
788 virus solution should also be tested and shown to be free from extraneous viruses). The  
789 clinical response is recorded during the following 14 days. Animals in the unvaccinated  
790 control group should develop the typical clinical signs of LSD, whereas there should be  
791 no local or systemic reaction in the vaccinates other than a raised area in the skin at the  
792 site of vaccination which should disappear after 4 days. Serum samples are again  
793 collected on day 30 after vaccination. The day 21 serum samples are examined for  
794 seroconversion to selected viral diseases that could have contaminated the vaccine, and  
795 the days 0 and 30 samples are compared to confirm the absence of antibody to pestivirus.  
796 Because of the variable response in cattle to challenge with LSDV, generalised disease  
797 may not be seen in all of the unvaccinated control animals, although there should be a  
798 large local reaction.

799 Once the potency of the particular strain being used for vaccine production has been  
800 determined in terms of minimum dose required to provide immunity, it is not necessary to  
801 repeat this on the final product of each batch, provided the titre of virus present has been  
802 ascertained.

803 ii) For control and eradication

804 Vaccination is the only effective way to control LSD outbreaks in endemic countries and  
805 recent experiences of the disease in Eastern Europe and the Balkans suggests this is  
806 also true for outbreaks in non-endemic countries. Unfortunately, currently no marker  
807 vaccines allowing a DIVA strategy are available, although to a limited extent PCR can be  
808 used for certain vaccines.

809 The duration of immunity produced by LSDV vaccine strains is currently unknown.

### 810 **2.3.3. Stability**

811 All vaccines are initially given a shelf life of 24 months before expiry. Real-time stability studies  
812 are then conducted to confirm the appropriateness of the expiry date. Multiple batches of the  
813 vaccine should be re-titrated periodically throughout the shelf-life period to determine the  
814 vaccine stability.

815 Properly freeze-dried preparations of LSDV vaccine, particularly those that include a  
816 protectant, such as sucrose and lactalbumin hydrolysate, are stable for over 25 years when  
817 stored \_\_\_\_\_ at  
818 -20°C and for 2-4 years when stored at 4°C. There is evidence that they are stable at higher  
819 temperatures, but no long-term controlled experiments have been reported. No preservatives  
820 other than a protectant, such as sucrose and lactalbumin hydrolysate, are required for the  
821 freeze-dried preparation.

### 822 **3.5. Batch/serial tests before release for distribution**

823 Quality tests on MSV and safety and efficacy tests on vaccine candidates are performed during the  
824 evaluation process for new LSD vaccines. Once vaccines are approved to be used in the field, it  
825 remains important to verify the quality of each vaccine batch produced. An independent batch quality  
826 control assessment may be warranted or requested by national or international regulatory authorities.

827  
828  
829  
830  
831  
832  
833  
834  
835  
836  
837  
838  
839  
840  
841  
842  
843  
844  
845  
846  
847  
848  
849  
850  
851  
852  
853  
854  
855  
856  
857  
858  
859  
860  
861  
862  
863  
864  
865  
866  
867

### **3.5.1. Purity test**

Purity is defined by the absence of different contaminants (bacteria, fungi, mycoplasma, and other viruses; see full details in chapter 1.1.9) in the vaccine and its associated diluent/adjuvants. Virus isolation and bacterial culture tests can be used to show freedom from live competent replicating microorganisms, but molecular methods are more rapid and sensitive, but positives can be caused by genome fragments and incompetent replicating microorganisms.

Besides the contaminants mentioned above, manufacturers should demonstrate implemented measures to minimise the risk of TSE contamination in ingredients of animal origin such as:

- all ingredients of animal origin in production facilities are from countries recognised as having the lowest possible risk of bovine spongiform encephalopathy
- tissues or other substances used are themselves recognised as being of low or nil risk of containing TSE agents

### **3.5.2. Identity tests**

In addition to identity tests performed on the MSV, the identity tests on final batches aim to demonstrate the presence of only the selected capripoxvirus species and strain in the vaccine as indicated in the Outline of Production and the absence of other strains or members of the genus and any other viral contaminant that might arise during the production process. Identity testing could be assured by using appropriate tests (e.g. PCRs, sanger sequencing, NGS).

### **3.5.3. Potency tests**

Standard requirements for potency tests can be found in CFR Title 9 part 113, in the European Pharmacopoeia, and in this Terrestrial Manual.

#### **3.5.3.1. Live vaccines**

The potency of LAV against LSD can be measured by means of virus titration. The virus titre must, as a rule, be sufficiently greater than that shown to be protective in the efficacy test for the vaccine candidate. This will ensure that at any time prior to the expiry date, the titre will be at least equal to the evaluated protective titre. The titres of currently available commercial homologous LSD vaccines range between  $10^3$  and  $10^4$  infectious units/dose (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2021).

#### **3.5.3.2. Inactivated LSD vaccines**

For inactivated LSD vaccines, potency tests are performed using vaccination–challenge efficacy studies in animal hosts (see Section C.3.4. *Vaccine efficacy*).

### **3.5.4. Safety/efficacy**

Safety and efficacy testing is undertaken during the evaluation process of the vaccine candidate, and also needs to be performed on a number of vaccine batches until robust data are generated in line with international and national regulations. Afterwards, when using a seed lot system in combination with strict implementation of GMP standards and depending on local regulations, TABST could be waived as described in VICH50 and VICH55, providing the titer has been ascertained using potency testing. Batches or serials are considered satisfactory if local and systemic reactions to vaccination are in line with those described in the dossier of the vaccine candidate and product literature.

868  
869  
870  
871  
872  
873  
874  
875  
876  
877

#### **3.5.4.1. Field safety/efficacy tests**

Field testing of two or more batches should be performed on all animal categories for which the product is indicated before release of the product for general use (see chapter 1.1.8). The aim of these studies is to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the product under normal field conditions of animal care and use in different geographical locations where different factors may influence product performance. A protocol for safety/efficacy testing in the field has to be developed with defined observation and recording procedures. However, it is generally more difficult to obtain statistically significant data to demonstrate efficacy under field conditions. Even when properly designed, field efficacy studies may be inconclusive due to uncontrollable outside influences.

878  
879  
880  
881  
882  
883  
884  
885

#### **3.5.4.2. Duration of Immunity**

The duration of immunity (DOI) following vaccination should be demonstrated via challenge or the use of a validated serology test. Efficacy testing at the end of the claimed period of protection should be conducted in each species for which the vaccine is indicated or the manufacturer should indicate that the DOI for that species is not known. Likewise, the manufacturer should demonstrate the effectiveness of the recommended booster regime in line with these guidelines, usually by measuring the magnitude and kinetics of the serological response observed.

886  
887  
888  
889  
890

### **3. Vaccines based on biotechnology**

A new generation of capripox vaccines is being developed that uses the LSDV as a vector for the expression and delivery of immune protective proteins of other ruminant pathogens with the potential for providing dual protection (Boshra *et al.*, 2013; Wallace & Viljoen, 2005), as well as targeting putative immunomodulatory genes for inducing improved immune responses (Kara *et al.*, 2018).

891

## **4. Post-market studies**

892  
893  
894  
895  
896  
897  
898

### **4.1. Stability**

Stability testing shall be carried out as specified in Annex II of Regulation (EU) 2019/6 and in the Ph. Eur. 0062: Vaccines for veterinary use, on not fewer than three representative batches providing this mimics the full-scale production described in the application. At the end of shelf-life, sterility has to be re-evaluated using sterility testing or by showing container closure integrity. Multiple batches of the vaccine should be re-titrated periodically throughout the shelf-life period to determine the vaccine stability.

899  
900  
901  
902  
903  
904  
905

### **4.2. Post-marketing surveillance**

After release of a vaccine, its performance under field conditions should continue to be monitored by competent authorities and by the manufacturer itself. Not all listed adverse effects may show up in the clinical trials performed to assess safety and efficacy of the vaccine candidate due to the limited number of animals used. Post-marketing surveillance studies can also provide information on vaccine efficacy when used in normal practice and husbandry conditions, on duration of induced immunity, on ecotoxicity, etc.

906  
907  
908  
909  
910  
911

First, a reliable reporting system should be in place to collect consumer complaints and notifications of adverse reactions. Secondly, post-marketing surveillance should be established to investigate whether the reported observations are related to the use of the product and to identify, at the earliest stage, any serious problem that may be encountered from its use and that may affect its future uptake. Vaccinovigilance should be an on-going and integral part of all regulatory programmes for LSD vaccines, especially for live vaccines.

## REFERENCES

- 913 AGIANNIOTAKI E.I., CHAINTOUTIS S.C., HAEGEMAN A., TASIOUDI K.E., DE LEEUW I., KATSOULOS P.D., SACHPATZIDIS  
914 A., DE CLERCQ K., ALEXANDROPOULOS T., POLIZOPOULOU Z.S., CHONDROKOUKI E.D. & DOVAS C.I. (2017).  
915 Development and validation of a TaqMan probe-based real-time PCR method for the differentiation of wild  
916 type lumpy skin disease virus from vaccine virus strains. *J. Virol. Methods*, **249**, 48–57.
- 917 BABIUK S., BOWDEN T.R., PARKYN G., DALMAN B., MANNING L., NEUFELD J., EMBURY-HYATT C., COPPS J. & BOYLE  
918 D.B. (2008). Quantification of lumpy skin disease virus following experimental infection in cattle. *Transbound.  
919 Emerg. Dis.*, **55**, 299–307.
- 920 BABIUK S., PARKYN G., COPPS J., LARENCE J.E., SABARA M.I., BOWDEN T.R., BOYLE D.B. & KITCHING R.P. (2007).  
921 Evaluation of an ovine testis cell line (OA3.Ts) for propagation of capripoxvirus isolates and development of  
922 an immunostaining technique for viral plaque visualization. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **19**, 486–491.
- 923 BALINSKY C.A., DELHON G., SMOLIGA G., PRARAT M., FRENCH R.A., GEARY S.J., ROCK D.L. & RODRIGUEZ L.L. (2008).  
924 Rapid preclinical detection of sheep pox virus by a real-time PCR assay. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **46**, 438–442.
- 925 BEN-GERA J., KLEMENT E., KHINICH E., STRAM Y. & SHPIGEL N. (2015). Comparison of the efficacy of Neethling  
926 lumpy skin disease virus and x10RM65 sheep-pox live attenuated vaccines for the prevention of lumpy skin  
927 disease – The results of a randomized controlled field study. *Vaccine*, **33**, 4837–4842.
- 928 BISWAS S., NOYCE R.S., BABIUK L.A., LUNG O., BULACH D. M., BOWDEN T.R., BOYLE D. B., BABIUK S. & EVANS  
929 D.H. (2020). Extended sequencing of vaccine and wild-type capripoxvirus isolates provides insights into genes  
930 modulating virulence and host range. *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*, **67**, 80–97.
- 931 BOSHRA H., TRUONG T., NFOR C., GERDTS V., TIKOO S., BABIUK L.A., KARA P., MATHER A., WALLAGE D. & BABIUK  
932 S. (2013). Capripoxvirus-vectored vaccines against livestock diseases in Africa. *Antiviral Res.*, **98**, 217–227.
- 933 BOWDEN, T.R., BABIUK S.L., PARKYN G.R., COPPS J.S. & BOYLE D.B. (2008). Capripoxvirus tissue tropism and  
934 shedding: A quantitative study in experimentally infected sheep and goats. *Virology*, **371**, 380–393.
- 935 BRENNER J., HAIMOVITZ M., ORON E., STRAM Y., FRIDGUT O., BUMBAROV V., KUZNETZOVA L., OVED Z.,  
936 WASERMAN A., GARAZZI S., PERL S., LAHAV D., EDERY N. & YADIN H. (2006). Lumpy skin disease (LSD) in a large  
937 dairy herd in Israel. *Isr. J. Vet. Med.*, **61**, 73–77.
- 938 BURDIN M.L. (1959). The use of histopathological examination of skin material for the diagnosis of lumpy skin  
939 disease in Kenya. *Bull. Epizoot. Dis. Afr.*, **7**, 27–36.
- 940 ~~BYADOVSKAYA O., PESTOVA Y., KONONOV A., SHUMILOVA I., KONONOVA S., NESTEROV A., BABIUK S. & SPRYGIN A.  
941 (2021). Performance of the currently available DIVA real time PCR assays in classical and recombinant lumpy  
942 skin disease viruses. *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*, **68**, 3020–3024. doi: 10.1111/tbed.13942. Epub 2021 May 13.  
943 PMID: 33253485~~
- 944 ~~CAPSTICK P.B. & COAKLEY W. (1961). Protection of cattle against lumpy skin disease. Trials with a vaccine  
945 against Neethling type infection. *Res. Vet. Sci.*, **2**, 362–368~~
- 946 ~~CARN V.M. (1993). Control of capripoxvirus infections. *Vaccine*, **11**, 1275–1279.~~
- 947 CARN V.M. & KITCHING, R.P. (1995). The clinical response of cattle following infection with lumpy skin disease  
948 (Neethling) virus. *Arch. Virol.*, **140**, 503–513.
- 949 ~~COAKLEY W. & CAPSTICK P.B. (1961). Protection of cattle against lumpy skin disease. Factors affecting small  
950 scale production of tissue culture propagated virus vaccine. *Res. Vet. Sci.*, **2**, 369–371.~~
- 951 COETZER J.A.W. (2004). Lumpy skin disease. In: *Infectious Diseases of Livestock*, Second Edition Coetzer  
952 J.A.W. & Justin R.C., eds. Oxford University Press, Cape Town, South Africa, 1268–1276.

953 DAO T.D., TRAN L.H., NGUYEN H.D., HOANG T.T., NGUYEN G.H., TRAN K.V.D., NGUYEN H.X., VAN DONG H., BUI  
954 A.N. & BUI V.N. (2022). Characterization of Lumpy skin disease virus isolated from a giraffe in Vietnam.  
955 *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*, **69**(5):e3268-e3272. doi: 10.1111/tbed.14583. Epub 2022 May 10. PMID: 35502589

956 DAS A., BABIUK S. & MCINTOSH M.T. (2012). Development of a loop-mediated isothermal amplification assay for  
957 rapid detection of capripoxviruses. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **50**, 1613–1620.

958 DAVIES F.G. (1991). Lumpy Skin Disease, a Capripox Virus Infection of Cattle in Africa. FAO, Rome, Italy.

959 DAVIES F.G., KRAUSS H., LUND L.J. & TAYLOR M. (1971). The laboratory diagnosis of lumpy skin disease. *Res.*  
960 *Vet. Sci.*, **12**, 123–127.

961 FAY P.C., COOK C.G., WIJESIRIWARDANA N., TORE G., COMTET L., CARPENTIER A., SHIH B., FREIMANIS G., HAGA  
962 I.R. & BEARD P.M. (2020). Madin-Darby bovine kidney (MDBK) cells are a suitable cell line for the propagation  
963 and study of the bovine poxvirus lumpy skin disease virus. *J. Virol. Methods*, **285**, 113943. doi:  
964 10.1016/j.jviromet.2020.113943.

965 FLANNERY J., SHIH B., HAGA I.R., ASHBY M., CORLA A., KING S., FREIMANIS G., POLO N., TSE A.C., BRACKMAN C.J.,  
966 CHAN J., PUN P., FERGUSON A.D., LAW A., LYCETT S., BATTEN C. & BEARD P.M. (2021). A novel strain of lumpy  
967 skin disease virus causes clinical disease in cattle in Hong Kong. *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*, doi:  
968 10.1111/tbed.14304

969 GARI G., ABIE G., GIZAW D., WUBETE A., KIDANE M., ASGEDOM H., BAYISSA B., AYELET G., OURA C.A.L., ROGER  
970 F. & TUPPURAINEN E.S.M. (2015). Evaluation of the safety, immunogenicity and efficacy of three capripoxvirus  
971 vaccine strains against lumpy skin disease virus. *Vaccine*, **33**, 3256–3261. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2015.01.035.

972 HAIG D. (1957). Lumpy skin disease. *Bull. Epizoot. Dis. Afr.*, **5**, 421–430.

973 HEDGER R.S. & HAMBLIN C. (1983). Neutralising antibodies to lumpy skin disease virus in African wildlife. *Comp.*  
974 *Immunol. Microbiol. Infect. Dis.*, **6**, 209–213. doi: 10.1016/0147-9571(83)90012-7. PMID: 6627909 DOI:  
975 10.1016/0147-9571(83)90012-7

976 HAEGEMAN A., DE LEEUW I., MOSTIN L., VAN CAMPE W., AERTS L., VENTER E., TUPPURAINEN E., SAEGERMAN C. &  
977 K. DE CLERCQ (2021). Comparative Evaluation of Lumpy Skin Disease Virus-Based Live Attenuated Vaccines.  
978 *Vaccines*, **9**, 473. <https://doi.org/10.3390/vaccines9050473>

979 HAEGEMAN A., DE LEEUW I., MOSTIN L., VAN CAMPE W., PHILIPS W., ELHARRAK M., DE REGGE N. & DE CLERCQ K.  
980 (2023). Duration of immunity induced after vaccination of cattle with a live attenuated or inactivated Lumpy  
981 skin disease virus vaccine. *Microorganisms*, **11**, 210. <https://doi.org/10.3390/microorganisms11010210>

982 HAMDJ J., BOUMART Z., DAOUAM S., EL ARKAM A., BAMOUH Z., JAZOULI M., OMARI TADLAOUI K., FASSI FIHRI O.,  
983 GAVRILOV B. & EL HARRAK M. (2020). Development and Evaluation of an Inactivated Lumpy Skin Disease  
984 Vaccine for Cattle. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **245**, 108689. doi: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2020.108689.

985 IRELAND D.C. & BINEPAL Y.S. (1998). Improved detection of capripoxvirus in biopsy samples by PCR. *J. Virol.*  
986 *Methods*, **74**, 1–7.

987 IRONS P.C., TUPPURAINEN E.S.M. & VENTER E.H. (2005). Excretion of lumpy skin disease virus in bull semen.  
988 *Theriogenology*, **63**, 1290–1297.

989 KARA P.D., AFONSO C.L., WALLACE D.B., KUTISH G.F., ABOLNIK C., LU Z., VREEDE F.T., TALJAARD L.C., ZSAK A.,  
990 VILJOEN G.J. & ROCK D.L. (2003). Comparative sequence analysis of the South African vaccine strain and two  
991 virulent field isolates of Lumpy skin disease virus. *Arch. Virol.*, **148**, 1335–1356.

992 KARA P.D., MATHER A.S., PRETORIUS A., CHETTY T., BABIUK S. & WALLACE D.B. (2018). Characterisation of  
993 putative immunomodulatory gene knockouts of lumpy skin disease virus in cattle towards an improved vaccine.  
994 *Vaccine*, **36**, 4708–4715. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2018.06.017.



- 995 KITCHING R.P. & SMALE C. (1986). Comparison of the external dimensions of capripoxvirus isolates. *Res. Vet. Sci.*, **41**, 425–427.
- 996
- 997 KLEMENT E., BROGLIA A., ANTONIOU S.-E., TSAMADIS V., E. PLEVRAKI, PETROVIĆ T., POLAČEK V., DEBELJAK Z.,  
998 MITEVA A., ALEXANDROV T., MAROJEVIC D., PITE L., KONDRATENKO V., ATANASOV Z., GUBBINS S., STEGEMAN A. &  
999 CORTIÑAS ABRAHANTES J. (2020). Neethling vaccine proved highly effective in controlling lumpy skin disease  
1000 epidemics in the Balkans. *Prev. Vet. Med.*, **181**, 104595. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.prevetmed.2018.12.001>
- 1001 KUMAR R., GODARA B., CHANDER Y., KACHHAWA J.P., DEDAR R.K., VERMA A., RIYESH T., PAL Y., BARUA S.,  
1002 TRIPATHI B.N. & KUMAR N. (2023). Evidence of lumpy skin disease virus infection in camels. *Acta Trop.*, **242**,  
1003 106922. doi: 10.1016/j.actatropica.2023.106922. Epub 2023 Apr 7. PMID: 37031926
- 1004 LAMIEN C.E., LELENTA M., GOGER W., SILBER R., TUPPURAINEN E., MATIJEVIC M., LUCKINS A.G. & DIALLO A.  
1005 (2011). Real time PCR method for simultaneous detection, quantitation and differentiation of capripoxviruses  
1006 *J. Virol. Methods*, **171**, 134–140.
- 1007 MATHIJS E., VANDENBUSSCHE F., HAEGEMAN A., KING A., NTHANGENI B., POTGIETER C., MAARTENS L., VAN BORM  
1008 S. & DE CLERCQ K. (2016). Complete Genome Sequences of the Neethling-Like Lumpy Skin Disease Virus  
1009 Strains Obtained Directly from Three Commercial Live Attenuated Vaccines. *Genome Announc.*, **4** (6). pii:  
1010 e01255-16. doi: 10.1128/genomeA.01255-16.
- 1011 MILOVANOVIC M., DIETZE K., MILICEVIC V., RADOJICIC S., VALCIC M., MORITZ T. & HOFFMANN B. (2019). Humoral  
1012 immune response to repeated lumpy skin disease virus vaccination and performance of serological tests. *BMC*  
1013 *Vet. Res.*, **15**, 80. doi: 10.1186/s12917-019-1831-y.
- 1014 MURRAY L., EDWARDS L., TUPPURAINEN E.S., BACHANEK-BANKOWSKA K., OURA C.A., MIOULET V. & KING D.P.  
1015 (2013). Detection of capripoxvirus DNA using a novel loop-mediated isothermal amplification assay. *BMC Vet.*  
1016 *Res.*, **9**, 90.
- 1017 OMOGA D.C.A., MACHARIA M., MAGIRI E., KINYUA J., KASIITI J. & HOLTON T. (2016). Molecular based detection,  
1018 validation of a LAMP assay and phylogenetic analysis of capripoxvirus in Kenya. *J. Adv. Biol. Biotech.*, **7**, 1–  
1019 12.
- 1020 PESTOVA Y., BYADOVSKAYA O., KONONOV A. & SPRYGIN A. (2018). A real time high-resolution melting PCR assay  
1021 for detection and differentiation among sheep pox virus, goat pox virus, field and vaccine strains of lumpy skin  
1022 disease virus. *Mol. Cell. Probes*, **41**, 57–60.
- 1023 PORCO A., CHEA S., SOURS S., NOU V., GROENENBERG M., AGGER C., TUM S., CHHUON V., SORN S., HONG C.,  
1024 DAVIS B., DAVIS S., KEN S., OLSON S.H. & FINE A.E. (2023). Case report: Lumpy skin disease in an endangered  
1025 wild banteng (*Bos javanicus*) and initiation of a vaccination campaign in domestic livestock in Cambodia. *Front.*  
1026 *Vet. Sci.*, **10**:1228505. doi: 10.3389/fvets.2023.1228505
- 1027 PROZESKY L. & BARNARD B.J.H. (1982). A study of the pathology of lumpy skin disease in cattle. *Onderstepoort*  
1028 *J. Vet. Res.*, **49**, 167–175.
- 1029 ROUBY S. & ABOULSOUD E. (2016). Evidence of intrauterine transmission of lumpy skin disease virus. *Vet. J.*,  
1030 **209**, 193–195.
- 1031 SAMOJLOVIC M., POLACEK V., GURJANOV V., LUPULOVIC D., LAZIC G., PETROVIĆ T., LAZIC S. (2019). Detection of  
1032 antibodies against lumpy skin disease virus by virus neutralization test and ELISA methods. *Acta Vet.*, **69**, 47–  
1033 60.
- 1034 SPRYGIN A., BABIN Y., PESTOVA Y., KONONOVA S., WALLACE D.B., VAN SCHALKWYK A., BYADOVSKAYA O., DIEV V.,  
1035 LOZOVY D. & KONONOV A. (2018). Analysis and insights into recombination signals in lumpy skin disease virus  
1036 recovered in the field. *PLoS One*, **13**, e0207480.
- 1037 SPRYGIN A., VAN SCHALKWYK A., SHUMILOVA I., NESTEROV A., KONONOVA S., PRUTNIKOV P., BYADOVSKAYA O. &  
1038 KONONOV A. (2020). Full-length genome characterization of a novel recombinant vaccine-like lumpy skin  
1039 disease virus strain detected during the climatic winter in Russia, 2019. *Arch. Virol.*, **165**, 2675–2677.

- 1040 TUPPURAINEN E., DIETZE K., WOLFF J., BERGMANN H., BELTRAN-ALCRUDO D., FAHRION A., LAMIEN EULOGIE C.,  
 1041 BUSCH F., SAUTER-LOUIS C., CONRATHS F.J., DE CLERCQ K., HOFFMANN B. & SASCHA K. (2021). Review:  
 1042 Vaccines and Vaccination against Lumpy Skin Disease. *Vaccines* (Basel), 9, 1136. doi:  
 1043 10.3390/vaccines9101136
- 1044 TUPPURAINEN E.S.M., VENTER E.H. & COETZER J.A.W. (2005). The detection of lumpy skin disease virus in  
 1045 samples of experimentally infected cattle using different diagnostic techniques. *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*,  
 1046 **72**, 153–164.
- 1047 TUPPURAINEN E.S., VENTER E.H., COETZER J.A. & BELL-SAKYI L. (2015). Lumpy skin disease: attempted  
 1048 propagation in tick cell lines and presence of viral DNA in field ticks collected from naturally-infected cattle.  
 1049 *Ticks Tick Borne Dis.*, **6**, 134–140.
- 1050 VAN ROOYEN P.J., KOMM N.A.L., WEISS K.E. & ALEXANDER R.A. (1959). A preliminary note on the adaptation of  
 1051 a strain of lumpy skin disease virus to propagation in embryonated eggs. *Bull. Epizoot. Dis. Afr.*, **7**, 79–85.
- 1052 VAN SCHALKWYK A., BYADOVSKAYA O., SHUMILOVA I., WALLACE D.B. & SPRYGIN A. (2021). Estimating  
 1053 evolutionary changes between highly passaged and original parental lumpy skin disease virus strains.  
 1054 *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*, doi: 10.1111/tbed.14326.
- 1055 VAN SCHALKWYK A., KARA P., EBERSOHN K., MATHER A., ANNANDALE C.H., VENTER E.H. & WALLACE D.B. (2020).  
 1056 Potential link of single nucleotide polymorphisms to virulence of vaccine-associated field strains of lumpy skin  
 1057 disease virus in South Africa. *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*, **67**, 2946–2960.
- 1058 VIDANOVIC D., SEKLER M., PETROVIC T., DEBELJAK Z., VASKOVIC N., MATOVIC K. & HOFFMAN B. (2016). Real time PCR  
 1059 assay for the specific detection of field Balkan strain of lumpy skin disease virus. *Acta Vet. Brno*, **66**, 444–454.
- 1060 WANG Y., ZHAO L., YANG J., SHI M., NIE F., LIU S., WANG Z., HUANG D., WU H., LI D., LIN H. & LI Y. (2021). Analysis  
 1061 of vaccine-like lumpy skin disease virus from flies near the western border of China. *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*,  
 1062 doi: 10.1111/tbed.14159
- 1063 ~~WALLACE D.B. & VILJOEN G.J. (2005). Immune responses to recombinants of the South African vaccine strain  
 1064 of lumpy skin disease virus generated by using thymidine kinase gene insertion. *Vaccine*, **23**, 3061–3067.~~
- 1065 WEISS K.E. (1968). Lumpy skin disease. *Viol. Monogr.*, **3**, 111–131.
- 1066 WOLFF J., BEER M. & HOFFMANN B. (2022). High Efficiency of Low Dose Preparations of an Inactivated Lumpy  
 1067 Skin Disease Virus Vaccine Candidate. *Vaccines* (Basel), 10, 1029. doi: 10.3390/vaccines10071029.
- 1068 ZHUGUNISSOV K., BULATOV Y., ORYNBAYEV M., KUTUMBETOV L., ABDURAIMOV Y., SHAYAKHMETOV Y., TARANOV D.,  
 1069 AMANOVA Z., MAMBETALIYEV M., ABSATOVA Z., AZANBEKOVA M., KHAIRULLIN B., ZAKARYA K. & TUPPURAINEN E.  
 1070 (2020). Goatpox virus (G20-LKV) vaccine strain elicits a protective response in cattle against lumpy skin  
 1071 disease at challenge with lumpy skin disease virulent field strain in a comparative study. *Vet Microbiol.*, 245,  
 1072 108695. doi: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2020.108695.
- 1073 \*  
 1074 \* \*
- 1075 **NB:** There are WOA Reference Laboratories for lumpy skin disease (please consult the WOA Web site:  
 1076 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3>).  
 1077 Please contact WOA Reference Laboratories for any further information on  
 1078 diagnostic tests, reagents and vaccines for lumpy skin disease
- 1079 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 1989. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2021.

## Annexe 13.Chapter 3.6.9. 'Equine rhinopneumonitis (infection with Varicellovirus equidalph1)'

### CHAPTER 3.6.9.

## EQUINE RHINOPNEUMONITIS (INFECTION WITH VARICELLOVIRUS EQUIDALPHA1-EQUID-HERPESVIRUS-1 AND -4)

### SUMMARY

Equine rhinopneumonitis (ER) is a collective term for any one of several contagious, clinical disease entities of equids that may occur as a result of infection by either of two closely related herpesviruses, formally known as equid ~~alpha~~herpesvirus-1 and -4 (EHV-1 and EHV-4). Infection with EHV-1 is listed by WOA and is therefore the focus of this chapter. The classification of the virus has been reviewed and EHV-1 is now known as Varicellovirus equidalph1. For the purposes of the chapter, the acronym EHV-1 will continue to be used. EHV-1 is and EHV-4 are endemic in most domestic equine populations worldwide.

Primary infection by ~~either EHV-1 or EHV-4~~ is characterised by upper respiratory tract disease of varying severity that is related to the age and immunological status of the infected animal. Following viraemia EHV-1 may also cause the more serious complications of abortion, perinatal foal death, or paralytic neurological disease (equine herpesvirus myeloencephalopathy). ~~EHV-4 has been associated with sporadic cases of abortion, but rarely multiple abortions and not the large outbreaks associated with EHV-1.~~ Like other herpesviruses, EHV-1 and -4 induces long-lasting latent infections and can be reactivated following stress ~~or pregnancy~~. Furthermore, most horses are likely to be re-infected multiple times during their lifetime, often ~~mildly or~~ subclinically. ~~Detection of viral DNA or anti-EHV antibodies should therefore be interpreted with care.~~

**Identification of the agent:** The standard method of identification of EHV-1 ~~and EHV-4~~ from appropriate clinical or necropsy material is by polymerase chain reaction (PCR), ~~followed by laboratory isolation of the virus in cell culture.~~

Positive identification of viral isolates as EHV-1 ~~or EHV-4~~ can be achieved by type-specific PCR or sequencing. Viruses can be isolated in ~~equine~~ cell culture from the following sample types: nasal or nasopharyngeal swab extracts taken from horses ~~during the febrile stage of~~ with acute respiratory tract infection, ~~from~~ the placenta, ~~from~~ and liver, lung, spleen, adrenal glands or thymus of aborted fetuses and early foal deaths, and from the leukocyte fraction of the blood of animals ~~with acute~~ during the febrile stage of EHV-1 infection. Unlike ~~EHV-4, EHV-1 will also grow in various non-equine cell types such as the RK-13 cell line and this property can be used to distinguish between the two viruses.~~

A rapid presumptive diagnosis of abortion induced by EHV-1 ~~or (infrequently) EHV-4~~ can be achieved by direct immunofluorescent detection of viral antigen in cryostat sections of placenta and tissues from aborted fetuses, using a conjugated polyclonal antiserum.

Post-mortem demonstration of histopathological lesions of EHV-1 in placenta and tissues from aborted fetuses, cases of perinatal foal death, or in the central nervous system of neurologically affected animals complements other diagnostic techniques ~~the laboratory diagnosis.~~

41 **Serological tests:** As most horses possess some level of antibody to EHV-1/4, the  
42 demonstration of specific antibody in the serum collected from a single blood sample is  
43 therefore not confirmation of a positive diagnosis of recent infection. Paired, (acute and  
44 convalescent) sera from animals suspected of being infected with EHV-1 or EHV-4 should  
45 be tested for a four-fold or greater rise in virus-specific antibody titre by either virus  
46 neutralisation (VN) or complement fixation (CF) tests. Neither of these assays is type-  
47 specific but both have proven useful for diagnostic purposes especially since the CF  
48 antibody response to recent infection is relatively short-lived. Limited use has also been  
49 made of a type-specific enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (~~Crabb et al., 1995; Hartley~~  
50 ~~et al., 2005~~).

51 **Requirements for vaccines:** Both live attenuated and inactivated viral vaccines are  
52 available for use in assisting in the control of EHV-1/4. Vaccination is helpful in reducing  
53 the severity of respiratory infection in young horses and the incidence of abortion in mares;  
54 however current vaccines are not licenced to protect against neurological disease.  
55 Vaccination should not be considered a substitute for sound management practices known  
56 to reduce the risk of infection. Revaccination at frequent intervals is recommended in the  
57 case of each of the products, as the duration of vaccine-induced immunity is relatively short.

58 Standards for production and licensing of both attenuated and inactivated EHV-1/4  
59 vaccines are established by appropriate veterinary regulatory agencies in the countries of  
60 vaccine manufacture and use. A single set of internationally recognised standards for EHV  
61 vaccines is not available. In each case, however, vaccine production is based on the  
62 system of a detailed outline of production employing a well characterised cell line and a  
63 master seed lot of vaccine virus that has been validated with respect to virus identity, safety,  
64 virological purity, immunogenicity and the absence of extraneous microbial agents.

## 65 A. INTRODUCTION

66 Equine rhinopneumonitis (ER) is a historically derived term that describes a constellation of several  
67 disease entities of horses that may include respiratory disease, abortion, neonatal foal pneumonitis, or  
68 myeloencephalopathy (Allen & Bryans, 1986; Allen et al., 1999; Bryans & Allen, 1988; Crabb & Studdert,  
69 1995). The disease ~~has been is~~ recognised for ~~over 60 years~~ as a threat to the international horse  
70 industry, and is caused by either of two members of the *Herpesviridae* family, formerly known as equid  
71 alphaherpesvirus-1 and -4 (EHV-1 and EHV-4). The viruses are now classified as Varicellovirus  
72 equidalpha1 and Varicellovirus equidalpha4. For the purposes of the chapter, the acronyms EHV-1 and  
73 EHV-4 will continue to be used. EHV-1 and EHV-4 are closely related alphaherpesviruses of horses  
74 with nucleotide sequence identity within individual homologous genes ranging from 55% to 84%, and  
75 amino acid sequence identity from 55% to 96% (Telford et al., 1992; 1998). The two herpesviruses With  
76 the exception of EHV-1 in Iceland (Thorsteinsdóttir et al., 2021), the two herpesviruses are considered  
77 endemic enzootic in all countries in which large populations of horses are maintained as part of the  
78 cultural tradition or agricultural economy. There is no recorded evidence that the two herpesviruses of  
79 ER pose any health risks to humans working with the agents. Infection with EHV-1 is listed by WOA  
80 and is therefore the focus of this chapter.

81 Viral transmission to cohort animals occurs by inhalation of aerosols of virus-laden respiratory  
82 secretions. Morbidity tends to be highest in young horses sharing the same air space. Aborted tissues  
83 and placental fluids from infected mares can contain extremely high levels of live virus and represent a  
84 major source of infection. Extensive use of vaccines has not eliminated EHV-1 infections, and the world-  
85 wide annual financial impact from this these equine pathogens is immense considerable.

86 In horses under 3 years of age, clinical ER usually takes the form of an acute, febrile respiratory illness  
87 that spreads rapidly through the group of animals. The viruses infects and multiplies multiply in epithelial  
88 cells of the respiratory mucosa. Signs of infection become apparent 2–8 days after exposure to virus,  
89 and are characterised by fever, inappetence, depression, and nasal discharge. The severity of  
90 respiratory disease varies with the age of the horse and the level of immunity resulting from previous  
91 vaccination or natural exposure. Bi-phasic fever, viraemia and complications are more likely with EHV-  
92 1 than EHV-4. Subclinical infections with EHV-1/4 are common, even in young animals. Although  
93 mortality from uncomplicated ER is rare and complete recovery within 1–2 weeks is the normal outcome,  
94 respiratory infection is a frequent and significant cause of interrupted schedules among horses

95 assembled for training, racing, or other equestrian events. Fully protective immunity resulting from  
96 infection is of short duration, and convalescent animals are susceptible to reinfection by EHV-1/4 after  
97 several months. Although reinfections ~~by the two herpesviruses~~ cause less severe or clinically  
98 inapparent respiratory disease, the risks of subsequent abortion or neurological disease remain. Like  
99 other herpesviruses, EHV-1/4 causes long-lasting latent infections and latently infected horses  
100 represent a potential infection risk for other horses. Virus can be reactivated as a result of stress or  
101 pregnancy. The greatest clinical threats to individual breeding, racing, or pleasure horse operations  
102 posed by ER are the potential abortigenic and neurological sequelae of EHV-1 respiratory infection. ER  
103 abortions occur annually in horse populations worldwide and may be sporadic or multiple. Foals infected  
104 in utero may be born alive and die within a few days of birth. EHV-1 neurological disease is less common  
105 than abortions but has been recorded all over the world with associated fatalities. Outbreaks result in  
106 movement restrictions and, sometimes, cancellation of equestrian events (Couroucé et al., 2023; FEI,  
107 2021).

108 Neurological disease, also known as equine herpesvirus myeloencephalopathy, remains an infrequent  
109 but serious complication of EHV-1 infection. A single mutation in the DNA polymerase gene (ORF30)  
110 has been associated with increased risk of neurological disease, however strains without this change  
111 can also cause paralysis (Goodman et al., 2007; Nugent et al., 2006). Strain typing techniques have  
112 been employed to identify viruses carrying the neuropathic marker, and it can be helpful to be aware of  
113 an increased risk of neurological complications. However, for practical purposes strain typing is not  
114 relevant for agent identification, or international trade. Strain typing may be beneficial for implementation  
115 of biosecurity measures in the management of outbreaks of equine herpesvirus myeloencephalopathy.

116 Strain typing has been shown to be not reliable for predicting the clinical outcome of EHV-1 infection but  
117 can be useful in epidemiological investigations (Garvey et al., 2019; Nugent et al., 2006; Sutton et al.,  
118 2019).

119 EU: Strain typing has been shown to be unreliable not reliable for predicting the clinical outcome of EHV-  
120 1 infection but can be useful in epidemiological investigations (Garvey et al., 2019; Nugent et al., 2006;  
121 Sutton et al., 2019).

122

## B. DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES

123 Both EHV-1 and EHV-4 is transmitted by the respiratory route and has have the potential to be highly  
124 contagious, viruses particularly where large numbers of horses are housed in the same air space. EHV1  
125 and the former can cause explosive outbreaks of abortion or neurological disease. Rapid diagnostic  
126 methods are therefore essential useful for managing the disease. Real-time polymerase chain reaction  
127 (PCR) assays are widely routinely used by diagnostic laboratories worldwide and are both rapid and  
128 sensitive. Real-time PCR assays that allow simultaneous testing for EHV-1 and EHV-4 have been  
129 developed for both detection of EHV-1 and quantification of viral load have been developed, and have  
130 replaced virus isolation has been replaced by real time PCR as the frontline diagnostic test in the  
131 majority of laboratories, but Virus isolation can also still be useful, particularly for the detection of  
132 viraemia. This is also true of for in cases of EHV-1-associated abortions and neonatal foal deaths, when  
133 the high level of virus in the tissues usually produces a cytopathic effect in 1–3 days. Immunohistochemical or immunofluorescent approaches are employed in some laboratories can be  
134 extremely useful for rapid diagnosis of EHV-induced abortion from fresh or embedded tissue and are  
135 relatively straightforward. Several other techniques based on enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay  
136 (ELISA) or nucleic acid hybridisation probes have also been described, however their use is often  
137 restricted to specialised laboratories and they are not included here. Virus neutralisation (VN) and  
138 complement fixation test (CFT) are the most frequently used serological tests, and seroconversion in  
139 paired samples is considered indicative of exposure to virus by natural infection or by vaccination.  
140



141  
142

**Table 1. Test methods available for the diagnosis of equine rhinopneumonitis-infection with EHV-1 and their purpose**

| Method   | Purpose  |   |   |   |   |  |
|--|--|---|---|---|---|--|
|  | Population freedom from infection <sup>(a)</sup> | Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement <sup>(b)</sup> | Contribute to eradication policies <sup>(c)</sup> | Confirmation of clinical cases <sup>(d)</sup> | Prevalence of infection - surveillance <sup>(e)</sup> | Immune status in individual animals or populations post-vaccination <sup>(f)</sup> |
| <b>Identification of the agent<sup>(g)</sup></b> |  |   |   |   |   |  |
| Virus isolation                                  | -  | ++-+  | -   | ++  | -   | -  |
| PCR  | -  | +++   | -   | +++   | -   | -  |
| <u>Direct immunofluorescence</u>                 | ≡  | ≡   | ≡   | ±±  | ≡   | ≡  |
| <b>Detection of immune response</b>              |  |   |   |   |   |  |
| VN   | ±±   | ±±  | ≡+  | ++ ±  | +++   | +++  |
| ELISA  | +  | - ±±  | ≡+  | ±±  | ++-+  | ±±   |
| CFT  | -  | - ±±  | -   | ++ ±  | -   | - ±±±  |

143  
144  
145  
146  
147  
148  
149  
150  
151  
152  
153

Key: +++ = recommended for this purpose; ++ recommended but has limitations;  
+ = suitable in very limited circumstances; - = not appropriate for this purpose.  
PCR = polymerase chain reaction; VN = virus neutralisation;  
ELISA = enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; CFT = complement fixation test.

<sup>(a)</sup>See Appendix 1 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

<sup>(b)</sup>See Appendix 2 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

<sup>(c)</sup>No eradication policies exist for equine rhinopneumonitis.

<sup>(d)</sup>See Appendix 4 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

<sup>(e)</sup>See Appendix 5 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

<sup>(f)</sup>See Appendix 6 of this chapter for justification table for the scores giving to the tests for this purpose.

<sup>(g)</sup>A combination of agent identification methods applied on the same clinical sample is recommended.

154  
155

## 1. Identification-Detection of the agent

### 1.1. Collection and preparation of specimens

156  
157  
158  
159  
160  
161  
162  
163  
164  
165

*Nasal/nasopharyngeal swabs:* swab extract can be used for DNA extraction and subsequent virus detection by PCR using one of a variety of published techniques or commercially available kits (see below). Virus isolation can also be attempted from the swab extracts. To increase the chances of isolating live virus, swabs are best obtained from horses during the ~~very early, febrile stages~~ acute stage of the respiratory disease, and are collected via the nares by sampling the area with a swab of an appropriate size and length for horses. After collection, the swab should be removed and transported immediately to the virology laboratory in 3 ml of cold (not frozen) virus transport medium (e.g. phosphate buffered saline [PBS] or serum-free MEM [minimal essential medium] with antibiotics). Virus infectivity can be prolonged by the addition of bovine serum albumin, fetal calf serum or gelatine to 0.1% (w/v).

166  
167  
168  
169  
170  
171  
172  
173

*Tissue samples:* total DNA can be extracted using a number of commercially available kits and used in PCR to detect viral DNA (described below in Section B.1.2.1). Virus isolation from placenta and fetal tissues from suspect cases of EHV-1 abortion is most successful when performed on aseptically collected samples of placenta, liver, lung, thymus, adrenal glands and spleen. Virus may be isolated from post-mortem cases of EHV-1 neurological disease by culture of samples of brain and spinal cord but such attempts ~~to isolate virus~~ are often unsuccessful; however, they these samples may be useful for PCR testing and pathological examination. Tissue samples should be transported to the laboratory and held at 4°C until



174 inoculated into tissue culture. Samples that cannot be processed within a few hours should be  
175 stored at  $-70^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

176 Blood: for virus detection by PCR or isolation from blood leukocytes, collect a 10–20 ml sample  
177 of blood, using an aseptic technique in citrate, heparin or EDTA [ethylene diamine tetra-acetic  
178 acid] anticoagulant. EDTA is the preferred anticoagulant for PCR testing in some laboratories  
179 as heparin may inhibit DNA polymerase. The samples should be transported without delay to  
180 the laboratory on ice, but not frozen.

181 Cerebrospinal fluid: the detection of EHV-1 DNA in cerebrospinal fluid has been reported in  
182 cases of neurological disease.

## 183 1.2. Virus detection by polymerase chain reaction

184 PCR has become the primary diagnostic method for the detection of EHV-1 and EHV-4 in  
185 clinical specimens, paraffin-embedded archival tissue, or inoculated cell cultures (Borchers &  
186 Slater, 1993; Lawrence *et al.*, 1994; O'Keefe *et al.*, 1994; Varrasso *et al.*, 2001). A variety of  
187 type-specific PCR primers have been designed to distinguish between the presence of EHV-  
188 1 and EHV-4. The correlation between PCR and virus isolation techniques for diagnosis of  
189 EHV-1 or EHV-4 is high (Varrasso *et al.*, 2001). Diagnosis by PCR is rapid, sensitive, and  
190 does not depend on the presence of infectious virus in the clinical sample. For diagnosis of  
191 active infection by EHV, PCR methods are routinely used to detect EHV-1 DNA in  
192 nasopharyngeal swabs and tissue samples most reliable with tissue samples from aborted  
193 fetuses and placental tissue or from nasopharyngeal swabs of foals and yearlings. They are  
194 particularly useful in explosive outbreaks of abortion, respiratory or neurological disease, in  
195 which a rapid identification and monitoring of the virus spread is critical for guiding  
196 management strategies, including movement restrictions. PCR examination of spinal cord and  
197 brain tissue, as well as peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC), are important in seeking  
198 a diagnosis on a horse with neurological signs (Pronost *et al.*, 2012).

199 Several PCR assays have been published. A nested PCR procedure can be used to  
200 distinguish between EHV-1 and EHV-4. A sensitive protocol suitable for clinical or pathological  
201 specimens (nasal secretions, blood leukocytes, brain and spinal cord, fetal tissues, etc.) has  
202 been described by Borchers & Slater (1993). However, nested PCR methods have a high risk  
203 of laboratory cross-contamination, and sensitive rapid one-step PCR tests to detect EHV-1  
204 and EHV-4 (e.g. Lawrence *et al.*, 1994) are preferred. The WOA Reference Laboratories use  
205 quantitative real-time PCR assays such as those targeting heterologous sequences of major  
206 glycoprotein genes to distinguish between EHV-1 and EHV-4. A multiplex real-time PCR  
207 targeting glycoprotein B gene of EHV-1 and EHV-4 was described by Diallo *et al.* (2007). PCR  
208 protocols have been developed that can differentiate between EHV-1 strains carrying the  
209 ORF30 neuropathogenic marker, using both restriction-enzyme digestion of PCR products  
210 (Fritsche & Borchers, 2011) or by quantitative real-time PCR (Allen *et al.*, 2007; Smith *et al.*,  
211 2012). Methods have also been developed to type strains for epidemiological purposes, based  
212 on the ORF68 gene (Nugent *et al.*, 2006). The WOA Reference Laboratories employ in-  
213 house methods for strain typing, however these protocols have not yet been validated between  
214 different laboratories at an international level.

215 Real-time (or quantitative) PCR has become the method of choice for many—the majority of  
216 diagnostic tests—laboratories and provides rapid and sensitive detection of viral DNA. Equine  
217 post-mortem tissues from newborn and adult animals or equine fetal tissue from abortions  
218 (tissues containing lung, liver, spleen, thymus, adrenal gland and placental tissues) can be  
219 used. For respiratory samples, equine nasopharyngeal swabs or deep nasal swabs (submitted  
220 in a suitable viral transport medium), buffy coat, tracheal wash (TW) or broncho-alveolar  
221 lavage (BAL) are all suitable. DNA should be extracted using an appropriate kit or robotic  
222 system.

223 There is no internationally standardised real-time PCR method for EHV-1 but Table 2  
224 summarises the primer and probe sequences for some of the most widely used assays. Type-  
225 specific PCR primers have been designed to distinguish between the presence of EHV-1 and

226 EHV-4. The optimised thermocycler times and temperatures are documented in the  
 227 publications cited.

228 **Table 2. Primer and probe sequences for EHV1/4 detection by real-time PCR**

| <u>Primer</u>  | <u>Primer sequence (5' to 3')</u>                 | <u>Target</u>   | <u>Reference</u>   |
|----------------|---|-----------------|--|
| <u>Forward</u> | <u>CAT-GTC-AAC-GCA-CTC-CCA</u>                    | <u>EHV-1 gB</u> | <u>Diallo et al., 2006</u>   |
| <u>Reverse</u> | <u>GGG-TCG-GGC-GTT-TCT-GT</u>                     |                 |  |
| <u>Probe</u>   | <u>FAM-CCC-TAC-GCT-GCT-CC-MGB-NFQ</u>             |                 |  |
| <u>Forward</u> | <u>CAT-ACG-TCC-CTG-TCC-GAC-AGA-T</u>              | <u>EHV-1 gB</u> | <u>Hussey et al., 2006</u>   |
| <u>Reverse</u> | <u>GGTACTCGGCCTTTGACGAA</u>                       |                 |  |
| <u>Probe</u>   | <u>FAM-TGA-GAC-CGA-AGA-TCT-CCT-CCA-CCG-A-BHQ1</u> |                 |  |
| <u>Forward</u> | <u>TAT-ACT-CGC-TGA-GGA-TGG-AGA-CTT-T</u>          | <u>EHV-1 gB</u> | <u>Pusterla et al., 2009</u>   |
| <u>Reverse</u> | <u>TTG-GGG-CAA-GTT-CTA-GGT-GGT-T</u>              |                 |  |
| <u>Probe</u>   | <u>6FAM-ACA-CCT-GCC-CAC-CGC-CTA-CCG</u>           |                 |  |
| <u>Forward</u> | <u>GCG-GGC-TCT-GAC-AAC-ACA-A</u>                  | <u>EHV-1 gC</u> | ISO 17025 accredited for the detection of EHV-1 at WOAH Reference Laboratory |
| <u>Reverse</u> | <u>TTG-TGG-TTT-CAT-GGG-AGT-GTG-TA</u>             |                 |  |
| <u>Probe</u>   | <u>FAM-TAA-CGC-AAA-CGG-TAC-AGA-A-BHQ1</u>         |                 |  |

229 \*This multiplex real-time PCR test has been validated to ISO 17025 and is designed for use in a 96-well  
 230 format. This can be readily combined with automatic nucleic acid extraction methods. Discrimination  
 231 between EHV-1 and EHV-4 is carried out by the incorporation of type-specific dual-labelled probes based  
 232 on methods published by Hussey et al. (2006) and Lawrence et al. (1994). To establish such a real-time  
 233 PCR assay for diagnostic purposes, validation against blinded samples is required. Sensitivity and  
 234 specificity for the assay should be determined against each target. Support for development of assays  
 235 and appropriate sample panels can be obtained from the WOAH Reference Laboratories. Reference  
 236 material and sample panels for real-time PCR can be obtained from the WOAH Reference Laboratories.

237 • Point of care (POC) molecular tests

238 Loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP) assays for the detection of EHV-1  
 239 have been described (Nemoto et al., 2011). An evaluation of a hydrolysis probe-  
 240 based insulated isothermal PCR (iiPCR) assay for the detection of EHV-1 showed  
 241 it to have a high sensitivity and specificity compared with real-time PCR (Balasuriya  
 242 et al., 2017). However further validation of POC tests in the field is required.

243 • Molecular characterisation

244 Allelic discrimination real-time PCR assays identifying a single nucleotide  
 245 polymorphism that was originally suggested to distinguish between  
 246 neuropathogenic and non-neuro-pathogenic EHV-1 strains have been developed  
 247 (Smith et al., 2012). However, investigations in many countries worldwide  
 248 demonstrated that the nucleotide substitution was not a reliable predictor of  
 249 enhanced neuropathogenicity. Multilocus typing and whole genome sequencing  
 250 are useful for molecular epidemiological studies (Garvey et al., 2019; Nugent et al.,  
 251 2006; Sutton et al., 2019).

252 **1.3. Virus isolation**

253 Virus isolation is no longer a routine test used for EHV-1 detection in the majority of diagnostic  
 254 laboratories but is more often conducted for surveillance and research purposes. A number of  
 255 cell types may be used for isolation of EHV-1 (e.g. rabbit kidney [RK-13 (AATC-CCL37)], baby  
 256 hamster kidney [BHK-21], Madin-Darby bovine kidney [MDBK], pig kidney [PK-15], etc.).

257 RK13 cells are commonly used for this purpose. For efficient primary isolation of EHV-4 from  
258 horses with respiratory disease, equine-derived cell cultures must be used. Both EHV-1 and  
259 EHV-4 may be isolated from nasopharyngeal samples using primary equine fetal kidney cells  
260 or equine fibroblasts derived from dermal (E-Derm) or lung tissue. EHV-1 can be isolated on  
261 other cell types, as will be discussed later. The nasopharyngeal swab and its accompanying  
262 transport medium are transferred into the barrel of a sterile 10 ml syringe. Using the syringe  
263 plunger, the fluid is squeezed from the swab into a sterile tube. A portion of the expressed fluid  
264 can be filtered through a sterile, 0.45 µm membrane syringe filter unit into a second sterile  
265 tube if heavy bacterial contamination is expected, but this may also lower virus titre. Recently  
266 prepared cell monolayers in tissue culture flasks are inoculated with the filtered, as well as the  
267 unfiltered, nasopharyngeal swab extract. Cell monolayers in multiwell plates incubated in a  
268 5% CO<sub>2</sub> environment may also be used. Virus is allowed to attach by incubating the inoculated  
269 monolayers at 37°C. Monolayers of uninoculated control cells should be incubated in parallel.

270 At Recently prepared cell monolayers in tissue culture flasks or plates are inoculated with  
271 nasopharyngeal swab extract or homogenised tissue: approximately 10% (w/v) pooled tissue  
272 homogenates of liver, lung, thymus, adrenal gland and spleen (from aborted fetuses/neonatal  
273 foals) or of brain and spinal cord (from cases of neurological disease). Virus is allowed to  
274 attach by incubating the end of the attachment period, inoculated monolayers at 37°C for 1  
275 hour after which the inocula are removed and the monolayers are rinsed twice with PBS to  
276 remove virus-neutralising antibody that may or maintenance medium. Monolayers of  
277 uninoculated control cells should be present in the nasopharyngeal secretions incubated in  
278 parallel. After addition of supplemented maintenance medium (MEM containing 2% fetal calf  
279 serum [FCS] and twice the standard concentrations of antibiotics/antifungals [penicillin,  
280 streptomycin, gentamicin, and amphotericin B]), the flasks are incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub>  
281 environment.

282 The use of a positive control virus samples of relatively low titre may be used to validate the  
283 isolation procedure carries the risk that this may lead but should be processed separately to  
284 eventual avoid contamination of diagnostic specimens. This risk can be minimised by using  
285 routine precautions and good laboratory technique, including the use of biosafety cabinets,  
286 inoculating positive controls after the diagnostic specimens, decontaminating the surfaces in  
287 the hood while the inoculum is adsorbing and using a positive control of relatively low titre.  
288 Inoculated flasks should be inspected daily by microscopy for the appearance of characteristic  
289 herpesvirus cytopathic effect (CPE) (focal rounding, increase in refractility, and detachment of  
290 cells). Cultures exhibiting no evidence of viral CPE after 1 week of incubation should be blind-  
291 passaged into freshly prepared monolayers of cells, using small aliquots of both media and  
292 cells as the inoculum. Further blind passage is usually not productive.

293 It can be useful to inoculate samples into both non-equine and equine cells in parallel to  
294 distinguish between EHV-1 and EHV-4, since EHV-4 can cause sporadic cases of abortion.  
295 Around 10% (w/v) pooled tissue homogenates of liver, lung, thymus, and spleen (from aborted  
296 fetuses) or of central nervous system tissue (from cases of neurological disease) are used for  
297 virus isolation. These are prepared by first mincing small samples of tissue into 1 mm cubes  
298 in a sterile Petri dish with dissecting scissors, followed by macerating the tissue cubes further  
299 in serum-free culture medium with antibiotics using a homogeniser or mechanical tissue  
300 grinder. After centrifugation at 1200 g for 10 minutes, the supernatant is removed and 0.5 ml  
301 is inoculated into duplicate cell monolayers in tissue culture flasks. Following incubation of the  
302 inoculated cells at 37°C for 1.5–2 hours, the inocula are removed and the monolayers are  
303 rinsed twice with PBS or maintenance medium. After addition of 5 ml of supplemented  
304 maintenance medium, the flasks are incubated at 37°C for up to 1 week or until viral CPE is  
305 observed. Cultures exhibiting no evidence of viral CPE after 1 week of incubation should be  
306 passaged a second time into freshly prepared monolayers of cells, using small aliquots of both  
307 media and cells as the inoculum.

308 Blood samples: EHV-1 and, infrequently, EHV-4 can be isolated from PBMC. Buffy coats may  
309 be prepared from unclotted (heparinised) blood by centrifugation at 600–525 g for 15  
310 5 minutes, and. The buffy coat is taken after the plasma has been carefully removed. The buffy  
311 coat is then layered onto a PBMC separating solution (Ficoll; density 1077 g/ml, commercially  
312 available) and centrifuged at 400 g for 20 minutes. The PBMC interface (without most

313 granulocytes) is and washed twice in PBS (300 g for 10 minutes) and resuspended in 1 ml  
314 three times in 3 ml MEM containing 2% FCS. As a quicker alternative method, PBMC may be  
315 collected by centrifugation directly from plasma. (525 g for 5 minutes). Following the third  
316 wash, the buffy coat is harvested and resuspended in 2.5 ml MEM containing 2% FCS. An  
317 aliquot of the rinsed cell suspension is added to each of the duplicate monolayers of equine  
318 fibroblast, equine fetal or RK-13 cell monolayers in 25 cm<sup>2</sup> flasks containing 8–10 ml freshly  
319 added maintenance medium. The flasks can be used for DNA extraction. For virus isolation,  
320 the resuspended cells (1 ml) are co-cultivated with freshly prepared primary equine lung or  
321 RK-13 cell suspensions (5 ml) in 25 cm<sup>2</sup> flasks. Confluent cell monolayers are not used. The  
322 flasks are incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> environment for 3 days or until the cells have  
323 reached 90% confluence. The monolayers are then rinsed three times with 1 × PBS and  
324 supplemented with 5 ml MEM containing 2% FCS. They are incubated at 37°C for 7 days;  
325 either with or without removal of the inoculum. If PBMCs are not removed prior to incubation,  
326 CPE may be difficult to detect in the presence of the massive inoculum of leukocytes: each  
327 flask of cells is freeze thawed after 7 for a further 4 days of incubation and the contents  
328 centrifuged at 300 g for 10 minutes. Finally, 0.5 ml of the cell-free, culture medium supernatant  
329 is transferred to freshly made cell monolayers that are just subconfluent. These are incubated  
330 and observed daily for viral CPE for at least 5–6 days. Again, samples, Samples exhibiting no  
331 evidence of viral CPE after 1 week of incubation should be passaged a second time before  
332 discarding as negative.

333 Virus identity may be confirmed by PCR or by immunofluorescence with specific antisera.  
334 Virus isolates from positive cultures should be submitted to a WOAHP Reference Laboratory  
335 for strain characterisation and to maintain a geographically diverse archive. Further strain  
336 characterisation for surveillance purposes or detection of the neurological marker can be  
337 provided at some laboratories.

#### 338 **1.4. Virus detection by direct immunofluorescence**

339 Direct immunofluorescent detection of EHV-1 antigens in samples of post-mortem tissues  
340 collected from aborted equine fetuses and the placenta provides a rapid preliminary diagnosis  
341 of herpesvirus abortion (Gunn, 1992). The diagnostic reliability of this technique approaches  
342 that of virus isolation attempts from the same tissues.

343 In the United States of America (USA), potent polyclonal antiserum to EHV-1, prepared in  
344 swine and conjugated with FITC, is available to veterinary diagnostic laboratories for this  
345 purpose from the National Veterinary Services Laboratories of the United States Department  
346 of Agriculture (USDA). The antiserum cross-reacts with EHV-4 and hence is not useful for  
347 serotyping, however virus typing can be conducted on any virus positive specimens by PCR.

348 Freshly dissected samples (5 × 5 mm pieces) of fetal tissue (lung, liver, thymus, and spleen)  
349 are frozen, sectioned on a cryostat at –20°C, mounted on to microscope slides, and fixed with  
350 100% acetone. After air-drying, the sections are incubated at 37°C in a humid atmosphere for  
351 30 minutes with an appropriate dilution of the conjugated swine antibody to EHV-1. Unreacted  
352 antibody is removed by two washes in PBS, and the tissue sections are then covered with  
353 aqueous mounting medium and a cover-slip, and examined for fluorescent cells indicating the  
354 presence of EHV antigen. Each test should include a positive and negative control consisting  
355 of sections from known EHV-1 infected and uninfected fetal tissue.

#### 356 **1.5. Virus detection by immunoperoxidase staining**

357 Immunohistochemical (IH) staining methods, such as immunoperoxidase, have been  
358 developed for detecting EHV-1 antigen in fixed tissues of aborted equine fetuses, placental  
359 tissues or neurologically affected horses (Schultheiss *et al.*, 1993; Whitwell *et al.*, 1992). Such  
360 techniques can be used as an alternative to immunofluorescence described above and can  
361 also be readily applied to archival frozen or fixed tissue samples. Immunohistochemical  
362 staining for EHV-1 is particularly useful for the simultaneous evaluation of morphological  
363 lesions and the identification of the virus. Immunoperoxidase staining for EHV-1/4 may also  
364 be carried out on infected cell monolayers (van Maanen *et al.*, 2000). Adequate controls must  
365 be included with each immunoperoxidase test run for evaluation of both the method specificity

366 and antibody specificity. ~~In one WOA Reference Laboratory, this method is used routinely~~  
367 ~~for frozen or fixed tissue, using If non-specific rabbit polyclonal sera is used raised against~~  
368 ~~EHV-1. This staining method is not type specific and therefore the staining method~~ needs to  
369 be combined with virus isolation or PCR to discriminate between EHV-1 and EHV-4, ~~however~~  
370 ~~it provides a useful method for rapid diagnosis of EHV-induced abortion.~~

## 371 1.6. Histopathology

372 Histopathological examination of sections of fixed placenta and lung, liver, spleen, adrenal  
373 **gland** and thymus from aborted fetuses and brain and spinal cord from neurologically affected  
374 horses should be carried out. In aborted fetuses, eosinophilic intranuclear inclusion bodies  
375 present within bronchiolar epithelium or in cells at the periphery of areas of hepatic necrosis  
376 are consistent with a diagnosis of herpesvirus infection. The characteristic microscopic lesion  
377 associated with EHV-1 neuropathy is a degenerative thrombotic vasculitis of small blood  
378 vessels in the brain or spinal cord (perivascular cuffing and infiltration by inflammatory cells,  
379 endothelial proliferation and necrosis, and thrombus formation).

## 380 2. Serological tests

381 EHV-1 and EHV-4 are endemic in most parts of the world and seroprevalence is high, however  
382 serological testing of paired sera can be useful for diagnosis of ER in horses. A positive diagnosis is  
383 based on the demonstration of significant increases (four-fold or greater) in antibody titres in paired sera  
384 taken during the acute and convalescent stages of the disease. The results of tests performed on sera  
385 from a single collection date are, in most cases, impossible to interpret with any degree of confidence.  
386 The initial (acute phase) serum sample should be taken as soon as possible after the onset of clinical  
387 signs, and the second (convalescent phase) serum sample should be taken 2–4 weeks later.

388 'Acute phase' sera from mares after abortion or from horses with EHV-1 neurological disease may  
389 already contain maximal titres of EHV-1 antibody, with no increase in titres detectable in sera collected  
390 at later dates. In such cases, serological testing of paired serum samples from clinically unaffected  
391 cohort members of the herd may prove useful for retrospective diagnosis of ER within the herd.

392 ~~Finally, the serological detection of antibodies to EHV-1 in heart or umbilical cord blood or other fluids~~  
393 ~~of equine fetuses can be of diagnostic value in cases of abortion especially when the fetus is virologically~~  
394 ~~negative. The EHV 1/4 nucleic acid may be identified from these tissues by PCR.~~

395 Serum antibody levels to EHV-1/4 may be determined by virus neutralisation (VN) (Thomson *et al.*,  
396 1976), complement fixation tests (CFT) (Thomson *et al.*, 1976) or enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay  
397 (ELISA) (Crabb & Studdert, 1995). ~~There are no internationally recognised reagents or standardised~~  
398 ~~techniques for performing any of the serological tests for detection of EHV-1/4 antibody; titre~~  
399 ~~determinations on the same serum may differ from one laboratory to another. Furthermore, The CF and~~  
400 ~~VN tests detect antibodies that are cross-reactive between EHV-1 and EHV-4. Nonetheless, the~~  
401 ~~demonstration of a four-fold or greater rise in antibody titre to EHV-1 or EHV-4 during the course of a~~  
402 ~~clinical illness provides serological confirmation of recent infection with one of the viruses. Commercial~~  
403 ~~ELISAs that distinguish EHV-1 and EHV-4 antibodies are available but less widely used than the CF~~  
404 ~~and VN tests. Unlike other alphaherpesviruses, DIVA ELISAs, which have been very useful in~~  
405 ~~eradication programmes for bovine rhinotracheitis and pseudorabies (Aujeszky's disease), have not~~  
406 ~~been developed for EHV-1/4. An ELISA using a synthetic peptide for glycoprotein E as an antigen~~  
407 ~~(Andoh *et al.*, 2013) is used as DIVA<sup>1</sup> for horses vaccinated with a modified live EHV-1 vaccine licensed~~  
408 ~~in Japan, that lacks the glycoprotein E gene.~~

409 ~~The microneutralisation test is a VN and the CF tests are~~ widely used and sensitive serological assays  
410 for detecting EHV-1/4 antibody and will thus be described here.

### 411 2.1. Virus neutralisation test

412 This test is most commonly performed in flat-bottom 96-well microtitre plates (tissue culture  
413 grade) using a constant dose of virus and doubling dilutions of equine test sera. At least two

---

<sup>1</sup> DIVA: detection of infection in vaccinated animals



414 three replicate wells for each serum dilution are required. Heat-inactivated maintenance  
415 medium with a concentration of 2% FCS (HIMM) Serum-free MEM is used throughout as a  
416 diluent. Virus stocks of known titre are diluted just before use to contain 100 TCID<sub>50</sub> (50%  
417 tissue culture infective dose) in 25 µl. Monolayers of ~~E-Derm or~~ RK-13 cells are prepared  
418 monodispersed with EDTA/trypsin and resuspended at a concentration of 5 × 10<sup>5</sup>/ml. Note  
419 that RK-13 cells can be used with EHV-1 but do not show CPE with EHV-4. Antibody positive  
420 and negative control equine sera and controls for cell viability, virus infectivity, and test serum  
421 cytotoxicity, must be included in each assay. End-point VN titres of antibody are calculated by  
422 determining the reciprocal of the highest serum dilution that protects ≥75% 100% of the cell  
423 monolayer from virus destruction in ~~both of the~~ replicate wells.

424 Serum toxicity may be encountered in samples from horses repeatedly vaccinated with a  
425 commercial vaccine prepared from EHV-1 grown up in RK-13 cells. This can give rise to  
426 difficulties in interpretation of test reactions at lower serum dilutions. The problem can be  
427 overcome using E-Derm or other non-rabbit kidney derived cell line.

### 428 **2.1.1. Test procedure**

429 A suitable test procedure is as follows:

- 430 i) Prepare semi-confluent monolayers in tissue culture microtitre plates.
- 431 ii) Inactivate test and control sera for 30 minutes in a water bath at 56°C.
- 432 iii) Add 40 25-µl of HIMM serum free MEM to all wells of the microtitre assay plates.
- 433 iv) For test sample titration, pipette 25 40 µl of each test serum into ~~duplicate~~ triplicate  
434 wells of both rows A and B of the plate. The first two rows serve as the dilution of  
435 the test serum and the third row serves as the serum toxicity control ~~and the second~~  
436 ~~row as the first dilution of the test.~~ Make doubling dilutions of each serum starting  
437 with row B and proceeding to the bottom of the plate by sequential mixing and  
438 transfer of 25 40 µl to each subsequent row of wells. ~~Six sera can be assayed in~~  
439 ~~each plate.~~ Add 40µl of HIMM to the serum control rows.
- 440 v) Add 40 25-µl of the appropriately diluted EHV-1 ~~or EHV-4~~ virus stock to each all  
441 wells (100 TCID<sub>50</sub>/well) of the test plate except those of row A, which are the serum  
442 controls ~~wells~~. Note that the final serum dilutions, after addition of virus, run from a  
443 starting dilution of 1/4 to 1/256. A separate control plate should include titration of  
444 both a negative and positive (high and low) horse ~~serum sera~~ of known titre, cell  
445 control (no virus), and a back titration of virus control (no serum), and a virus  
446 ~~titration using six wells per log dilution (100 TCID<sub>50</sub> to 0.01 TCID<sub>50</sub>/well)~~ calculate  
447 the actual amount of virus used in the test
- 448 vi) Incubate the plates for 1 hour at 37°C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere. ~~Add 50 µl of the~~  
449 ~~prepared E-Derm or RK-13 cell suspension (5 × 10<sup>5</sup> cells/ml) in MEM/10% FCS to~~  
450 ~~each well.~~
- 451 vii) Transfer 50 µl from each well of the test and control plates to the tissue culture  
452 microtitre plates.
- 453 viii) Incubate the plates for 2–4–5 days at 37°C in an atmosphere of 5% CO<sub>2</sub> in air.
- 454 ix) Examine the plates microscopically for CPE and record the results on a worksheet.  
455 Confirm the validity of the test by establishing that the working dilution of stock virus  
456 is at 100 TCID<sub>50</sub>/well, that the (high and low) positive control sera are within one  
457 well of their pre-determined titre and that the negative control serum is negative at  
458 a 1/4 dilution. This takes approximately 72 hours. If at this stage the antigen is too  
459 weak the virus concentration may be increased by extending the incubation period  
460 up to 5 days. If the antigen is too strong the test must be repeated.
- 461 Wells are scored as positive for neutralisation of virus if ≥ 75% of the cell monolayer  
462 remains intact. The highest dilution of serum resulting in ≥ 75% neutralisation of  
463 virus (<25% CPE) in replicate wells is the end-point titre for that serum. Examine  
464 the plates microscopically for CPE and record the results on a worksheet.



- 465 x) Alternatively, the cell monolayers can be scored for CPE after fixing and staining  
466 as follows: after removal of the culture fluid, immerse the plates for 15 minutes in  
467 a solution containing 2 mg/ml crystal violet, 10% formalin, 45% methanol, and 45%  
468 water. Then, rinse the plates vigorously under a stream of running tap water. Wells  
469 containing intact cell monolayers stain blue, while monolayers destroyed by virus  
470 do not stain. ~~Verify that the cell control, positive serum control, and serum  
471 cytotoxicity control wells stain blue, that the virus control and negative serum  
472 control wells are not stained, and that the actual amount of virus added to each  
473 well is between  $10^{4.5}$  and  $10^{2.5}$  TCID<sub>50</sub>. Wells are scored as positive for  
474 neutralisation of virus if 100% of the cell monolayer remains intact. The highest  
475 dilution of serum resulting in complete neutralisation of virus (no CPE) in both  
476 duplicate wells is the end-point titre for that serum.~~
- 477 xi) Calculate the neutralisation titre for each test serum, and compare acute and  
478 convalescent phase serum titres from each animal for a four-fold or greater  
479 increase.

## 480 **2.2. Complement fixation test**

481 The CFT can be used for the detection and quantification of antibodies against to FHV-1. The  
482 test determines whether an antigen and an antibody are capable of forming a complex. The  
483 presence of an immune complex is revealed by the detector system, which consists of guinea-  
484 pig complement and sensitised sheep red blood cells (SRBCs) coated with rabbit haemolytic  
485 serum (haemolysin). In the absence of antibodies against equine herpesvirus, no  
486 antibody/antigen complex is formed, the complement remains free in the solution and the  
487 sensitised SRBCs become lysed. In the presence of antibodies against equine herpesvirus,  
488 an antibody/antigen complex is formed, the complement becomes fixed and is therefore  
489 unable to lyse the SRBCs. They subsequently form a button at the bottom of the test well.

490 Guinea-pig complement, rabbit haemolytic serum, complement fixation diluent (CFD) and  
491 bovine serum albumin (BSA) can be obtained commercially. The dilution of guinea-pig  
492 complement that has activity at 3 HD (haemolytic dose) in the presence of sensitised SRBCs  
493 should be optimised. The recommended dilution of rabbit haemolytic serum (or the working  
494 dilution) is sometimes provided by the supplier. However, the optimal dilution of haemolysin  
495 should be determined with the in use reagents (complement etc.) so that the test can be  
496 performed reproducibly. The optimum concentration of antigen to be used in the test should  
497 be determined using an antigen versus antibody chequerboard technique and by testing a  
498 panel of known positive sera.

499 The test is performed in U bottomed microtitre plates. Paired sera should be assayed on the  
500 same plate. An antibody positive serum should be included as a control on each plate. All sera  
501 are tested on a second plate containing all components except virus to check for anti-  
502 complementary activity. A back titration of the working dilution (3 HD) of complement to 2 HD,  
503 1 HD, 0.5 HD is set up in duplicate wells on the complement control plate (eight wells in total).  
504 An SRBC control is set up in eight wells.

### 505 **2.2.3. Preparation of samples**

- 506 i) Samples and controls are prepared by adding 4 volumes (600 µl) of CFD to 1  
507 volume (150 µl) of test sera to give a 1/5 dilution.
- 508 ii) Diluted serum is inactivated for 30 minutes at 60°C to destroy the naturally  
509 occurring complement.

### 510 **2.2.4. Test procedure**

- 511 i) Prepare the test plate and anti-complementary plate by adding 25 µl 0.05%  
512 BSA/CFD to all wells except the first column (H).
- 513 ii) Add 50 µl of 0.05% BSA/CFD to the eight wells of the complement control (back  
514 titration).
- 515 iii) Add 75 µl of 0.05% BSA/CFD to eight wells of cell control.

- 516 iv) Add 50 µl of the diluted inactivated test serum and controls to the first well of each  
517 row on both the test and anti-complementary plates. Serial doubling dilutions are  
518 then made by transferring 25 µl across the plate and discarding the final 25 ml.
- 519 v) Place the microtitre plates on ice for addition of antigen and complement.
- 520 vi) Add 25 µl of antigen (diluted to working strength in 0.05% BSA/CFD) to the test  
521 plates.
- 522 vii) Add 25 µl of 0.05% BSA/CFD to all wells of the anti-complementary plate to  
523 compensate for lack of antigen.
- 524 viii) Add 25 µl of guinea-pig complement diluted in 0.05% BSA/CFD to 3 HD to all wells  
525 except the complement control and SRBC control.
- 526 ix) Back titrate the working dilution of 3 HD complement to 2 HD, 1 HD and 0.5 HD in  
527 200 µl volumes. Add 25 µl of each dilution to the appropriate wells.
- 528 x) Incubate all plates at 4°C overnight.

### 529 **2.2.5. Preparation and addition of sheep blood**

- 530 i) SRBCs collected into Alsever's solution are washed twice in 0.05% BSA/PBS  
531 solution.
- 532 ii) Gently resuspend the SRBCs in 5–10 ml 0.05% BSA/CFD solution. Dilute to 2%  
533 SRBCs (v/v packed cells) in BSA/CFD solution.
- 534 iii) Mix the 2% SRBCs with an equal volume of BSA/CFD solution containing  
535 haemolysin at its optimal sensitising concentration to give a 1% SRBC solution.  
536 Prepare an appropriate volume of this solution by allowing 3 ml per microtitre plate.
- 537 iv) Incubate at 37°C for 10 minutes. Store the 1% sensitised SRBCs overnight at 4°C.
- 538 v) The following day, incubate the 1% sensitised SRBCs at 37°C for 30 minutes.  
539 During the final 20 minutes of this incubation, transfer the test plates from 4°C to  
540 37°C.
- 541 vi) At the end of the 30-minute incubation, add 25 ml of 1% sensitised SRBCs to all  
542 plates. Mix on a plate shaker for 30 seconds.
- 543 vii) Incubate the plates at 37°C for 30 minutes. Shake the plates after 15 minutes and  
544 at the end of this incubation (a total of three times).
- 545 viii) Incubate the plates at 4°C for 2 hours to allow the cells to settle.
- 546 ix) Read and record the test results after 2 hours.

### 547 **2.2.6. Reading results**

- 548 i) Confirm the validity of the test by establishing that the working dilution of  
549 complement is at 3 HD: 100% lysis at 3 HD and 2 HD, and 50% lysis at 1 HD.  
550 Distinct buttons should be visible in the eight wells of the SRBC control.
- 551 ii) There must be 100% lysis observed at the 1/5 dilution for the negative control (<5).  
552 The antibody titre of the positive control serum must read within one well of its  
553 predetermined titre.
- 554 iii) Confirm that there are no buttons visible on the anti-complementary plates.  
555 Buttoning indicates either the presence of residual native complement in the  
556 sample or that there is a non-specific complement fixing effect occurring. Sera that  
557 show anti-complementary activity should be retested and treated as described  
558 below.
- 559 iv) In the test wells, buttoning indicates the presence of antibodies in the serum. The  
560 antibody titre is the dilution at which there is 50% buttoning and 50% lysis  
561 observed.

562 **2.2.7. Treatment of samples showing anti-complementary activity**

563 i) Add 50 µl of guinea-pig complement to 150 µl of the serum showing anti-  
564 complementary activity.

565 ii) Incubate the sample at 37°C for 30 minutes.

566 iii) Add 550 µl of CFD (1:5 dilution).

567 iv) Heat inactivate at 60°C for 30 minutes.

568 **C. REQUIREMENTS FOR VACCINES**

569 **1. Background**

570 Both live attenuated and inactivated vaccines are available for use in horses as licensed, commercially  
571 prepared products for use in reducing the impact of disease in horses caused by EHV-1/4 infection. The  
572 products contain different permutations of EHV-1 and EHV-4 and some also include equine influenza  
573 virus.

574 Clinical experience has demonstrated that vaccination can be useful for reducing clinical signs of  
575 respiratory disease and incidence of abortion, however none of the vaccines protect against neurological  
576 disease. Multiple doses repeated annually, of each of the currently marketed ER vaccines are  
577 recommended by their respective manufacturers. Vaccination schedules vary with a particular vaccine.

578 The indications stated on the product label for use of several available vaccines for ER are either as a  
579 preventative of herpesvirus-associated respiratory disease, or as an aid in the prevention of abortion, or  
580 both. A minority of ~~Only four~~ vaccine products have met the regulatory requirements for claiming efficacy  
581 in providing protection from herpesvirus abortion as a result of successful vaccination and challenge  
582 experiments in pregnant mares. None of the vaccine products have been demonstrated to prevent the  
583 occurrence of neurological disease sometimes associated with EHV-1 infection.

584 Guidelines for the production of veterinary vaccines are given in Chapter 1.1.8 *Principles of veterinary*  
585 *vaccine production*. The guidelines given here and in chapter 1.1.8 are intended to be general in nature  
586 and may be supplemented by national and regional requirements.

587 **2. Outline of production and minimum requirements for vaccines**

588 **2.1. Characteristics of the seed**

589 The master seed virus (MSV) for ER vaccines must be prepared from strains of EHV-1 and/or  
590 EHV-4 that have been positively and unequivocally identified ~~by both serological and genetic~~  
591 ~~tests~~. Seed virus must be propagated in a cell line approved for equine vaccine production by  
592 the appropriate regulatory agency. A complete record of original source (including isolate  
593 number, location, year of isolation), passage history, medium used for propagation, etc., shall  
594 be kept for the master seed preparations of both the virus(es) and cell stock(s) intended for  
595 use in vaccine production.

596 **2.1.1. Biological characteristics of the master seed**

597 Permanently stored stocks of both MSV and master cell stock (MCS) used for vaccine  
598 production must be demonstrated to be pure, safe and, in the case of MSV, also  
599 immunogenic.

600 Generally, the fifth passage from the MSV and the twentieth passage from the MCS are  
601 the highest allowed for vaccine production. Results of all quality control tests on master  
602 seeds must be recorded and made a part of the licensee's permanent records.

603 **2.1.2. Quality criteria**

604 Tests for master seed purity include prescribed procedures that demonstrate the virus  
605 and cell seed stocks to be free from bacteria, fungi, mycoplasmas, and extraneous  
606 viruses. Special tests must be performed to confirm the absence of equine arteritis virus,  
607 equine infectious anaemia virus, equine influenza virus, equine herpesvirus-2, -3, and -  
608 5, equine rhinitis A and B viruses, the alphaviruses of equine encephalomyelitis, bovine  
609 viral diarrhoea virus (BVDV – common contaminant of bovine serum), and porcine  
610 parvovirus (PPV – potential contaminant of porcine trypsin). The purity check should  
611 also include the exclusion of the presence of EHV-1 from EHV-4 MSV and *vice versa*.

612 **2.1.3. Validation as a vaccine strain**

613 Tests for immunogenicity of the EHV-1/4 MSV stocks should be performed in horses on  
614 an experimental test vaccine prepared from the highest passage level of the MSV  
615 allowed for use in vaccine production. The test for MSV immunogenicity consists of  
616 vaccination of horses with low antibody titres (< 1:24 by VN test) to EHV-1/4, with doses  
617 of the test vaccine that will be recommended on the final product label (Goodman *et al.*,  
618 2006; Van de Walle *et al.*, 2010). Second serum samples should be obtained and tested  
619 for significant increases in neutralising antibody titre against the virus, 21 days after the  
620 final dose.

621 Samples of each lot of MSV to be used for preparation of live attenuated ER vaccines  
622 must be tested for safety in horses determined to be susceptible to the virulent wild-type  
623 virus, including pregnant mares in the last 4 months of gestation. Vaccine safety must  
624 be demonstrated in a 'safety field trial' in horses of various ages from three different  
625 geographical areas. The safety trial should be conducted by independent veterinarians  
626 using a prelicensing batch of vaccine. EHV-1 vaccines making a claim for efficacy in  
627 controlling abortion must be tested for safety in a significant number of late gestation  
628 pregnant mares, using the vaccination schedule that will be recommended by the  
629 manufacturer for the final vaccine product.

630 **2.2. Method of manufacture**

631 **2.2.1. Procedure**

632 A detailed protocol of the methods of manufacture to be followed in the preparation of  
633 vaccines for ER must be compiled, approved, and filed as an Outline of Production with  
634 the appropriate licensing agency. Specifics of the methods of manufacture for ER  
635 vaccines will differ with the type (live or inactivated) and composition (EHV-1 only, EHV-  
636 1 and EHV-4, EHV-4 and equine influenza viruses, etc.) of each individual product, and  
637 also with the manufacturer.

638 **2.2.2. Requirements for ingredients**

639 Cells, virus, culture medium, and medium supplements of animal origin that are used  
640 for the preparation of production lots of vaccine must be derived from bulk stocks that  
641 have passed the prescribed tests for bacterial, fungal, and mycoplasma sterility;  
642 nontumorigenicity; and absence of extraneous viral agents.

643 **2.2.3. Final product batch tests**

644 i) Sterility

645 Samples taken from each batch of completed vaccine are tested for bacteria, fungi,  
646 and mycoplasma contamination. Procedures to establish that the vaccine is free  
647 from extraneous viruses are also required; such tests should include inoculation of  
648 cell cultures that allow detection of the common equine viruses, as well as  
649 techniques for the detection of BVDV and PPV in ingredients of animal origin used  
650 in the production of the batch of vaccine.

- 651 ii) Identity  
652 Identity tests shall demonstrate that no other vaccine strain is present when several  
653 strains are propagated in a laboratory used in the production of multivalent  
654 vaccines.
- 655 iii) Safety  
656 Safety tests shall consist of detecting any abnormal local or systemic adverse  
657 reactions to the vaccine in the host species by all vaccination route(s). Tests to  
658 assure safety of each production batch of ER vaccine must demonstrate complete  
659 inactivation of virus (for inactivated vaccines) as well as a level of residual virus-  
660 killing agent that does not exceed the maximal allowable limit (e.g. 0.2% for  
661 formaldehyde).
- 662 iv) Batch potency  
663 Batch potency is examined on the final formulated product. ~~Batch control of  
664 antigenic potency for EHV-1 vaccines only may be tested by measuring the ability  
665 of dilutions of the vaccine to protect hamsters from challenge with a lethal dose of  
666 hamster adapted EHV-1 virus. Although potency testing on production batches of  
667 ER vaccine may also be performed by vaccination of susceptible horses followed  
668 by assay for seroconversion, the recent availability of virus type specific MAb has  
669 permitted development of less costly and more rapid *in-vitro* immunoassays exist  
670 for antigenic potency. The basis for such *in-vitro* assays for ER vaccine potency is  
671 the determination, by use of the specific MAb, of the presence of at least the  
672 minimal amount of viral antigen within each batch of vaccine that correlates with  
673 the required level of protection (or seroconversion rate) in a standard animal test  
674 for potency.~~

## 675 2.3. Requirements for authorisation/registration/licencing

### 676 2.3.1. Manufacturing process

677 For registration of vaccine, all relevant details concerning manufacture of the vaccine  
678 and quality control testing (see Sections C.2.1 and C.2.2) should be submitted to the  
679 authorities. This information shall be provided from three consecutive vaccine batches  
680 with a volume not less than 1/3 of the typical industrial batch volume.

### 681 2.3.2 Safety requirements

682 Vaccine safety should be evaluated in vaccinated animals using different assays (see  
683 Section 2.2.3.iii).

### 684 2.3.3 Efficacy requirements

685 Vaccine efficacy (protection) is estimated in vaccinated animals directly by evaluating  
686 their resistance to live pathogen challenge.

### 687 2.3.4 Duration of immunity

688 As part of the licensing or marketing authorisation procedure, the manufacturer may be  
689 required to demonstrate the duration of immunity (DOI) of a given vaccine by either  
690 challenge or alternative test at the end of the claimed period of protection.

691 Tests to establish the duration of immunity to EHV-1/4 or EHV1/4 achieved by  
692 immunisation with each batch of vaccine are not required. The results of many reported  
693 observations indicate that immunity induced by vaccination against EHV-1 or EHV  
694 induced immunity to EHV-1/4 is not more than a few months in duration; these  
695 observations are reflected in the frequency of revaccination recommended on ER  
696 vaccine product labels.

697 **2.3.5 Stability**

698 As part of the licensing or marketing authorisation procedure, the manufacturer will be  
699 required to demonstrate the stability of all the vaccine's properties at the end of the  
700 claimed shelf-life period. Storage temperature shall be indicated, and warnings should  
701 be given if product is damaged by freezing or ambient temperature.

702 At least three production batches of vaccine should be tested for shelf life before  
703 reaching a conclusion on the vaccine's stability. When stored at 4°C, inactivated vaccine  
704 products generally maintain their original antigenic potency for at least 1 year.  
705 Lyophilised preparations of the live virus vaccine are also stable during storage for 1  
706 year at 4°C. Following reconstitution, live virus vaccine is unstable and cannot be stored  
707 without loss of potency.

708 **Note:** current vaccines are authorised for prevention of respiratory disease or as an aid in the prevention  
709 of abortion. Unless the vaccine's ability to prevent neurological disease is under investigation, the virus  
710 used in the challenge experiments should not be a strain with a history of inducing neurological disease.

711 **REFERENCES**

712 ANDOH K., TAKASUGI M., MAHMOUD H.Y., HATTORI S., TERADA Y., NOGUCHI K., SHIMODA H., BANNAI H.,  
713 TSUJIMURA K., MATSUMURA T., KONDO T. & MAEDA K. (2013). Identification of a major immunogenic region  
714 of equine herpesvirus-1 glycoprotein E and its application to enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. *Vet.*  
715 *Microbiol.*, **164**, 18–26.

716 ALLEN G.P. (2007). Development of a real-time polymerase chain reaction assay for rapid diagnosis of  
717 neuropathogenic strains of equine herpesvirus-1. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **19**, 69–72.

718 ALLEN G.P. & BRYANS J.T. (1986). Molecular epidemiology, pathogenesis and prophylaxis of equine  
719 herpesvirus-1 infections. *In: Progress in Veterinary Microbiology and Immunology*, Vol. 2, Pandey R.,  
720 ed. Karger, Basel, Switzerland & New York, USA, 78–144.

721 ALLEN G.P., KYDD J.H., SLATER J.D. & SMITH K.C. (1999). Recent advances in understanding the  
722 pathogenesis, epidemiology, and immunological control of equid herpesvirus-1 (EHV-1) abortion.  
723 *Equine Infect. Dis.*, **8**, 129–146.

724 ALLKOFER A., GARVEY M., RYAN E., LYONS R., RYAN M., LUKASEVICIUTE G., WALSH C., VENNER M. &  
725 CULLINANE A. (2021). Primary vaccination in foals: a comparison of the serological response to equine  
726 influenza and equine herpesvirus vaccines administered concurrently or 2 weeks apart. *Arch. Virol.*,  
727 **166**, 571–579.

728 ATASEVEN V.S., DAĞALP S.B., GÜZEL M., BAŞARAN Z., TAN M.T. & GERAGHTY B. (2009). Prevalence of  
729 equine herpesvirus-1 and equine herpesvirus-4 infections in equidae species in Turkey as determined  
730 by ELISA and multiplex nested PCR. *Res. Vet. Sci.*, **86**, 339–344.

731 BALASURIYA U.B.R., LEE P.-Y.A., TSAI Y.-L., TSAI C.-F., SHEN Y.-H., CHANG H.-F. G., SKILLMAN A., WANG  
732 H.-T.T., PRONOST S. & ZHANG Y. (2017). Translation of a laboratory-validated equine herpesvirus-1  
733 specific real-time PCR assay into an insulated isothermal polymerase chain reaction (iiPCR) assay for  
734 point-of-need diagnosis using POKKIT™ nucleic acid analyzer. *J. Virol. Methods*, **241**, 58–63.

735 BANNAI H., MAE N., ODE H., NEMOTO M., TSUJIMURA K., YAMANAKA T., KONDO T. & MATSUMURA T. (2014).  
736 Successful control of winter pyrexias caused by equine herpesvirus type 1 in Japanese training centers  
737 by achieving high vaccination coverage. *Clin. Vaccine Immunol.*, **21**, 1070–1076.

738 BANNAI H., TSUJIMURA K., NEMOTO M., OHTA M., YAMANAKA T., KOKADO H. & MATSUMURA T. (2019).  
739 Epizootiological investigation of equine herpesvirus type 1 infection among Japanese racehorses before  
740 and after the replacement of an inactivated vaccine with a modified live vaccine. *BMC Vet. Res.*, **15**,  
741 280.



- 742 BARBIC L., LOJKIC I., STEVANOVIC V., BEDEKOVIC T., STARESINA V., LEMO N., LOJKIC M. & MADIC J. (2012).  
743 Two outbreaks of neuropathogenic equine herpesvirus type 1 with breed-dependent clinical signs. *Vet.*  
744 *Rec.*, **170**, 227.
- 745 BRESGEN C., LÄMMER M., WAGNER B., OSTERRIEDER N. & DAMIANI A.M. (2012). Serological responses  
746 and clinical outcome after vaccination of mares and foals with equine herpesvirus type 1 and 4 (EHV-1  
747 and EHV-4) vaccines. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **160**, 9–16.
- 748 COUROUCÉ A., NORMAND C., TESSIER C., POMARES R., THÉVENOT J., MARCILLAUD-PITEL C., LEGRAND L.,  
749 PITEL P.H., PRONOST S. & LUPO C. (2023). Equine Herpesvirus-1 Outbreak During a Show-Jumping  
750 Competition: A Clinical and Epidemiological Study. *J. Equine Vet. Sci.*, **128**, 104869.
- 751 BORCHERS K. & SLATER J. (1993). A nested PCR for the detection and differentiation of EHV-1 and EHV-  
752 4. *J. Virol. Methods*, **45**, 331–336.
- 753 BRYANS J.T. & ALLEN G.P. (1988). Herpesviral diseases of the horse. In: Herpesvirus Diseases of  
754 Animals, Wittman G., ed. Kluwer, Boston, USA, 176–229.
- 755 CRABB B.S., MACPHERSON C.M., REUBEL G.H., BROWNING G.F., STUDDERT M.J. & DRUMMER H.E. (1995).  
756 A type-specific serological test to distinguish antibodies to equine herpesviruses 4 and 1. *Arch. Virol.*,  
757 **140**, 245–258.
- 758 CRABB B.S. & STUDDERT M.J. (1995). Equine herpesviruses 4 (equine rhinopneumonitis virus) and 1  
759 (equine abortion virus). *Adv. Virus Res.*, **45**, 153–190.
- 760 DIALLO I.S., HEWITSON G., WRIGHT L., RODWELL B.J. & CORNEY B.G. (2006). Detection of equine  
761 herpesvirus type 1 using a real-time polymerase chain reaction. *J. Virol. Methods*, **131**, 92–98.
- 762 DIALLO I.S., HEWITSON G., WRIGHT L.L., KELLY M.A., RODWELL B.J. & CORNEY B.G. (2007). Multiplex real-  
763 time PCR for detection and differentiation of equid herpesvirus 1 (EHV-1) and equid herpesvirus 4 (EHV-  
764 4). *Vet. Microbiol.*, **123**, 93–103.
- 765 EL BRINI Z., FASSI F. H. I. O. & PAILLOT R. (2021). Seroprevalence of Equine Herpesvirus 1 (EHV-1) and  
766 Equine Herpesvirus 4 (EHV-4) in the Northern Moroccan Horse Populations. *Animals (Basel)*, **11**, 2851.
- 767 FÉDÉRATION EQUESTRE INTERNATIONALE (FEI) (2021). Management of an EHV-1 outbreak at FEI events  
768 and its international impact. *Vet. Rec.*, **189**, e905. <https://doi.org/10.1002/vetr.905>
- 769 FOOTE C.E., GILKERSON J.R., WHALLEY J.M. & LOVE D.N. (2003). Seroprevalence of equine herpesvirus  
770 1 in mares and foals on a large Hunter Valley stud farm in years pre- and postvaccination. *Aust. Vet. J.*,  
771 **81**, 283–288.
- 772 GARVEY M., LYONS R. & HECTOR R.D. (2019). Molecular Characterisation of Equine Herpesvirus 1  
773 Isolates from Cases of Abortion, Respiratory and Neurological Disease in Ireland between 1990 and  
774 2017. *Pathogens*, **8**, 7.
- 775 GILDEA S., SANCHEZ HIGGINS M.J., JOHNSON G., WALSH C. & CULLINANE A. (2016). Concurrent vaccination  
776 against equine influenza and equine herpesvirus – a practical approach. *Influenza Other Respir.*  
777 *Viruses*, **10**, 433–437.
- 778 GILKERSON J.R., WHALLEY J.M., DRUMMER H.E., STUDDERT M.J. & LOVE D.N. (1999). Epidemiology of  
779 EHV-1 and EHV-4 in the mare and foal populations on a Hunter Valley stud farm: are mares the source  
780 of EHV-1 for unweaned foals. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **68**, 27–34.
- 781 GOODMAN L.B., WAGNER B., FLAMINIO M.J., SUSSMAN K.H., METZGER S.M., HOLLAND R. & OSTERRIEDER  
782 N. (2006). Comparison of the efficacy of inactivated combination and modified-live virus vaccines  
783 against challenge infection with neuropathogenic equine herpesvirus type 1 (EHV-1). *Vaccine*, **24**,  
784 3636–3645.

- 785 GRYSPEERDT A., VANDERKERCKHOVE A., VAN DOORSSELAERE J., VAN DE WALLE G., & NAUWYNCK H.  
786 (2011). Description of an unusually large outbreak of nervous system disorders caused by equine  
787 herpesvirus 1 (EHV1) in 2009 in Belgium. *Vlaams Diergeneeskundig Tijdschrift*, **80**, 147–153.
- 788 FRITSCHÉ A.K. & BORCHERS K. (2011). Detection of neuropathogenic strains of equid herpesvirus 1 (EHV-  
789 1) associated with abortions in Germany. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **147**, 176–180.
- 790 GUNN H.M. (1992). A direct fluorescent antibody technique to diagnose abortion caused by equine  
791 herpesvirus. *Irish Vet. J.*, **44**, 37–40.
- 792 HELDENS J.G., HANNANT D., CULLINANE A.A., PRENDERGAST M.J., MUMFORD J.A., NELLY M., KYDD J.H.,  
793 WESTSTRATE M.W. & VAN DEN HOVEN R. (2001). Clinical and virological evaluation of the efficacy of an  
794 inactivated EHV1 and EHV4 whole virus vaccine (Duvaxyn EHV1,4). Vaccination/challenge experiments  
795 in foals and pregnant mares. *Vaccine*, **19**, 4307–4317.
- 796 HENNINGER R.W., REED S.M., SAVILLE W.J., ALLEN G.P., HASS G.F., KOHN C.W. & SOFALY C. (2007).  
797 Outbreak of neurologic disease caused by equine herpesvirus-1 at a university equestrian center. *J.*  
798 *Vet. Intern. Med.*, **21**, 157–165.
- 799 GOODMAN L.B., LOREGIAN A., PERKINS G.A., NUGENT J., BUCKLES E.L., MERCORELLI B., KYDD J.H., PALÙ  
800 G., SMITH K.C., OSTERRIEDER N. & DAVIS-POYNTER N. (2007). A point mutation in a herpesvirus  
801 polymerase determines neuropathogenicity. *PLoS Pathog.*, **3** (11), e160.
- 802 HARTLEY C.A., WILKS C.R., STUDDERT M.J. & GILKERSON J.R. (2005). [Comparison of antibody detection](#)  
803 [assays for the diagnosis of equine herpesvirus 1 and 4 infections in horses](#). *Am. J. Vet. Res.*, **66**, 921–  
804 928.
- 805 HUSSEY S.B., CLARK R., LUNN K.F., BREATHNACH C., SOBOLL G., WHALLEY J.M. & LUNN D.P. (2006).  
806 Detection and quantification of equine herpesvirus-1 viremia and nasal shedding by real-time  
807 polymerase chain reaction. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.*, **18**, 335–342.
- 808 KYDD J. H., WATRANG E. & HANNANT D. (2003). Pre-infection frequencies of equine herpesvirus-1  
809 specific, cytotoxic T lymphocytes correlate with protection against abortion following experimental  
810 infection of pregnant mares. *Vet. Immunol. Immunopathol.*, **96**, 207–217.
- 811 LAWRENCE G.L., GILKERSON J., LOVE D.N., SABINE M. & WHALLEY J.M. (1994). Rapid, single-step  
812 differentiation of equid herpesvirus 1 and 4 from clinical material using the polymerase chain reaction  
813 and virus-specific primers. *J. Virol. Methods*, **47**, 59–72.
- 814 MCCARTAN C.G., RUSSELL M.M., WOOD J.L. & MUMFORD J.A. (1995). Clinical, serological and virological  
815 characteristics of an outbreak of paresis and neonatal foal disease due to equine herpesvirus-1 on a  
816 stud farm. *Vet. Rec.*, **136**, 7–12.
- 817 MOORE, S.E., Strang, C.L., Marr, C.M., Newton, R. and Cameron, I.J. (2019), Management of an  
818 outbreak of multiple equine herpesvirus type 1 abortions among vaccinated mares on a large UK  
819 Thoroughbred stud farm. *Vet Rec Case Rep*, 7: e000799.
- 820 NEMOTO M., OHTA M., TSUJIMURA K., BANNAI H., YAMANAKA T., KONDO T. & MATSUMURA T. (2011). Direct  
821 detection of equine herpesvirus type 1 DNA in nasal swabs by loop-mediated isothermal amplification  
822 (LAMP). *J. Vet. Med. Sci.*, **73**, 1225–1227.
- 823 NUGENT J., BIRCH-MACHIN I., SMITH K.C., MUMFORD J.A., SWANN Z., NEWTON J.R., BOWDEN R.J., ALLEN  
824 G.P. & DAVIS-POYNTER N. (2006). Analysis of equid herpesvirus 1 strain variation reveals a point  
825 mutation of the DNA polymerase strongly associated with neuropathogenic versus nonneuropathogenic  
826 disease outbreaks. *J. Virol.*, **80**, 4047–4060.
- 827 PRONOST S., LEGRAND L., PITEL P.H., WEGGE B., LISSENS J., FREYMUTH F., RICHARD E. & FORTIER G.  
828 (2012). Outbreak of equine herpesvirus myeloencephalopathy in France: a clinical and molecular  
829 investigation. *Transbound. Emerg. Dis.*, **59**, 256–263.

- 830 PUSTERLA N., KALSCHER M., PETERS D., BIDWELL L., HOLTZ S., BARNUM S. & LAWTON K. (2023).  
831 Investigation of the Frequency of Detection of Common Respiratory Pathogens in Nasal Secretions and  
832 Environment of Healthy Sport Horses Attending a Multi-Week Show Event during the Summer Months.  
833 *Viruses*, **15**, 1225.
- 834 PUSTERLA N., SANDLER-BURTNESS E., BARNUM S., HILL L.A., MENDONSA E., KHAN R., PORTNER D.,  
835 RIDLAND H. & SCHUMACHER S. (2022). Frequency of Detection of Respiratory Pathogens in Nasal  
836 Secretions From Healthy Sport Horses Attending a Spring Show in California. *J. Equine Vet. Sci.* **117**,  
837 104089.
- 838 PUSTERLA N., WILSON W.D., MAPES S., FINNO C., ISBELL D., ARTHUR R.M. & FERRARO G.L. (2009).  
839 Characterization of viral loads, strain and state of equine herpesvirus-1 using real-time PCR in horses  
840 following natural exposure at a racetrack in California. *Vet. J.*, **179**, 230–239.
- 841 O'KEEFE J.S., JULIAN A., MORIARTY K., MURRAY A. & WILKS C.R. (1994). A comparison of the polymerase  
842 chain reaction with standard laboratory methods for the detection of EHV-1 and EHV-4 in archival tissue  
843 samples. *N.Z. Vet. J.*, **42**, 93–96.
- 844 SCHULTHEISS P.C., COLLINS J.K. & CARMAN J. (1993). Use of an immunoperoxidase technique to detect  
845 equine herpesvirus-1 antigen in formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded equine fetal tissues. *J. Vet. Diagn.*  
846 *Invest.*, **5**, 12–15.
- 847 Singh B.K., Ahuja S. & Gulati B.R. (2004). Development of a neutralizing monoclonal antibody-based  
848 blocking ELISA for detection of equine herpesvirus 1 antibodies. *Vet. Res. Commun.*, **28**, 437–446.
- 849 SMITH F.L., WATSON J.L., SPIER S.J., KILCOYNE I., MAPES S., SONDER C. & PUSTERLA N. (2018). Frequency  
850 of shedding of respiratory pathogens in horses recently imported to the United States. *J. Vet. Intern.*  
851 *Med.*, **32**, 1436–1441.
- 852 SMITH K.L., LI Y., BREHENY P., COOK R.F., HENNEY P.J., SELLS S., PRONOST S., LU Z., CROSSLEY B.M.,  
853 TIMONEY P.J. & BALASURIYA U.B. (2012). Development and validation of a new and improved allelic  
854 discrimination real-time PCR assay for the detection of equine herpesvirus-1 (EHV-1) and differentiation  
855 of A2254 from G2254 strains in clinical specimens. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **50**, 1981–1988.
- 856 STRANG C. & NEWTON R. (2017). Control and disease clearance after neurological EHV-1 in the UK. *Vet.*  
857 *Rec.*, **181**, 678–679.
- 858 SUTTON G., GARVEY M., CULLINANE A., JOURDAN M., FORTIER C., MOREAU P., FOURSIN M., GRYSPEERDT  
859 A., MAISONNIER V., MARCILLAUD-PITEL C., LEGRAND L., PAILLOT R. & PRONOST S. (2019). Molecular  
860 Surveillance of EHV-1 Strains Circulating in France during and after the Major 2009 Outbreak in  
861 Normandy Involving Respiratory Infection, Neurological Disorder, and Abortion. *Viruses*, **11**, 916.
- 862 TELFORD E.A.R., WATSON M.S., MCBRIDE K. & DAVISON A.J. (1992). The DNA sequence of equine  
863 herpesvirus-1. *Virology*, **189**, 304–316.
- 864 TELFORD E.A.R., WATSON M.S., PERRY J., CULLINANE A.A. & DAVISON A.J. (1998). The DNA sequence of  
865 equine herpesvirus 4. *J. Gen. Virol.*, **79**, 1197–1203.
- 866 THOMSON G.R., MUMFORD J.A., CAMPBELL J., GRIFFITHS L. & CLAPHAM P. (1976). Serological detection of  
867 equid herpesvirus 1 infections of the respiratory tract. *Equine Vet. J.*, **8**, 58–65.
- 868 THORSTEINSDÓTTIR L., GUÐMUNDSSON G., JENSSON H., TORSTEINSDÓTTIR S. & SVANSSON V. (2021).  
869 Isolation of equid alphaherpesvirus 3 from a horse in Iceland with equine coital exanthema. *Acta Vet.*  
870 *Scand.*, **63**, 6.
- 871 VAN MAANEN C., VREESWIJK J., MOONEN P., BRINKHOF J., DE BOER-LUIJTZE E. & TERPSTRA C. (2000).  
872 Differentiation and genomic and antigenic variation among fetal, respiratory, and neurological isolates  
873 from EHV1 and EHV4 infections in The Netherlands. *Vet. Q.*, **22**, 88–93.

874 VAN MAANEN C., WILLINK D.L., SMEENK L.A., BRINKHOF J. & TERPSTRA C. (2000). An equine herpesvirus  
875 1 (EHV1) abortion storm at a riding school. *Vet. Q.*, **22**, 83–87.

876 VAN DE WALLE G.R., MAY M.A., PETERS S.T., METZGER S.M., ROSAS C.T. & OSTERRIEDER N. (2010). A  
877 vectored equine herpesvirus type 1 (EHV-1) vaccine elicits protective immune responses against EHV-  
878 1 and H3N8 equine influenza virus. *Vaccine*, **28**, 1048–1055. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2009.10.123. Epub  
879 2009 Nov 6.

880 VARRASSO A., DYNON K., FICORILLI N., HARTLEY C.A., STUDDERT M.J. & DRUMMER H.E. (2001).  
881 Identification of equine herpesviruses 1 and 4 by polymerase chain reaction. *Aust. Vet. J.*, **79**, 563–569.

882 WHITWELL K.E., GOWER S.M. & SMITH K.C. (1992). An immunoperoxidase method applied to the  
883 diagnosis of equine herpesvirus abortion, using conventional and rapid microwave techniques. *Equine*  
884 *Vet. J.*, **24**, 10–12.

885 YASUNAGA S., MAEDA K., MATSUMURA T., KONDO T. & KAIK. (2000). Application of a type-specific enzyme-  
886 linked immunosorbent assay for equine herpesvirus types 1 and 4 (EHV-1 and -4) to horse populations  
887 inoculated with inactivated EHV-1 vaccine. *J. Vet. Med. Sci.*, **62**, 687–691.

888 \*  
889 \* \*

890 **NB:** There are WOAHP Reference Laboratories for equine rhinopneumonitis (please consult the WOAHP  
891 Web site:

892 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3>).

893 Please contact the WOAHP Reference Laboratories for any further information on  
894 diagnostic tests, reagents and vaccines for equine rhinopneumonitis  
895 and to submit strains for further characterisation.

896 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 1990. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2017.

## Annexe 14. Chapter 3.8.1. 'Border disease'

### SECTION 3.8.

## ~~OVIDAE AND CAPRINAE~~

---

### CHAPTER 3.8.1.

## BORDER DISEASE

### SUMMARY

Border disease (BD) is a viral disease of sheep and goats first reported in sheep in 1959 from the border region of England and Wales, and since recorded world-wide. Prevalence rates in sheep vary from 5% to 50% between countries and from region to region within countries. Clinical signs include barren ewes, abortions, stillbirths and the birth of small weak lambs. Affected lambs can show ~~and a fine~~ tremor, abnormal body conformation and hairy fleeces (so-called 'hairy-shaker' or 'fuzzy' lambs). Consequently, the disease has sometimes been referred to as 'hairy shaker disease'. Vertical transmission plays an important role in the epidemiology of the disease. Infection of fetuses can result in the birth of persistently infected (PI) lambs. These PI lambs are viraemic, antibody negative and constantly excrete virus. The virus spreads from sheep to sheep, with PI animals being the most potent source of infection. Infection in goats is less common with abortion being the main presenting sign.

BD is caused by the Pestivirus border disease virus (BDV), but in some parts of the world, especially where there is close contact between sheep or goats and cattle, the same clinical signs may be caused by infection with bovine viral diarrhoea virus (BVDV). Therefore the genetic and antigenic differences between BDV and BVDV need to be taken into consideration when investigating disease outbreaks or certifying animals or germplasm for international movement. It is important to identify the viraemic PI animals so that they will not be used for breeding or trading purposes. Serological testing is insufficient. However, it is generally considered that serologically positive, nonviraemic sheep ~~are 'safe', do not present a risk~~ as latent infections are not known to occur in recovered animals. Pregnant seropositive, nonviraemic animals may, however, present a risk by carrying a PI fetus that cannot be detected until after parturition.

**Identification of the agent:** BDV is a species of Pestivirus (Pestivirus ovis) in the family Flaviviridae and is closely related to classical swine fever virus (Pestivirus suis) and BVDV viruses, which are classified in the distinct species: Pestivirus bovis (commonly known as BVDV type 1), Pestivirus tauri (formerly BVDV type 2) and Pestivirus brazilense (BVDV type 3 or Hobi-like pestivirus). Nearly all isolates of BDV are noncytopathogenic in cell culture. There are no defined serotypes but virus isolates exhibit considerable antigenic diversity. A number of separate genotypes have been identified.

Apparently healthy PI sheep resulting from congenital infection can be identified by direct detection of virus or nucleic acid in blood or tissues or by virus isolation in cell culture followed by immunostaining to detect the noncytopathogenic virus.

**Diagnostic methods:** The demonstration of virus by culture and antigen detection may be less reliable in lambs younger than 2 months that have received colostral antibody. Acute infection is usually subclinical and viraemia is transient and difficult to detect. The isolation of virus from



tissues of aborted or stillborn lambs is often difficult but virus can be detected by sensitive reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction methods that are able to detect residual nucleic acid. However, tissues and blood from PI sheep more than a few months old contain high levels of virus, which can be easily identified by isolation and direct methods to detect antigens or nucleic acids. As sheep may be infected with BVDV, it is preferable to use diagnostic assays that are 'pan-pestivirus' reactive and will readily detect all strains of BDV and BVDV.

**Serological tests:** Acute infection with BDV is best confirmed by demonstrating seroconversion using paired or sequential samples from several animals in the group. The enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and virus neutralisation test (VNT) are the most commonly used antibody detection methods. Due to the antigenic differences between BDV and BVDV, assays for the detection of antibodies to BDV, especially by VNT, should preferably be based on a strain of BDV.

**Requirements for vaccines:** There is no standard vaccine for BDV, but a commercial killed whole-virus vaccine has been produced. Ideally, such a vaccine should be suitable for administration to females before breeding for prevention of transplacental infection. The use of BVDV vaccines has been advocated, but the antigenic diversity of BD viruses must be considered. In many instances, the antigenic diversity of BDV strains is sufficiently different to BVDV that a BVDV vaccine is unlikely to provide protection.

BD viruses have contaminated several modified live veterinary vaccines produced in sheep cells or containing sheep serum. This potential hazard should be recognised by manufacturers of biological products.

## A. INTRODUCTION

Border disease virus (BDV) is a *Pestivirus* of the family *Flaviviridae* and is closely related to classical swine fever virus (CSFV) and bovine viral diarrhoea virus (BVDV). There are ~~four~~ a number of officially recognised species, namely – BDV (*Pestivirus ovis*), CSFV (*Pestivirus suis*), BVDV types 1 and 2 (taxonomically known as *Pestivirus bovis* and *Pestivirus tauri*, respectively) and BDV (ICTV, 2016)–BVDV 3 or Hobi-like pestivirus (*Pestivirus brazilense*) (Postler *et al.*, 2023), but a number of other pestiviruses that are considered to be distinct species have been reported. While CSF viruses are predominantly restricted to pigs, examples of there are situations where the other ~~three~~ species have all been recovered from sheep. While the majority of isolates have been identified as BD viruses in areas where sheep or goats are raised in isolation from other species (Vilcek *et al.*, 1997), in regions where there is close contact between small ruminants and cattle, BVDV may be frequently identified (Carlsson, 1991). Nearly all virus isolates of BDV are noncytopathogenic, although occasional cytopathic viruses have been isolated (Vantsis *et al.*, 1976). BDV spreads naturally among sheep by the oro-nasal route and by vertical transmission. It is principally a cause of congenital disease in sheep and goats, but can also cause acute and persistent infections. Infection is less common in goats, in which persistent infection is rare as abortion is the main presenting sign. Pigs may also be infected by pestiviruses other than CSFV and antibodies to BDV in pigs may interfere with tests for the diagnosis of CSF (Oguzoglu *et al.*, 2001). Several genotypes of BD viruses from sheep, goats and Pyrenean chamois (*Rupicapra pyrenaica pyrenaica*) have been described. Phylogenetic analysis using computer-assisted nucleotide sequence analysis suggests that genetic variability among BD viruses is greater than within each of the other *Pestivirus* species. Four distinguishable genogroups of BDV have been described as well as putative novel *Pestivirus* genotypes from Tunisian sheep and a goat. At least eight BDV genotypes have been described (BDV type 1 to BDV type 8). Other ovine pestiviruses have been identified that are responsible for BD-like syndromes such as Tunisian and Tunisian-like, Aydin-like (*Pestivirus I*, Turkey) *Pestivirus* genotypes from Tunisian sheep and a goat and a new emerging ovine pestivirus (OVPV) that were found to be genetically and antigenically closely related to CSFV (Becher *et al.*, 2003; Righi *et al.*, 2021; Vilcek & Nettleton, 2006). The chamois BDV is similar to isolates from sheep in the Iberian Peninsula (Valdazo-Gonzalez *et al.*, 2007). This chapter describes BDV infection in sheep. Chapter 3.4.7 *Bovine viral diarrhoea* should also be consulted for related diagnostic methods.

### 1. Acute infections

Healthy newborn and adult sheep exposed to BDV usually experience only mild or inapparent disease. Slight fever and a mild leukopenia are associated with a short-lived viraemia detectable between days 4 and 11 post-infection, after which virus neutralising antibody appears in the serum (Thabti *et al.*, 2002).



91 Acute infections are best diagnosed serologically using paired sera from a representative number of sheep.  
92 Occasional BDV isolates have been shown to produce high fever, profound and prolonged leukopenia,  
93 anorexia, conjunctivitis, nasal discharge, dyspnoea and diarrhoea, and 50% mortality in young lambs. One  
94 such isolate was recovered from a severe epidemic of BD among dairy sheep in 1984 (Chappuis *et al.*, 1986).  
95 A second such isolate was a BDV contaminant of a live CSFV vaccine (Wensvoort & Terpstra, 1988).

## 96 **2. Fetal infection**

97 The main clinical signs of BD are seen following the infection of pregnant ewes. While the initial maternal  
98 infection is subclinical or mild, the consequences for the fetus are serious. Fetal death may occur at any stage  
99 of pregnancy, but is more common in fetuses infected early in gestation. Small dead fetuses may be resorbed  
100 or their abortion may pass unnoticed as the ewes continue to feed well and show no sign of discomfort. As  
101 lambing time approaches, the abortion of larger fetuses, stillbirths and the premature births of small, weak  
102 lambs will be seen. Confirmation that an abortion or stillbirth is due to BDV is often difficult to establish, but  
103 virus may be isolated from fetal tissues in some cases. The use of an appropriate real-time reverse-  
104 transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) assay may give a higher level of success because of the  
105 advantages of high sensitivity and the ability to detect genome from non-infectious virus. In aborted fetuses, it  
106 is also possible to detect virus by immunohistochemistry of brain, thyroid and other tissues (Thur *et al.*, 1997).  
107 Samples of fetal fluids or serum should be tested for BDV antibody.

108 During lambing, an excessive number of barren ewes will become apparent, but it is the diseased live lambs  
109 that present the main clinical features characteristic of BD. The clinical signs exhibited by BD lambs are very  
110 variable and depend on the breed of sheep, the virulence of the virus and the time at which infection was  
111 introduced into the flock. Affected lambs are usually small and weak, many being unable to stand. Nervous  
112 signs and fleece changes are often apparent. The nervous signs of BD are its most characteristic feature. The  
113 tremor can vary from violent rhythmic contractions of the muscles of the hindlegs and back, to barely detectable  
114 fine trembling of the head, ears, and tail. Fleece abnormalities are most obvious in smooth-coated breeds,  
115 which develop hairy fleeces, especially on the neck and back. Abnormal brown or black pigmentation of the  
116 fleece may also be seen in BD-affected lambs. Blood samples to be tested for the presence of BDV or antibody  
117 should be collected into anticoagulant from suspect lambs before they have received colostrum. Once lambs  
118 have ingested colostrum, it is difficult to isolate virus until they are 2 months old and maternal antibody levels  
119 have waned. However, during this period, it may be possible to detect viral antigen in skin biopsies, by  
120 immunohistochemistry, in washed leukocytes by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) or by real-time  
121 RT-PCR. ELISAs directed at detection of the Erns antigen appear to be less prone to interference by maternal  
122 antibodies and can often be used to detect antigen in serum.

123 With careful nursing, a proportion of BD lambs can be reared, although deaths may occur at any age. The  
124 nervous signs gradually decline and can disappear by 3–6 months of age. Weakness, and swaying of the hind-  
125 quarters, together with fine trembling of the head, may reappear at times of stress. Affected lambs often grow  
126 slowly and under normal field conditions many will die before or around weaning time. In cases where losses  
127 at lambing time have been low and no lambs with obvious signs of BD have been born, this can be the first  
128 presenting sign of disease.

129 Some fetal infections occurring around mid-gestation can result in lambs with severe nervous signs, locomotor  
130 disturbances and abnormal skeletons. Such lambs have lesions of cerebellar hypoplasia and dysplasia,  
131 hydranencephaly and porencephaly resulting from necrotising inflammation. The severe destructive lesions  
132 appear to be immune mediated, and lambs with such lesions frequently have high titres of serum antibody to  
133 BDV. Most lambs infected in late gestation are normal and healthy and are born free from virus but with BDV  
134 antibody. Some such lambs can be weak and may die in early life (Barlow & Patterson, 1982).

## 135 **3. Persistent viraemia**

136 When fetuses survive an infection that occurs before the onset of immune competence, they are born with a  
137 persistent viraemia. The ovine fetus can first respond to an antigenic stimulus between approximately 60 and  
138 85 days of its 150-day gestation period. In fetuses infected before the onset of immune competence, viral  
139 replication is uncontrolled and 50% fetal death is common. In lambs surviving infection in early gestation, virus  
140 is widespread in all organs. Such lambs appear to be tolerant of the virus and have a persistent infection,  
141 usually for life. A precolostral blood sample will be virus positive and antibody negative. Typically, there is no  
142 inflammatory reaction and the most characteristic pathological changes are in the central nervous system

143 (CNS) and skin. Throughout the CNS, there is a deficiency of myelin, and this causes the nervous signs. In  
 144 the skin, primary wool follicles increase in size and the number of secondary wool follicles decreases, causing  
 145 the hairy or coarse fleece.

146 Persistently viraemic sheep can be identified by the detection of viral antigens, nucleic acids or infectious virus  
 147 in a blood sample. Viraemia is readily detectable by testing of serum at any time except within the first 2 months  
 148 of life, when virus may be masked by colostral antibody and, possibly, in animals older than 4 years, some of  
 149 which develop low levels of anti-BDV antibody (Nettleton *et al.*, 1992). Methods other than virus isolation may  
 150 be preferred to avoid interference from antibodies. When the presence of colostral antibodies is suspected,  
 151 the virus may be detected in washed leukocytes and in skin by using sensitive ELISAs. Although virus detection  
 152 in blood during an acute infection is difficult, persistent viraemia should be confirmed by retesting animals after  
 153 an interval of at least 3 weeks. The use of real-time RT-PCR should be considered at all times and for any  
 154 sample type due to its high analytical sensitivity and the lack of interference from antibodies in a sample.

155 Some viraemic sheep survive to sexual maturity and are used for breeding. Lambs born to these infected dams  
 156 are always persistently viraemic. Persistently viraemic sheep are a continual source of infectious virus to other  
 157 animals and their identification is a major factor in any control programme. Sheep being traded should be  
 158 screened for the absence of BDV viraemia.

159 Usually persistently infected (PI) rams have poor quality, highly infective semen and reduced fertility. All rams  
 160 used for breeding should be screened for persistent BDV infection on a blood sample. Semen samples can  
 161 also be screened for virus, but virus isolation is much less satisfactory than from blood because of the toxicity  
 162 of semen for cell cultures. Real-time RT-PCR for detection of pestivirus nucleic acid would usually overcome  
 163 toxicity problems, and thus this assay should be useful for testing semen from rams.

#### 164 4. Late-onset disease in persistently viraemic sheep

165 Some PI sheep housed apart from other animals spontaneously develop intractable diarrhoea, wasting,  
 166 excessive ocular and nasal discharges, sometimes with respiratory distress. At necropsy such sheep have  
 167 gross thickening of the distal ileum, caecum and colon resulting from focal hyperplastic enteropathy. Cytopathic  
 168 BDV can be recovered from the gut of these lambs. With no obvious outside source of cytopathic virus, it is  
 169 most likely that such virus originates from the lamb's own virus pool, similar to what occurs with BVDV. Other  
 170 PI sheep in the group ~~do~~ may not develop the disease. This syndrome, which has been produced  
 171 experimentally and recognised in occasional field outbreaks of BD, has several similarities with bovine mucosal  
 172 disease (Nettleton *et al.*, 1992).

## 173 B. DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES

174 **Table 1.** Test methods available for diagnosis of border disease and their purpose

| Method                                     | Purpose                           |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
|--|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|---|
|  | Population freedom from infection | Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement | Contribute to eradication policies | Confirmation of clinical cases | Prevalence of infection – surveillance | Immune status in individual animals or populations post-vaccination |
| Identification of the agent <sup>(a)</sup> |                                   |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
| Virus isolation                            | +                                 | ++   | ++                                 | +++                            | –                                      | –   |
| Antigen detection by ELISA                 | +                                 | ++   | +++                                | +++                            | –                                      | –   |
| NA detection by real-time RT-PCR           | +++                               | +++  | +++                                | +++                            | +++                                    | –   |

| Method                              | Purpose                           |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|---|
|                                     | Population freedom from infection | Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement | Contribute to eradication policies | Confirmation of clinical cases | Prevalence of infection – surveillance | Immune status in individual animals or populations post-vaccination |
| NA detection by ISH                 | –                                 | –  | –                                  | +                              | –                                      | –   |
| <b>Detection of immune response</b> |                                   |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
| Antibody detection by ELISA         | ++                                | ++   | ++                                 | +                              | ++                                     | ++  |
| VN                                  | +++                               | +++  | ++                                 | +++                            | +++                                    | +++   |

Key: +++ = recommended for this purpose; ++ recommended but has limitations; + = suitable in very limited circumstances; – = not appropriate for this purpose.

ELISA = enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; IHC = immunohistochemistry; NA = nucleic acid; RT-PCR = reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction; ISH = *in-situ* hybridisation; VN = virus neutralisation.

<sup>(a)</sup>A combination of agent identification methods applied on the same clinical sample is recommended.

175  
176  
177  
178  
179

## 180 1. Identification of the agent

181 There is no designated WOAHA Reference Laboratory for BDV, but the reference laboratories for BVDV or  
182 CSFV will be able to provide advice<sup>1</sup>. One of the most sensitive proven methods for identifying BDV remains  
183 virus isolation. However, a broadly reactive real-time RT-PCR assay (preferably pan-pestivirus reactive) will  
184 usually provide higher analytical sensitivity than virus isolation, can be used to test samples that are difficult to  
185 manage by virus isolation and can be performed in a few hours. Antigen-detection ELISA and  
186 immunohistochemical techniques on tissue sections are also valuable methods for identifying BDV-infected  
187 animals.

### 188 1.1. Virus isolation

189 It is essential that laboratories undertaking virus isolation have a guaranteed supply of pestivirus-  
190 free susceptible cells and bovine serum, or equivalent, that contain no anti-pestivirus activity and no  
191 contaminating virus. It is important that a laboratory quality assurance programme be in place.  
192 Chapter 3.4.7 provides detailed methods for virus isolation in either culture tubes or microplates for  
193 the isolation of pestiviruses from sheep or goat samples, including serum, whole blood, semen and  
194 tissues. The principles and precautions outlined in that chapter for the selection of cell cultures,  
195 medium components and reagents are equally relevant to this chapter. Provided proven pan-  
196 pestivirus reactive reagents (e.g. monoclonal antibodies [MAbs], primers and probes for real-time  
197 RT-PCR) are used for antigen or nucleic acid detection, the principal difference is the selection of  
198 appropriate cell cultures.

199 BD virus can be isolated in a number of primary or secondary ovine cell cultures (e.g. kidney, testes,  
200 lung). Ovine cell lines for BDV growth are rare. Semicontinuous cell lines derived from fetal lamb  
201 muscle (FLM), whole embryo (Thabti *et al.*, 2002) or sheep choroid plexus can be useful, but different  
202 lines vary considerably in their susceptibility to the virus. Ovine cells have been used successfully  
203 for the isolation and growth of BD viruses and BVDV types 1 and 2 from sheep. In regions where  
204 sheep may become infected with BVD viruses from cattle, a virus isolation system using both ovine  
205 and bovine cells could be optimal. However, bovine cells have lower sensitivity for the primary

<sup>1</sup> Please consult the WOAHA Web site: <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3>

206 isolation and growth of some BD viruses, so reliance on bovine cells alone is inadvisable. Details of  
207 suitable bovine cell cultures are provided chapter 3.4.7. The precautions outlined in that chapter for  
208 the establishment of cells and medium components that are free from contamination with either  
209 pestiviruses or antibodies, and measures to ensure that the cells are susceptible to a wide range of  
210 local field strains are equally relevant to systems for detection of BDV.

211 From live animals, serum is the most frequently used sample to be tested for the presence of  
212 infectious virus. However, for difficult cases, the most sensitive way to confirm pestivirus viraemia is  
213 to wash leukocytes repeatedly (at least three times) in culture medium before co-cultivating them  
214 with susceptible cells in either cell culture tubes or microplates. After culture for 5–7 days, the cultures  
215 should be frozen and thawed once and an aliquot of diluted culture fluid passaged onto further  
216 susceptible cells grown in microplates or on chamber slides to allow antigen detection by  
217 immunocytochemistry. Staining for noncytopathic pestiviruses will usually detect virus at the end of  
218 the primary passage, but to detect slow-growing viruses in poorly permissive cells two passages are  
219 desirable. It is recommended that the culture supernatant used as inoculum for the second passage  
220 is diluted approximately 1/100 in new culture medium because some high titred field isolates will  
221 replicate poorly if passaged undiluted (i.e. at high multiplicity of infection – moi).

222 Tissues should be collected from dead animals in virus transport medium. In the laboratory, the  
223 tissues are ground to give a 10–20% (w/v) suspension, centrifuged to remove debris, and the  
224 supernatant passed through 0.45 µm filters. Spleen, lung, thyroid, thymus, kidney, brain, lymph  
225 nodes and gut lesions are the best organs for virus isolation.

226 Semen can be examined for the presence of BDV, but raw semen is strongly cytotoxic and must be  
227 diluted, usually at least 1/10 in culture medium. As the major threat of BDV-infected semen is from  
228 PI rams, blood is a more reliable clinical sample than semen for identifying such animals. There are  
229 many variations in virus isolation procedures. All should be optimised for maximum sensitivity using  
230 a standard reference virus preparation and, whenever possible, recent BDV field isolates. Most of  
231 the limitations of virus isolation for the detection of BDV in serum or blood, tissues or semen can be  
232 overcome by the use of a proven, sensitive pan-pestivirus reactive real-time RT-PCR. Some  
233 laboratories screen samples by real-time RT-PCR and undertake virus isolation on positive samples  
234 to collect BDV strains for future reference or research purposes.

235 For specific technical details of virus isolation procedures, including immunoperoxidase staining,  
236 refer to chapter 3.4.7.

## 237 1.2. Nucleic acid detection methods

238 The complete genomic sequences of three BD viruses have been determined and compared with  
239 those of other pestiviruses (Becher *et al.*, 1998; Ridpath & Bolin, 1997). Phylogenetic analysis shows  
240 BD viruses to be more closely related to CSFV than to BVDV (Becher *et al.*, 2003; Van Rijn *et al.*,  
241 1997; Vilcek & Nettleton, 2006; Vilcek *et al.*, 1997). Real-time RT-PCR for diagnosing pestivirus  
242 infection is now used widely and a number of formats have been described. Real-time RT-PCR  
243 assays have the advantages of being able to detect both infectious virus and residual nucleic acid,  
244 the latter being of value for investigating abortions and lamb deaths. Furthermore, the presence of  
245 virus-specific antibodies in a sample will have no adverse effect on the sensitivity of the real-time  
246 RT-PCR assay. These assays are also useful for screening semen and, when recommended nucleic  
247 acid extraction protocols are followed, are less affected by components of the semen compared with  
248 virus isolation. Because of the potential for small ruminants to be infected with genetically different  
249 strains of BDV or with strains of BVDV, a ~~proven~~ pan-pestivirus reactive real-time RT-PCR with  
250 proven high sensitivity should be used. To ensure that the genetic spectrum of BDV strains is  
251 sufficiently covered, it may be necessary to apply a broadly reactive BDV specific real time RT-PCR  
252 in parallel to maximise diagnostic sensitivity. Suitable protocols for both nucleic acid extraction as  
253 well as the real-time RT-PCR are described in chapter 3.4.7. All precautions to minimise laboratory  
254 contamination should be followed closely.

255 After testing samples in a pan-pestivirus reactive assay, samples giving ~~positive results can any level~~  
256 of reactivity should be investigated further by the application of a BDV-specific real-time RT-PCR  
257 (Willoughby *et al.*, 2006). It is important to note however that different genotypes of BDV may be

258 circulating in some populations, especially wild ruminants such as chamois and deer, and may be  
259 transferred to sheep. An assay that is specific for the detection of BDV should be used with some  
260 caution as variants or previously unrecognised genotypes may not be detected, hence the value of  
261 initially screening samples with a pan-pestivirus reactive real-time RT-PCR. Nevertheless, there are  
262 also situations where a pan-pestivirus reactive real-time RT-PCR may have lower analytical  
263 sensitivity. Consequently, in any situation where BDV infection is suspected, the application of  
264 several diagnostic methods is recommended. Maternal serology can also play an important role as  
265 negative results should exclude the potential involvement of a pestivirus.

### 266 1.3. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for antigen detection

267 ELISAs for the direct detection of pestivirus antigen in blood and tissues of infected animals have  
268 proven to be extremely useful for the detection of PI animals and the diagnosis of disease. The first  
269 ELISA for pestivirus antigen detection was described for detecting viraemic sheep and was later  
270 modified into a double MAb capture ELISA for use in sheep and cattle (Entrican *et al.*, 1994). The  
271 test is most commonly employed to identify PI viraemic sheep using washed, detergent-lysed blood  
272 leukocytes. The sensitivity is close to that of virus isolation and it is a practical method for screening  
273 large numbers of blood samples. As with virus isolation, high levels of colostral antibody can mask  
274 persistent viraemia. The ELISA is more effective than virus isolation in the presence of antibody, but  
275 may give false-negative results in viraemic lambs younger than 2 months old. The ELISA is usually  
276 not sensitive enough to detect acute BDV infections on blood samples. As well as for testing  
277 leukocytes, the antigen ELISA can also be used on tissue suspensions, especially spleen, from  
278 suspected PI sheep and, as an alternative to immunofluorescence and immunoperoxidase methods,  
279 on cell cultures. Several pestivirus ELISA methods have been published but there are at present no  
280 commercially available kits that have been fully validated for detecting BDV. Prior to use for  
281 regulatory purposes, these kits should be validated in the region where they are to be used to ensure  
282 that a wide range of field strains of BDV can be detected and that they are suitable for the sample  
283 types to be tested.

### 284 1.4. Immunohistochemistry

285 Viral antigen demonstration is possible in most of the tissues of PI animals (Braun *et al.*, 2002; Thur  
286 *et al.*, 1997) although this is not a method that is routinely used for diagnostic purposes. This should  
287 be done on acetone-fixed frozen tissue sections (cryostat sections) or paraffin wax embedded  
288 samples using appropriate antibodies. Pan-pestivirus reactive antibodies with NS2-3 specificity are  
289 suitable. Tissues with a high amount of viral antigen are brain, thyroid gland, lung and oral mucosa.  
290 Skin biopsies have been shown to be useful for *in-vivo* diagnosis of persistent BDV infection.

## 291 2. Serological tests

292 Antibody to BDV is usually detected in sheep sera using VN or an ELISA. The less sensitive agar gel  
293 immunodiffusion test is not recommended. Control positive and negative reference sera must be included in  
294 every test. These should give results within predetermined limits for the test to be considered valid. Single sera  
295 can be tested to determine the prevalence of BDV in a flock, region or country. For diagnosis, however, acute  
296 and convalescent sera are the best samples for confirming acute BDV infection. Repeat sera from one animal  
297 should always be tested alongside each other on the same plate to provide a reliable comparison of titres.

### 298 2.1. Virus neutralisation test

299 Due to antigenic diversity among pestiviruses the choice of test virus is difficult (Dekker *et al.*, 1995;  
300 Nettleton *et al.*, 1998). No single strain of BDV is ideal. A local strain that gives the highest antibody  
301 titre with a range of positive sheep sera should be used.

302 Because there are few cytopathogenic strains of BDV available, to achieve optimal analytical  
303 sensitivity, it is more usual to employ a representative local non-cytopathogenic strain and read the  
304 assay after immunoperoxidase staining of the cells. Proven highly sensitive, pestivirus-free sheep  
305 cells such as lamb testis or kidney cells are suitable and can be maintained as cryogenically frozen  
306 stocks for use over long periods of time. The precautions outlined for selection of pestivirus-free



307 medium components are equally applicable to reagents to be used in VN tests. A recommended  
308 procedure follows.

### 309 2.1.1. Test procedure

- 310 i) The test sera are heat-inactivated for 30 minutes at 56°C.
- 311 ii) From a starting dilution of 1/4, serial twofold dilutions of the test sera are made in a cell-  
312 culture grade flat-bottomed 96-well microtitre plate, using cell culture medium as diluent.  
313 For each sample, three or four wells are used at each dilution depending on the degree  
314 of precision required. Also, for each sample and at each serum dilution, one well is left  
315 without virus to monitor for evidence of sample toxicity that could mimic viral  
316 cytopathology or interfere with virus replication. Control positive and negative sera should  
317 also be included in each batch of tests.
- 318 iii) An equal volume (e.g. 50 µl) of a stock of BDV containing 100 TCID<sub>50</sub> (50% tissue culture  
319 infective dose) is added to each well. A back titration of virus stock is also done in some  
320 spare wells to check the potency of the virus (acceptance limits 30-80–300 TCID<sub>50</sub>).
- 321 iv) The plate is incubated for 1 hour at 37°C.
- 322 v) A flask of suitable cells (e.g. ovine testis or kidney cells) is trypsinised and the cell  
323 concentration is adjusted to 2 × 10<sup>5</sup>/ml. 100 µl of the cell suspension is added to each  
324 well of the microtitre plate.
- 325 vi) The plate is incubated at 37°C for 4–5 days, either in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere or with the  
326 plate sealed.
- 327 vii) The wells are examined microscopically to ensure that there is no evidence of toxicity or  
328 cytopathic effect (CPE), then fixed and stained by immunoperoxidase staining using an  
329 appropriate MAb. The VN titre for each serum is the dilution at which the virus is  
330 neutralised in 50% of the wells. This can be calculated by the Spearman–Kärber or Reed  
331 Muench methods. A seronegative animal will show no neutralisation at the lowest dilution  
332 of serum (i.e. 1/4), equivalent to a final dilution of 1/8. For accurate comparison of  
333 antibody titres, and particularly to demonstrate significant (more than fourfold) changes  
334 in titre, samples should be tested in parallel in the same test.
- 335 viii) Occasionally there may be a need to determine whether antibody in a flock is against a  
336 virus belonging to a particular *Pestivirus* serogroup. A differential VN test can be used in  
337 which sera are titrated out against representative viruses from each of the four *Pestivirus*  
338 groups, i.e. BDV, BVDV types 1 and 2, and CSFV. Maximum titre will identify the infecting  
339 serotype and the spectrum of cross-reactivity with the other serotypes will also be  
340 revealed.

### 341 2.2. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay

342 An MAb-capture ELISA for measuring BDV antibodies has been described. Two pan-pestivirus MAbs  
343 that detect different epitopes on the immunodominant nonstructural protein NS 2/3 are used to  
344 capture detergent-lysed cell-culture grown antigen. The results correlate qualitatively with the VN  
345 test (Fenton *et al.*, 1991).

#### 346 2.2.1. Antigen preparation

347 Use eight 225 cm<sup>2</sup> flasks of newly confluent FLM cells; four flasks will be controls and four will  
348 be infected. Wash the flasks and infect four with a 0.01–0.1 m.o.i. of Moredun cytopathic BDV.  
349 Allow the virus to adsorb for 2 hours at 37°C. Add maintenance media containing 2% FBS  
350 (free from BDV antibody), and incubate cultures for 4–5 days until CPE is obvious. Pool four  
351 control flask supernatants and separately pool four infected flask supernatants. Centrifuge at  
352 3000 **g** for 15 minutes to pellet cells. Discard the supernatants. Retain the cell pellets. Wash  
353 the flasks with 50 ml of PBS and repeat the centrifugation step as above. Pool all the control  
354 cell pellets in 8 ml PBS containing 1% Nonidet P40 and return 2 ml to each control flask to  
355 lyse the remaining attached cells. Repeat for infected cells. Keep the flasks at 4°C for at least  
356 2 hours agitating the small volume of fluid on the cells vigorously every 30 minutes to ensure



357 total cell detachment. Centrifuge the control and infected antigen at 12,000 **g** for 5 minutes to  
358 remove the cell debris. Supernatant antigens are stored at  $-70^{\circ}\text{C}$  in small aliquots.

### 359 2.2.2. Test procedure

- 360 i) The two MAbs are diluted to a predetermined dilution in 0.05 M bicarbonate buffer, pH  
361 9.6. All wells of a suitable ELISA-grade microtitre plate (e.g. Nunc maxisorb, Greiner  
362 129b) are coated overnight at  $4^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- 363 ii) After washing three times in PBST, a blocking solution of PBST containing 10% horse  
364 serum (PBSTH) is added to all wells, which are incubated at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 1 hour.
- 365 iii) The antigen is diluted to a predetermined dilution in PBSTH and alternate rows of wells  
366 are coated with virus and control antigens for 1 hour at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The plates are then washed  
367 three times in PBST before addition of test sera.
- 368 iv) Test sera are diluted 1/50 in PBSTH and added to duplicate virus and duplicate control  
369 wells for 1 hour at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The plates are then washed three times in PBST.
- 370 v) Anti-ovine IgG peroxidase conjugate is diluted to a predetermined dilution in PBSTH and  
371 added to all wells for 1 hour at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The plates are washed three times in PBST.
- 372 vi) A suitable activated enzyme substrate/chromogen, such as ortho-phenylene diamine  
373 (OPD) or tetramethyl benzidine (TMB), is added). After colour development, the reaction  
374 is stopped with sulphuric acid and the absorbance read on an ELISA plate reader. The  
375 mean value of the two control wells is subtracted from the mean value of the two virus  
376 wells to give the corrected absorbance for each serum. Results are expressed as  
377 corrected absorbance with reference to the corrected absorbance of known positive and  
378 negative sera. Alternatively, ELISA titres can be extrapolated from a standard curve of a  
379 dilution series of a known positive reference serum.

380 If antigens of sufficient potency can be produced the MAb capture stage can be omitted.  
381 In this case alternate rows of wells are coated with virus and control antigen diluted to a  
382 predetermined dilution in 0.05 M bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.6, overnight at  $+4^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The plates  
383 are washed and blocked as in step ii above. After washing, diluted test sera are added  
384 and the test proceeds from step iv as above.

## 385 C. REQUIREMENTS FOR VACCINES

### 386 1. Background

387 To be useful, a BDV vaccine should be effective when administered to female sheep before breeding to prevent  
388 transplacental infection. Experimental and commercial inactivated whole virus BDV vaccines have been  
389 produced in Europe (Brun *et al.*, 1993; Vantsis *et al.*, 1980). Unlike vaccines for BVDV, there is limited demand  
390 for vaccines against BDV and those produced have only been inactivated products. No live attenuated or  
391 recombinant subunit vaccines for BDV have been produced commercially.

392 Pestivirus contaminants of modified live virus vaccines have been found to be a cause of serious disease  
393 following their use in pigs, cattle, sheep and goats. Contaminated vaccines have included those used for the  
394 control of Aujesky's disease, CSF, rotavirus, coronavirus, rinderpest, sheep pox and contagious pustular  
395 dermatitis. The insidious ability of pestiviruses to cross the placenta, and thus establish PI animals, gives them  
396 the potential to contaminate vaccines through cells, serum used as medium supplement, or seed stock virus.  
397 As nearly all isolates of pestiviruses are noncytopathic, they will remain undetected unless specific tests are  
398 carried out. Although such contamination should be less likely to be a problem with an inactivated vaccine,  
399 nevertheless steps should be taken to ensure that materials used in production are not contaminated.

400

## 1.1. Characteristics of a target product profile

401  
402  
403  
404  
405  
406  
407  
408  
409

Traditionally, pestivirus vaccines fall into two classes: modified live or inactivated virus vaccines. The essential requirement for both types is to **afford-provide** a high level of fetal infection. Only inactivated vaccines have been produced for BDV. Properly formulated inactivated vaccines are very safe to use but, to obtain satisfactory levels of immunity, they usually require booster vaccinations, which may be inconvenient. Because of the propensity for antigenic variability, the vaccine should contain strains of BDV that are closely matched to viruses found in the area in which they are used. This may present particular challenges with BDV in regions where several antigenic types have been found. Due to the need to customise vaccines for the most commonly encountered strains within a country or region, it is not feasible to produce a vaccine antigen bank that can be drawn upon globally.

410  
411  
412

Guidance for the production of veterinary vaccines is given in Chapter 1.1.8 *Principles of veterinary vaccine production*. The guidelines given here and in chapter 1.1.8 are intended to be general in nature and may be supplemented by national and regional requirements.

413

## 2. Outline of production and minimum requirements for vaccines

414

### 2.1. Characteristics of the seed

415  
416  
417  
418  
419  
420  
421  
422  
423  
424  
425

An ideal vaccine should contain a strain or strains of virus that give protection against all sheep pestiviruses. This may be challenging however, because of the range of pestiviruses with which sheep can be infected. There is considerable antigenic variation across these viruses – both between viruses that have been classified in the BDV genogroup as well as between viruses in the BVDV1 and BVDV2 genotypes (Becher *et al.*, 2003; Vilcek & Nettleton, 2006; Wensvoort *et al.*, 1989). Infection of sheep with the putative BVDV-3 genotype has also been described (Decaro *et al.*, 2012). It is likely that the antigenic composition of a vaccine will vary from region to region to provide an adequate antigenic match with dominant virus strains. Cross-neutralisation studies are required to establish optimal combinations. Nevertheless, it would appear that any BDV vaccine should contain at least a representative of the BDV and BVDV (type 1) groups. Characterisation of the biologically cloned vaccine viruses should include typing with MAbs and genotyping (Paton *et al.*, 1995).

426

#### 2.1.1. Quality criteria (sterility, purity, freedom from extraneous agents)

427  
428  
429  
430  
431  
432  
433  
434  
435  
436

It is crucial to ensure that all materials used in the preparation of the bulk antigens have been extensively screened to ensure freedom from extraneous agents. This should include master and working seeds, the cell cultures and all medium supplements such as bovine serum. Some bovine viruses and particularly BVDV can readily infect small ruminants such as sheep. Therefore, it is particularly important to ensure that any serum used that is of bovine origin is free of both adventitious BVDV and antibodies against BVDV strains because low levels of either virus or antibody can mask the presence of the other. Materials and vaccine seeds should be tested for sterility and freedom from contamination with other agents, especially viruses as described in the chapter 1.1.8 and Chapter 1.1.9 *Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended for veterinary use*.

437  
438  
439  
440  
441  
442

If a vaccine passes basic tests, the efficacy of vaccination should ultimately be measured by the capacity to prevent transplacental transmission. Effective challenge of vaccinated pregnant ewes at 50–60 days gestation has been achieved by intranasal installation of virus or by mixing with PI sheep (Brun *et al.*, 1993). Usually this reliably produces persistently viraemic offspring in non-immune ewes. In regions where multiple genotypes of BDV viruses are commonly encountered, efficacy in protecting against multiple strains should be measured.

443

## 2.2. Method of manufacture

444

### 2.2.1. Procedure

445  
446  
447  
448

Inactivated vaccines have been prepared using conventional laboratory techniques with stationary or rolled cell cultures. Inactivants have included formalin and beta-propiolactone. Adjuvants have included aluminium hydroxide and oil (Brun *et al.*, 1993; Vantsis *et al.*, 1980). Optimal yields depend on the cell type and isolate used. A commercial BDV vaccine containing

449 two strains of virus has been prepared on ovine cell lines (Brun *et al.*, 1993). Cells must be  
450 produced according to a seed-lot system from a master cell seed (MCS) that has been shown  
451 to be free from all contaminating microorganisms. Vaccine should only be produced in cells  
452 fewer than 20 passages from the MCS. Control cells from every passage should be checked  
453 for pestivirus contamination. Standard procedures may be used, with the expectation for  
454 harvesting noncytopathic virus on days 4–7 after inoculation of cultures. The optimal yield of  
455 infectious virus will depend on several factors, including the cell culture, isolate used and the  
456 initial seeding rate of virus. These factors should be taken into consideration and virus  
457 replication kinetics investigated to establish the optimal conditions for large-scale virus  
458 production. Whether a live or inactivated vaccine, the essential aim will be to produce a high-  
459 titred virus stock. This bulk antigen preparation can subsequently be prepared according to  
460 the type of vaccine being considered.

#### 461 **2.2.2. Requirements for ingredients**

462 BDV vaccines have usually been grown in cell cultures of ovine origin that are frequently  
463 supplemented with medium components of animal origin. The material of greatest concern is  
464 bovine serum due to the potential for contamination with BVD viruses and antibodies to these  
465 viruses. These adventitious contaminants not only affect the efficiency of production but also  
466 may mask the presence of low levels of infectious BVDV that may have undesirable  
467 characteristics. In addition to the virus seeds, all materials should be tested for sterility and  
468 freedom from contamination with other agents, especially viruses as described in chapters  
469 1.1.8 and 1.1.9. Furthermore, materials of bovine or ovine origin should originate from a  
470 country with negligible risk for transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (see chapter 1.1.9).

#### 471 **2.2.3. In-process controls**

472 In-process controls are part of the manufacturing process. Cultures should be inspected  
473 regularly to ensure that they remain free from gross bacterial contamination, and to monitor  
474 the health of the cells and the development or absence of CPE, as appropriate. While the  
475 basic requirement for efficacy is the capacity to induce an acceptable neutralising antibody  
476 response, during production, target concentrations of antigen required to achieve an  
477 acceptable response may be monitored indirectly by assessment of the quantity of infectious  
478 virus or antigen mass that is produced. Rapid diagnostic assays such as the ELISA are useful  
479 for monitoring BVDV antigen production. Alternatively, the quality of a batch of antigen may  
480 be determined by titration of the quantity of infectious virus present, although this may  
481 underestimate the quantity of antigen. For inactivated vaccines, infectivity is evaluated before  
482 inactivation. For inactivated vaccines the inactivation kinetics should be established so that a  
483 suitable safety margin can be determined and incorporated into the routine production  
484 processes. At the end of production, *in-vitro* cell culture assays should be undertaken to  
485 confirm that inactivation has been complete. These innocuity tests should include a sufficient  
486 number of passages and volume of inoculum to ensure that very low levels of infectious virus  
487 would be detected if present.

#### 488 **2.2.4. Final product batch tests**

##### 489 i) Sterility

490 Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended for  
491 veterinary use may be found in chapter 1.1.9.

##### 492 ii) Identity

493 Identity tests should demonstrate that no other strain of BDV is present when several  
494 strains are propagated in a facility producing multivalent vaccines.

##### 495 iii) Safety

496 Samples from inactivated vaccines should be tested rigorously for viable virus. Samples  
497 of the product should be passaged for a minimum of three passages in sensitive cell  
498 cultures to ensure absence of live BDV. This *in-vitro* monitoring can be augmented by  
499 injecting two BDV-seronegative sheep with 20 doses of unformulated antigen as part of

500 a standard safety test. Presence of live virus will result in the development of a more  
501 convincing serological response than will occur with inactivated virus alone. The sheep  
502 sera can also be examined for antibody to other prescribed agents.

503 Safety tests shall also consist of detecting any abnormal local or systemic adverse  
504 reactions to the vaccine by all vaccination route(s). Batch-to-batch safety tests are  
505 required unless safety of the product is demonstrated and approved in the registration  
506 dossier and production is consistent with that described in chapter 1.1.8. Vaccines must  
507 either be demonstrated to be safe in pregnant sheep (i.e. no transmission to the fetus),  
508 or should be licensed with a warning not to use them in pregnant animals.

509 iv) Batch potency

510 Vaccine potency is best tested in seronegative sheep in which the development and level  
511 of antibody is measured. BVD vaccines must be demonstrated to produce adequate  
512 immune responses when used in their final formulation according to the manufacturer's  
513 published instructions. The minimum quantity of infectious virus or antigen required to  
514 produce an acceptable immune response should be determined. An indirect measure of  
515 potency is given by the level of virus infectivity prior to inactivation. *In-vitro* assays should  
516 be used to monitor individual batches during production. The antigen content following  
517 inactivation can be assayed by MAb-capture ELISA and related to the results of  
518 established *in-vivo* potency results. It should be demonstrated that the lowest  
519 recommended dose of vaccine can prevent transplacental transmission of BDV in  
520 pregnant sheep.

## 521 **2.3. Requirements for authorisation/registration/licensing**

### 522 **2.3.1. Manufacturing process**

523 For registration of a vaccine, all relevant details concerning manufacture of the vaccine and  
524 quality control testing should be submitted to the relevant authorities. Unless otherwise  
525 specified by the authorities, information should be provided from three consecutive vaccine  
526 batches with a volume not less than 1/3 of the typical industrial batch volume.

527 There is no standard method for the manufacture of a BDV vaccine, but conventional  
528 laboratory techniques with stationary, rolled or suspension (micro-carriers) cell cultures may  
529 be used. Inactivated vaccines can be prepared by conventional methods, such as binary  
530 ethylenimine, formalin or beta-propiolactone inactivation (Park & Bolin, 1987). A variety of  
531 adjuvants may be used.

### 532 **2.3.2. Safety requirements**

533 *In-vivo* tests should be undertaken using repeat doses (taking into account the maximum  
534 number of doses for primary vaccination and, if appropriate, the first revaccination/booster  
535 vaccination) and contain the maximum permitted antigen load and, depending on the  
536 formulation of the vaccine, the maximum number of vaccine strains.

537 i) Target and non-target animal safety

538 The safety of the final product formulation of inactivated vaccines should be assessed in  
539 susceptible young sheep that are free of maternally derived antibodies and in pregnant  
540 ewes. They should be checked for any local reactions following administration, and, in  
541 pregnant ewes, for any effects on the unborn lamb.

542 ii) Reversion-to-virulence for attenuated/live vaccines and environmental considerations

543 In the event that a live virus vaccine was developed for BDV, virus seeds that have been  
544 passaged at least up to and preferably beyond the passage limit specified for the seed  
545 should be inoculated into young lambs to confirm that there is no evidence of disease. If  
546 a live attenuated vaccine has been registered for use in pregnant animals, reversion to

547 virulence tests should also include pregnant animals. Live attenuated vaccines should  
548 not be transmissible to unvaccinated 'in-contact' animals.

549 iii) Precautions (hazards)

550 BDV is not considered to be a human health hazard. Standard good microbiological  
551 practice should be adequate for handling the virus in the laboratory. While the inactivated  
552 virus in a vaccine should be identified as harmless for people administering the product,  
553 adjuvants included in the vaccine may cause injury to people. Manufacturers should  
554 provide adequate warnings that medical advice should be sought in the case of self-  
555 injection (including for adjuvants, oil-emulsion vaccine, preservatives, etc.) with warnings  
556 included on the product label/leaflet so that the vaccinator is aware of any danger.

557 **2.3.3. Efficacy requirements**

558 The potency of the vaccine should be determined by inoculation into seronegative and virus  
559 negative lambs, followed by monitoring of the antibody response. Antigen content can be  
560 assayed by infectivity titration prior to inactivation and subsequently by ELISA and adjusted  
561 as required to a standard level for the particular vaccine. Standardised assay protocols  
562 applicable to all vaccines do not exist. Live vaccine batches may be assayed by infectivity  
563 titration. Each production batch of vaccine should undergo potency and safety testing as batch  
564 release criteria. BVD vaccines must be demonstrated to produce adequate immune  
565 responses, as outlined above, when used in their final formulation according to the  
566 manufacturer's published instructions.

567 **2.3.4. Vaccines permitting a DIVA strategy (detection of infection in vaccinated animals)**

568 To date, there are no commercially available vaccines for BDV that support use of a true DIVA  
569 strategy.

570 **2.3.5. Duration of immunity**

571 Inactivated vaccines are unlikely to provide sustained levels of immunity and it is likely that after an  
572 initial course of two or three injections annual booster doses may be required. Insufficient information  
573 is available to determine any correlation between vaccinal antibody titres in the dam and fetal  
574 protection. As there are likely to be different commercial formulations and these involve a range of  
575 adjuvants, there are likely to be different periods of efficacy. Consequently, duration of immunity data  
576 must be generated separately for each commercially available product by undertaking challenge  
577 tests at the end of the period for which immunity has been claimed.

578 **2.3.6. Stability**

579 There are no accepted guidelines for the stability of BDV vaccines, but it can be assumed that an  
580 inactivated virus vaccine should remain potent for at least 1 year if kept at 4°C and probably longer.  
581 Lower temperatures could prolong shelf life but adjuvants in a killed vaccine may preclude this. Bulk  
582 antigens that have not been formulated into finished vaccine can be reliably stored frozen at low  
583 temperatures, but the antigen quality should be monitored with *in-vitro* assays prior to incorporation  
584 into a batch of vaccine.

585 **REFERENCES**

586 BARLOW R.M. & PATTERSON D.S.P. (1982). Border disease of sheep: a virus-induced teratogenic disorder. *Adv.*  
587 *Vet. Med. (Suppl. J. Vet. Med.)*, **36**, 1–87.

588 BECHER P., AVALOS-RAMIREZ R., ORLICH M., CEDILLO ROSALES S., KONIG, M., SCHWEIZER M., STALDER H.,  
589 SCHIRMEIR H & THIEL H.-J. (2003). Genetic and antigenic characterisation of novel pestivirus genotypes;  
590 Implications for classification. *Virology*, **311**, 96–104.

591 BECHER P., ORLICH M. & THIEL H.-J. (1998). Complete genomic sequence of border disease virus a pestivirus  
592 from sheep. *J. Virol.*, **72**, 5165–5173.



- 593 BRAUN U., HILBE M., EHRENSPERGER F., SALIS F., ALTHER P., STRASSER M., STALDER H.P. & PETERHANS E.  
594 (2002). Border Disease in einem Schafbetrieb. *Schweiz. Arch. Tierheilk.*, **144**, 419–426.
- 595 BRUN A., LACOSTE F., REYNAUD G., KATO F. & SAINT-MARC B. (1993). Evaluation of the potency of an inactivated  
596 vaccine against border disease pestivirus infection in sheep. *In: Proceedings of the Second Symposium on*  
597 *Pestiviruses*, Edwards S., ed. Fondation Marcel Merieux, Annecy, France, 1–3 October 1992, 257–259
- 598 CARLSSON U. (1991). Border disease in sheep caused by transmission of virus from cattle persistently infected  
599 with bovine virus diarrhoea virus. *Vet. Rec.*, **128**, 145–147.
- 600 CHAPPUIS G., BRUN A., KATO F., DAUVERGNE M., REYNAUD G. & DURET C. (1986). Etudes serologiques et  
601 immunologiques realisees a la suite de l'isolement d'un pestivirus dans un foyer ovina chez des moutons de  
602 L'Aveyron. *In: Pestiviroses des Ovins et des Bovins*, Espinasse J. & Savey M. eds. Ste Françoise de Buiatrie,  
603 Paris, France, **55**, 66.
- 604 DECARON N., MARI V., LUCENTE M., SCIARRETTA R., MORENO A., ARMENISE C., LOSURDO M., CAMERO M., LORUSSO  
605 E., CORDIOLI P., & BUONAVOGLIA C. (2012). Experimental infection of cattle, sheep and pigs with 'Hobi'-like  
606 pestivirus. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **155**, 165–171.
- 607 DEKKER A., WENSVOORT G. & TERPSTRA C. (1995). Six antigenic groups within the genus pestivirus as identified  
608 by cross-neutralisation assays. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **47**, 317–329.
- 609 ENTRICAN G., DAND A. & NETTLETON P.F. (1994). A double monoclonal-antibody ELISA for detecting pestivirus  
610 antigen in the blood of viraemic cattle and sheep. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **43**, 65–74.
- 611 FENTON A., SINCLAIR J.A., ENTRICAN G., HERRING J.A. & NETTLETON P.F. (1991). A monoclonal antibody capture  
612 ELISA to detect antibody to border disease virus in sheep sera. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **28**, 327–333.
- 613 ~~INTERNATIONAL COMMITTEE ON TAXONOMY OF VIRUSES (2016). Virus Taxonomy 2015 release.~~  
614 ~~<http://www.ictvonline.org/virusTaxonomy.asp>~~
- 615 NETTLETON P.F., GILMOUR J.S., HERRING J.A. & SINCLAIR J.A. (1992). The production and survival of lambs  
616 persistently infected with border disease virus. *Comp. Immunol. Microbiol. infect. Dis.*, **15**, 179–188.
- 617 NETTLETON P.F., GILRAY J.A., RUSSO P. & DLISSI E. (1998). Border disease of sheep and goats *Vet. Res.*, **29**,  
618 327–340.
- 619 OGUZOGLU T.C., FLOEGEL-NIESMANN G., FREY H.R. & MOENNIG V. (2001). Differential diagnosis of classical  
620 swine fever and border disease: seroepidemiological investigation of a pestivirus infection on a mixed sheep  
621 and swine farm. *Dtsch Tierarztl. Wochenschr.*, **108**, 210–213.
- 622 PARK B.K. & BOLIN S.R. (1987). Molecular changes of bovine viral diarrhoea virus polypeptides treated with  
623 binary ethylenimine, beta-propiolactone and formalin. *Res. Rep. Rural Dev. Admin. (L&V) Korea*, **29**, 99–103.
- 624 PATON D.J., SANDS J.J., LOWINGS J.P., SMITH J.E., IBATA G. & EDWARDS S. (1995). A proposed division of the  
625 pestivirus genus into subgroups using monoclonal antibodies, supported by cross-neutralization assays and  
626 genetic sequencing. *Vet. Res.*, **26**, 92–109.
- 627 POSTLER T.S., BEER M., BLITVICH B.J., BUKH J., DE LAMBALLERIE X., DREXLER J.F., IMRIE A., KAPOOR A.,  
628 KARGANOVA G.G., LEMEY P., LOHMANN V., SIMMONDS P., SMITH D.B., STAPLETON J.T. & KUHN J.H. (2023).  
629 Renaming of the genus Flavivirus to Orthoflavivirus and extension of binomial species names within the family  
630 Flaviviridae. *Arch. Virol.*, **168**, DOI: 10.1007/s00705-023-05835-1
- 631 RIDPATH J.F. & BOLIN S.R. (1997). Comparison of the complete genomic sequence of the border disease virus,  
632 BD31, to other pestiviruses. *Virus Res.*, **50**, 237–243.



633 RIGHI C., PETRINI S., PIERINI I., GIAMMARIOLI M. & DE MIA G.M. (2021). Global Distribution and Genetic  
634 Heterogeneity of Border Disease Virus. *Viruses*, **13**, 950. doi: 10.3390/v13060950. PMID: 34064016. PMCID:  
635 PMC8223970.

636 THABTI F., FRONZAROLI L., DLISSI E., GUIBERT J.M., HAMMAMI S., PEPIN M. & RUSSO P. (2002). Experimental model of  
637 border disease virus infection in lambs: comparative pathogenicity of pestiviruses isolated in France and Tunisia.  
638 *Vet. Res.*, **33**, 35–45.

639 THUR B., HILBE M., STRASSER M. & EHRENSPERGER F. (1997). Immunohistochemical diagnosis of pestivirus  
640 infection associated with bovine and ovine abortion and perinatal death. *Am. J. Vet. Res.*, **58**, 1371–1375.

641 VALDAZO-GONZALEZ B., ALVAREZ-MARTINEZ M. & SANDVIK T. (2007). Genetic and antigenic typing of border  
642 Disease virus isolates in sheep from the Iberian peninsula. *Vet. J.*, **174**, 316–324.

643 VAN RIJN P.A., VAN GENNIP H.G.P., LEENCLERSE C.H., BRUSCHKE C.J.M., PATON D.J., MOORMANN R.J.M. & VAN  
644 OIRSCHOT J.T. (1997). Subdivision of the pestivirus genus based on envelope glycoprotein E2 *Virology*, **237**,  
645 337–348.

646 VANTSIS J.T., BARLOW R.M., FRASER J. & MOULD D.L. (1976). Experiments in border disease VIII. Propagation  
647 and properties of a cytopathic virus. *J. Comp. Pathol.*, **86**, 111–120.

648 VANTSIS J.T., RENNIE J.C., GARDINER A.C., WELLS P.W., BARLOW R.M. & MARTIN W.B. (1980). Immunisation  
649 against Border disease. *J. Comp. Path.*, **90**, 349–354.

650 VILCEK S. & NETTLETON P.F. (2006). Pestiviruses in wild animals *Vet. Microbiol.*, **116**, 1–12.

651 VILCEK S., NETTLETON P.F., PATON D.J. & BELAK S. (1997). Molecular characterization of ovine pestiviruses. *J.*  
652 *Gen. Virol.*, **78**, 725–735.

653 WENSVOORT G. & TERPSTRA C. (1988). Bovine viral diarrhoea virus infection in piglets born to sows vaccinated  
654 against swine fever with contaminated virus. *Res. Vet. Sci.*, **45**, 143–148.

655 WENSVOORT G., TERPSTRA C. & DE KLUYVER E.P. (1989). Characterisation of porcine and some ruminant  
656 pestiviruses by cross-neutralisation. *Vet. Microbiol.*, **20**, 291–306.

657 WILLOUGHBY K., VALDAZO-GONZALEZ, B., MALEY M., GILRAY J. & NETTLETON P.F. (2006). Development of a real  
658 time RT-PCR to detect and type ovine pestiviruses. *J. Virol. Methods*, **132**, 187–194.

659 \*  
660 \* \*

661 **NB:** At the time of publication (2017) there were no WOA Reference Laboratories  
662 for border disease (please consult the WOA Web site:  
663 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3http://www.oie.int/>).

664 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 1996. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2017.

## Annexe 15. Chapter 3.8.12. 'Sheep pox and goat pox'

### CHAPTER 3.8.12.

## SHEEP POX AND GOAT POX

---

### SUMMARY

Sheep pox and goat pox are contagious, viral diseases of sheep and goats characterised by fever, generalised papules or nodules, vesicles (rarely), internal lesions (particularly in the lungs), and death. Both diseases are caused by strains of capripoxvirus, all of which can infect sheep and goats. Although most of the strains examined cause more severe clinical disease in either sheep or goats, some strains have been isolated that are equally pathogenic in both species.

Sheeppox virus (SPPV) and goatpox virus (GTPV) are the causative agents of sheep pox and goat pox, and with lumpy skin disease virus (LSDV) make up the genus Capripoxvirus in the family Poxviridae. Sheep pox and goat pox are endemic in Africa north of the Equator, the Middle East and Asia, while some parts of Europe have experienced outbreaks recently. See WAHIS (<https://wahis.woah.org/#/home>) for recent information on distribution at the country level. ~~Countries that reported outbreaks of the disease between 2010 and 2015 include Bulgaria, Chinese Taipei, Israel, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Mongolia, Morocco, Greece and Russia, with Greece, Israel and Russia having experienced recurring incidences.~~

**Identification of the agent:** Laboratory confirmation of capripoxvirus is most rapid using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) method in combination with a clinical history consistent with generalised capripoxvirus infection. Isolation of the virus is possible as capripoxviruses will grow on tissue culture of ovine, caprine or bovine origin, although field isolates may require up to 14 days to grow or require one or more additional tissue culture passage(s). The virus causes intracytoplasmic inclusions that can be clearly seen using haematoxylin and eosin staining. The antigen can also be detected in tissue culture using specific sera and immunoperoxidase or immunofluorescence techniques. Capripoxvirus antigen and inclusion bodies may be seen in stained cryostat or paraffin sections of biopsy or post-mortem lesion material.

~~An antigen-detection enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) using a polyclonal detection serum raised against a recombinant immunodominant antigen of capripoxvirus has been developed.~~

**Serological tests:** The virus neutralisation test is the most specific serological test. The indirect immunofluorescence test is less specific due to cross-reactions with antibody to other poxviruses. Western blotting using the reaction between the P32 antigen of capripoxvirus with test sera is both sensitive and specific, but is expensive and difficult to carry out. An enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) has been developed and validated to detect antibodies to capripoxviruses, however it cannot differentiate between SPPV, GTPV and LSDV.

~~The use of this antigen, or other appropriate antigens expressed by a suitable vector, in an ELISA offers the prospect of an acceptable and standardised serological test in the future.~~

37 **Requirements for vaccines:** *Live and inactivated vaccines have been used for the control of*  
38 *capripoxviruses. All strains of capripoxvirus so far examined share a major neutralisation site and*  
39 *some will cross protect. Inactivated vaccines give, at best, only short-term immunity.*

## 40 A. INTRODUCTION

41 The *Capripoxvirus* genus, in the family *Poxviridae*, consists of three species – lumpy skin disease virus (LSDV),  
42 which causes disease in cattle only (see Chapter 3.4.12), and sheeppox virus (SPPV) and goatpox virus  
43 (GTPV), which cause sheep pox and goat pox, respectively. Sheep pox and goat pox are characterised by  
44 disseminated cutaneous nodules and up to 100% mortality in fully susceptible breeds naïve of sheep and  
45 goats. In indigenous animals, generalised disease and mortality are less common, although they are seen  
46 where disease has been absent from an area or village for a period of time, when intensive husbandry methods  
47 are introduced, or in association with other disease agents, such as peste des petits ruminants virus or foot  
48 and mouth disease virus. Sheep pox and goat pox are major constraints to the introduction of exotic breeds of  
49 sheep and goats to endemic areas, and to the development of intensive livestock production.

50 Strains of SPPV and GTPV can pass between sheep and goats, although most cause more severe clinical  
51 disease in only one their homologous host species. SPPV and GTPV are transboundary diseases that regularly  
52 spread into adjacent, non-endemic areas. Sheep pox and goat pox are endemic in Africa north of the Equator  
53 and parts of the Middle East and Asia (see WAHIS for most up-to-date information on distribution:  
54 <https://wahis.woah.org/#/home>). Outbreaks have been reported in non-endemic countries of Asia, Europe and  
55 the Middle East.

56 The incubation period of sheep pox and goat pox is between 8 and 13 days following contact between infected  
57 and susceptible animals. It may be as short as 4 days following experimental infection by intradermal  
58 inoculation ~~or mechanical transmission by insects~~. Some breeds of European sheep, such as Soay, may die  
59 of acute infection before the development of skin lesions. In other breeds there is an initial rise in rectal  
60 temperature to above 40°C, followed in 2–5 days by the development of, at first, macules – small circumscribed  
61 areas of hyperaemia, which are most obvious on unpigmented skin – and then of papules – hard swellings of  
62 between 0.5 and 1 cm in diameter – which may cover the body or be restricted to the groin, axilla and perineum.  
63 Papules may be covered by fluid-filled vesicles, but this is rare. Some researchers have distinguished between  
64 a vesicular and nodular form of sheep pox and goat pox (Zro *et al.*, 2014b).

65 Within 24 hours of the appearance of generalised papules, affected animals develop rhinitis, conjunctivitis and  
66 enlargement of all the superficial lymph nodes, in particular the prescapular lymph nodes. Papules on the  
67 eyelids cause blepharitis of varying severity. As the papules on the mucous membranes of the eyes and nose  
68 ulcerate, so the discharge becomes mucopurulent, and the mucosae of the mouth, anus, and prepuce or  
69 vagina become necrotic. Breathing may become laboured and noisy due to pressure on the upper respiratory  
70 tract from the swollen retropharyngeal lymph nodes, due to the developing lung lesions.

71 If the affected animal does not die in this acute phase of the disease, the papules start to become necrotic  
72 from ischaemic necrosis following thrombi formation in the blood vessels at the base of the papule. In the  
73 following 5–10 days the papules form scabs, which persist for up to 6 weeks, leaving small scars. The skin  
74 lesions are susceptible to fly strike, and secondary pneumonia is common. Anorexia is not usual unless the  
75 mouth lesions physically interfere with feeding. Abortion is rare.

76 On post-mortem examination of the acutely infected animal, the skin lesions are often less obvious than on  
77 the live animal. The mucous membranes appear necrotic and all the body lymph nodes are enlarged and  
78 oedematous. Papules, which may be ulcerated, can usually be found on the abomasal mucosa, and  
79 sometimes on the wall of the rumen and large intestine, on the tongue, hard and soft palate, trachea and  
80 oesophagus. Pale areas of approximately 2 cm in diameter may occasionally be seen on the surface of the  
81 kidney and liver, and have been reported to be present in the testicles. Numerous hard lesions of up to 5 cm  
82 in diameter are commonly observed throughout the lungs, but particularly in the diaphragmatic lobes.

83 The clinical signs and post-mortem lesions vary considerably with breed of host and strain of capripoxvirus.  
84 Indigenous breeds are less susceptible and frequently show only a few lesions, which could be confused with  
85 insect bites or contagious pustular dermatitis. However, lambs that have lost their maternally derived immunity,

86 animals that have been kept isolated and animals brought into endemic areas from isolated villages,  
 87 particularly if they have been subjected to the stress of moving long distances and mixing with other sheep  
 88 and goats, and their pathogens, can often be seen with generalised and sometimes fatal capripoxvirus  
 89 infections. Invariably there is high mortality in unprotected imported breeds of sheep and goats following  
 90 capripoxvirus infection. Surviving animals clear the infection, as there is no evidence of persistently infected  
 91 animals. Capripoxvirus is not infectious to humans. Capripoxvirus is inactivated at 56°C for 2 hours or 65°C  
 92 for 30 minutes. The virus survives between pH 6.6–8.6. It is susceptible to highly alkaline or acid pH. The virus  
 93 is sensitive to various chemicals: sodium dodecyl sulphate, ether 20%, chloroform, formalin 1%, sodium 2%,  
 94 iodine compounds, Virkon 2%, quaternary ammonium (0.5%), and phenol 2% for 15 minutes.

## 95 B. DIAGNOSTIC TECHNIQUES

96 **Table 1. Test methods available for diagnosis of sheep pox and goat pox and their purpose**

| Method   | Purpose                           |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
|--|-----------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|---|
|  | Population freedom from infection | Individual animal freedom from infection prior to movement | Contribute to eradication policies | Confirmation of clinical cases | Prevalence of infection – surveillance | Immune status in individual animals or populations post-vaccination |
| <b>Identification of the agent<sup>(a)</sup></b> |                                   |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
| <b>Virus isolation</b>                           | +                                 | ++   | +                                  | +++                            | +                                      | –   |
| <b>Antigen detection</b>                         | ++                                | ++   | ++                                 | ++                             | ++                                     | –   |
| <b><u>IFAT</u></b>                               | ±                                 | ±  | ±                                  | ++                             | ±                                      | =   |
| <b><u>IHC</u></b>                                | ±                                 | ±  | ±                                  | ++                             | ±                                      | =   |
| <b>PCR</b>                                       | ++                                | +++  | ++                                 | +++                            | ++                                     | –   |
| <b>Detection of immune response</b>              |                                   |  |                                    |                                |  |   |
| <b><u>VNT</u></b>                                | ++                                | ++   | ++                                 | ++                             | ++                                     | ++  |
| <b>IFAT</b>                                      | +                                 | +  | +                                  | +                              | +                                      | +   |
| <b><u>ELISA</u></b>                              | ++                                | ++   | ++                                 | ++                             | ++                                     | ++  |

97 Key: +++ = recommended for this purpose; ++ recommended but has limitations;

98 + = suitable in very limited circumstances; – = not appropriate for this purpose.

99 IFAT = indirect fluorescent antibody test; IHC = immunohistochemistry; PCR = polymerase chain reaction;

100 VNT = virus neutralisation; ELISA = enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay.

101 <sup>(a)</sup>A combination of agent identification methods applied on the same clinical sample is recommended.

### 102 1. Identification of the agent

#### 103 1.1. Specimen collection and submission

104 Material for virus isolation and antigen detection should be collected by biopsy or at post-mortem  
 105 from skin papules, lung lesions or lymph nodes. Samples for virus isolation and antigen detection  
 106 enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) should be collected within the first week of the  
 107 occurrence of clinical signs, before the development of neutralising antibodies. Samples for genome  
 108 detection by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) may be collected before or after the development of  
 109 neutralising antibody responses. In addition to epithelial lesions, nasal and buccal swabs can be

110 collected because the virus will be present in nasal and saliva discharges. Buffy coat from blood  
111 collected into EDTA (ethylene diamine tetra-acetic acid) during the viraemic stage of capripoxvirus  
112 infection (before generalisation of lesions or within 4 days of generalisation), can also be used for  
113 virus isolation.

114 Samples for histology should include tissue from the surrounding area and should be placed  
115 immediately following collection into ten times the sample volume of 10% formalin or neutral buffered  
116 10% formal saline. Tissues in formalin have no special transportation requirements.

117 Blood samples, for virus isolation from the buffy coat, should be collected in tubes containing  
118 anticoagulant, placed immediately on ice and processed as soon as possible. In practice, the blood  
119 samples may be kept at 4°C for up to 2 days prior to processing, but should not be frozen or kept at  
120 ambient temperatures. Tissues and dry scabs for virus isolation, antigen detection and genome  
121 detection should preferably be kept at 4°C, on ice or at -20°C. If it is necessary to transport samples  
122 over long distances without refrigeration, the medium should contain 10% glycerol; the samples  
123 should be of sufficient size that the transport medium does not penetrate the central part of the  
124 biopsy, which should be used for virus isolation/detection.

## 1.2. Virus isolation

125  
126 Lesion material for virus isolation and genome antigen detection is homogenised. The following is an  
127 example of one technique for homogenisation: The tissue is minced using sterile scissors and  
128 forceps, and then macerated in a steel ball bearing mixer mill or ground with a sterile pestle in a  
129 mortar with sterile sand and an equal volume of sterile phosphate buffered saline (PBS) or serum-  
130 free Modified Eagle's Medium (MEM) containing sodium penicillin (1000 international units [IU]/ml),  
131 streptomycin sulphate (1 mg/ml), mycostatin (100 IU/ml) or fungizone (2.5 µg/ml) and neomycin  
132 (200 IU/ml). The homogenised suspension is freeze-thawed three times and then partially clarified  
133 by centrifugation using a bench centrifuge at 600 **g** for 10 minutes. In cases where bacterial  
134 contamination of the sample is expected (such as when virus is isolated from skin samples), the  
135 supernatant can be filtered through a 0.45 µm pore size filter after the centrifugation step, however,  
136 the amount of virus in the supernatant might be reduced. Buffy coats may be prepared from 5–8 ml  
137 unclotted blood by centrifugation at 600 **g** for 15 minutes; the buffy coat is carefully removed into 5  
138 ml of cold double-distilled water using a sterile Pasteur pipette. After 30 seconds, 5 ml of cold double-  
139 strength growth medium is added and mixed. The mixture is centrifuged at 600 **g** for 15 minutes, the  
140 supernatant is discarded and the cell pellet is suspended in 5 ml of growth medium, such as  
141 Glasgow's modified Eagle's medium (GMEM). After centrifugation at 600 **g** for a further 15 minutes,  
142 the resulting pellet is suspended in 5 ml of fresh GMEM. Alternatively, the buffy coat may be  
143 separated from a heparinised sample using a density gradient.

144 Capripoxvirus will grow in tissue culture of bovine, ovine or caprine origin, although primary or  
145 secondary cultures of lamb testis (LT) or lamb kidney (LK) cells are considered to be the most  
146 susceptible. Care needs to be taken to ensure they are not contaminated with viruses such as bovine  
147 viral diarrhoea virus, particularly those derived from a wool sheep breed (see chapter 1.1.9). Madin-  
148 Darby bovine kidney (MDBK) cells have been shown to be suitable for capripoxvirus isolation (Fay  
149 et al., 2020). The following is an example of an isolation technique: either 1 ml of buffy coat cell  
150 suspension or 1 ml of clarified biopsy preparation supernatant is inoculated on to a 25 cm<sup>2</sup> tissue  
151 culture flask of appropriate cells at 90% confluent LT or LK cells confluence, and the supernatant is  
152 allowed to adsorb for 1 hour at 37°C. The culture is then washed with warm PBS and covered with  
153 10 ml of a suitable medium, such as GMEM, containing antibiotics and 2% fetal calf serum. If  
154 available, tissue culture tubes ~~containing LT or LK cells and a~~ flying cover-slips, or tissue culture  
155 microscope slides, are can also be infected.

156 The flasks should be examined daily for 7–14 days for evidence of cytopathic effect (CPE).  
157 Contaminated flasks should be discarded. Infected cells develop a characteristic CPE consisting of  
158 retraction of the cell membrane from surrounding cells, and eventually rounding of cells and  
159 margination of the nuclear chromatin. At first only small areas of CPE can be seen, sometimes as  
160 soon as 4 days after infection; over the following 4–6 days these expand to involve the whole cell  
161 sheet. If no CPE is apparent by day 7, the culture should be freeze-thawed three times, and clarified  
162 supernatant inoculated on to fresh LT or LK cell cultures. At the first sign of CPE in the flasks, or

163 earlier if a number of infected cover-slips are being used, a cover-slip should be removed, fixed in  
164 acetone and stained using H&E. Eosinophilic intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies, which are variable  
165 in size but up to half the size of the nucleus and surrounded by a clear halo, are indicative of poxvirus  
166 infection. Syncytia formation is not a feature of capripoxvirus infection. If the CPE is due to  
167 capripoxvirus infection of the cell culture, it can be prevented or delayed by inclusion of specific anti-  
168 capripoxvirus serum in the medium; this provides a presumptive identification of the agent. Some  
169 strains of capripoxvirus have been adapted to grow on African green monkey kidney (Vero) cells, but  
170 these cells are not recommended for primary isolation.

### 171 **1.3. Electron microscopy**

172 The characteristic poxvirus virion can be visualised using a negative-staining preparation technique  
173 followed by examination with an electron microscope. There are many different negative-staining  
174 protocols, an example is given below:

175 Material from the original tissue suspension is prepared for transmission electron microscope  
176 examination, prior to centrifugation, by floating a 400-mesh hexagon electron microscope grid, with  
177 piliform-carbon substrate activated by glow discharge in pentylamine vapour, on to a drop of the  
178 suspension placed on parafilm or a wax plate. After 1 minute, the grid is transferred to a drop of  
179 Tris/EDTA buffer, pH 7.8, for 20 seconds and then to a drop of 1% phosphotungstic acid, pH 7.2, for  
180 10 seconds. The grid is drained using filter paper, air-dried and placed in the electron microscope.  
181 The capripoxvirus virion is brick shaped, covered in short tubular elements and measures  
182 approximately 290 × 270 nm. A host-cell-derived membrane may surround some of the virions, and  
183 as many as possible should be examined to confirm their appearance (Kitching & Smale, 1986).

184 The virions of capripoxvirus are indistinguishable from those of orthopoxvirus, but, apart from  
185 *Vaccinia* virus, no orthopoxvirus causes lesions in sheep and goats. However, capripoxvirus is  
186 distinguishable from the virions of parapoxvirus, that cause contagious pustular dermatitis, as they  
187 are smaller, oval in shape, and each is covered in a single continuous tubular element, which appears  
188 as striations over the virion.

### 189 **1.4. Histopathology**

190 Material for histopathology and immunohistochemistry should be prepared by standard techniques  
191 (Parvin et al., 2022). Following preparation, and staining with haematoxylin and eosin (H&E), and  
192 mounting of the formalin-fixed biopsy material, a number of sections should be examined by light  
193 microscopy. On histological examination, the most striking aspects of acute-stage skin lesions are a  
194 massive cellular infiltrate, vasculitis and oedema. Early lesions are characterised by marked  
195 perivascular cuffing. Initially infiltration is by macrophages, neutrophils and occasionally eosinophils,  
196 and as the lesion progresses, by more macrophages, lymphocytes and plasma cells. A characteristic  
197 feature of all capripoxvirus infections is the presence of variable numbers of 'sheep pox cells' in the  
198 dermis. These sheep pox cells can also occur in other organs where microscopic lesions of sheep  
199 and goat pox are present. These cells are large, stellate cells with eosinophilic, poorly defined  
200 intracytoplasmic inclusions and vacuolated nuclei. Vasculitis is accompanied by thrombosis and  
201 infarction, causing oedema and necrosis. Epidermal changes consist of acanthosis, parakeratosis  
202 and hyperkeratosis. Changes in other organs are similar, with a predominant cellular infiltration and  
203 vasculitis. Lesions in the upper respiratory tract are characterised by ulceration.

204 Immunohistochemistry will show capripox virus antigen infiltrated macrophages throughout the  
205 subcutis. The capripox virus antigen can occasionally be detected in hair follicle epithelial cells, the  
206 endothelium and smooth muscle cells of the blood vessels, and histiocytic cells (Parvin et al., 2022).



207

## 1.5. Immunological methods

208

### 1.5.1. Fluorescent antibody tests

209

Capripoxvirus antigen can also be identified on infected cover-slips or tissue culture slides using fluorescent antibody tests. Cover-slips or slides should be washed and air-dried and fixed in cold acetone for 10 minutes. The indirect test using immune sheep or goat sera is subject to high background colour and nonspecific reactions. However, a direct conjugate can be prepared from sera from convalescent sheep or goats or from rabbits hyperimmunised with purified *Capripoxvirus*. Uninfected tissue culture should be included as a negative control because cross-reactions, due to antibodies to cell culture antigens, can cause problems. The fluorescent antibody tissue section technique has also been used on cryostat-prepared slides.

217

## 1.6. Nucleic acid recognition methods

218

Amplification methods for detection of the viral DNA genome are specific to the genus *Capripoxvirus* DNA and both specific and sensitive for detection throughout the course of disease, including before and after the emergence of antibody responses. These methods include conventional PCR, real-time PCR, and most recently loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP). Nucleic acid recognition methods can be used to detect the *Capripoxvirus* genome in biopsy, swab, blood, semen or tissue culture samples. It is important that nucleic acid extraction and PCR amplification methods are validated for the sample matrix being tested.

225

### 1.6.1. Conventional PCR methods

226

Several conventional PCR methods have been reported with varying specificity for capripoxviruses in general, SPPV, or GTPV (Heine *et al.*, 1999; Ireland & Binopal, 1998; Zro *et al.*, 2014a). A conventional PCR assay that differentiates GTPV and LSDV from SPPV has been described (Lamien *et al.*, 2011a). Conventional PCR methods are particularly useful for obtaining sufficient genetic material necessary for species identification by subsequent sequence and phylogenetic analysis (Le Goff *et al.*, 2009).

232

The conventional gel-based PCR method described below is a simple, fast and sensitive method for the detection of capripoxvirus genome in EDTA blood, semen or tissue culture samples (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2005).

234

235

#### Test procedure

236

The extraction method described below can be replaced using commercially available DNA extraction kits.

237

238

i) Freeze and thaw 200 µl of blood in EDTA, semen or tissue culture supernatant and suspend in 100 µl of lysis buffer containing 5 M guanidine thiocyanate, 50 mM potassium chloride, 10 mM Tris/HCl (pH 8); and 0.5 ml Tween 20.

239

240

241

ii) Cut skin and other tissue samples into fine pieces using a sterile scalpel blade and forceps. Grind with a pestle in a mortar. Suspend the tissue samples in 800 µl of the above mentioned lysis buffer.

242

243

244

iii) Add 2 µl of proteinase K (20 mg/ml) to blood samples and 10 µl of proteinase K (20 mg/ml) to tissue samples. Incubate at 56°C for 2 hours or overnight, followed by heating at 100°C for 10 minutes. Add phenol:chloroform:isoamylalcohol (25:24:1 [v/v]) to the samples in a 1:1 ratio. Vortex and incubate at room temperature for 10 minutes. Centrifuge the samples at 16,060 g for 15 minutes at 4°C. Carefully collect the upper aqueous phase (up to 200 µl) and transfer into a clean 2.0 ml tube. Add two volumes of ice cold ethanol (100%) and 1/10 volume of 3 M sodium acetate (pH 5.3). Place the samples at -20°C for 1 hour. Centrifuge again at 16,060 g for 15 minutes at 4°C and discard the supernatant. Wash the pellets with ice cold 70% ethanol (100 µl) and centrifuge at 16,060 g for 1 minute at 4°C. Discard the supernatant and dry the pellets thoroughly. Suspend the pellets in 30 µl of nuclease-free water and store immediately at

245

246

247

248

249

250

251

252

253

254

255 -20°C (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2005). Alternatively a column-based extraction kit may be  
256 used.

257 iv) The primers for this PCR assay were developed from the gene encoding the viral  
258 attachment protein. The size of the expected amplicon is 192 bp (Ireland & Binopal,  
259 1998). The primers have the following gene sequences:

260 Forward primer 5'-TCC-GAG-CTC-TTT-CCT-GAT-TTT-TCT-TAC-TAT-3'

261 Reverse primer 5'-TAT-GGT-ACC-TAA-ATT-ATA-TAC-GTA-AAT-AAC-3'

262 v) DNA amplification is carried out in a final volume of 50 µl containing: 5 µl of 10 × PCR  
263 buffer, 1.5 µl of MgCl<sub>2</sub> (50 mM), 1 µl of dNTP (10 mM), 1 µl of forward primer, 1 µl of  
264 reverse primer, 1 µl of DNA template (~10 ng), 0.5 µl of *Taq* DNA polymerase and 39 µl  
265 of nuclease-free water. The volume of DNA template required may vary and the volume  
266 of nuclease-free water must be adjusted to the final volume of 50 µl.

267 vi) Run the samples in a thermal cycler as follows: 2 minutes at 95°C; then 45 seconds at  
268 95°C, 50 seconds at 50°C and 1 minute at 72°C (34 cycles); 2 minutes at 72°C and hold  
269 at 4°C until analysis.

270 vii) Mix 10 µl of each sample with loading dye and load onto a 1.5% agarose gel in TAE buffer  
271 (Tris/acetate buffer containing EDTA). Load a parallel lane with a 100 bp DNA-marker  
272 ladder. Electrophoretically separate the products using approximately 8–10 V/cm for 40–  
273 60 minutes and visualise with a suitable DNA stain and transilluminator.

## 274 **1.6.2. Real-time PCR methods**

275 Several highly sensitive and specific fluorescent detection-based real-time PCR methods have  
276 been developed and validated (Balinsky *et al.*, 2008; Bowden *et al.*, 2008; Das *et al.*, 2012;  
277 Stubbs *et al.*, 2012). Each test detects a small conserved genetic locus within the capripoxvirus  
278 genome, but these methods do not discriminate between SPPV, GTPV or LSDV. Real-time  
279 PCR methods for direct capripoxvirus genotyping species differentiation without the need for  
280 gene sequencing have been described (Haegeman *et al.*, 2013; Gelaye *et al.*, 2013; Lamien  
281 *et al.*, 2011b; Wolff *et al.*, 2021).

282 The real-time PCR method described below is a rapid, sensitive and specific method for the  
283 detection of the genomic DNA from SPPV, GTPV or LSDV. This assay will is not designed to  
284 differentiate between the capripoxvirus species.

285 DNA extraction from blood, and tissue and semen

286 A number of DNA extraction kits are commercially available for the isolation extraction of  
287 template DNA for real-time PCR. Manufacturer's instructions should always be consulted for  
288 guidance on the appropriate method for the sample type being extracted followed while using  
289 commercial extraction kits. WOAHP Reference Laboratories can be contacted for advice on  
290 suitable commercial kits.

### 291 Real-time PCR

292 i) The real-time PCR method outlined below uses the primers and probe described by  
293 Bowden *et al.* (2008), and further validated by Stubbs *et al.* (2012). Cycling conditions  
294 and reagent concentrations can be altered to ensure optimal performance in individual  
295 laboratories.

296 ii) Forward and reverse primers should be prepared at concentrations of 20 µM. A minor  
297 grove binder (MGB) TaqMan hydrolysis probe should be prepared at a concentration of  
298 10 µM.

299 Forward primer: 5'-AAA-ACG-GTA-TAT-GGA-ATA-GAG-TTG-GAA-3'

300 Reverse primer: 5'-AAA-TGA-AAC-CAA-TGG-ATG-GGA-TA-3'

301 Probe: 5'-FAM-TGG-CTC-ATA-GAT-TTC-CT-MGB-3'

- 302 iii) Mastermix is prepared by combining 10 µl of 2 × real-time PCR mastermix with 0.4 µl of  
303 forward primer, 0.4 µl of reverse primer, 0.5 µl of probe and 6.7 µl of RNase free water  
304 per reaction.
- 305 iv) Add 2 µl of extracted DNA to 18 µl of mastermix in a 96-well PCR plate or PCR strip and  
306 perform real-time PCR according to the example given below or similar method:
- 307 v) 95°C for 10 minutes followed by 45 cycles of 95°C for 15 seconds, 60°C for 60 seconds.  
308 Fluorescence detection should be performed at the end of each cycle.
- 309 vi) Following completion of the real-time PCR, a cycle threshold (C<sub>T</sub>) should be set. Samples  
310 with C<sub>T</sub> values less than 35 are considered positive. Samples with a C<sub>T</sub> value greater than  
311 35 but less than 45 are considered inconclusive and require further investigation.  
312 Samples which do not yield a C<sub>T</sub> value, i.e. the amplification curve does not cross the  
313 threshold, are considered negative.

### 314 1.6.3. Isothermal genome amplification

315 Molecular tests using loop-mediated isothermal amplification (LAMP) to detect capripoxvirus  
316 genomes are reported to provide sensitivity and specificity similar to real-time PCR with a  
317 simpler method and at lower cost (Das *et al.*, 2012; Murray *et al.*, 2013). Field validation of the  
318 Das *et al.* (2012) LAMP **method-assay** has been further reported **by** (Omoga *et al.*, 2016) and  
319 a combination of this universal capripoxvirus test with two additional LAMP assays was  
320 reported **to show utility in discriminating between to differentiate** GTPV **and from** SPPV (Zhao  
321 *et al.*, 2014).

## 322 2. Serological tests

323 **Detectable levels of antibodies develop 1 week after the animal shows clinical signs. The highest antibody**  
324 **levels are detected within 1–2 months after infection is detected.**

### 325 2.1. Virus neutralisation

326 A test serum can either be titrated against a constant titre of capripoxvirus (100 TCID<sub>50</sub> [50% tissue  
327 culture infective dose]) or a standard capripoxvirus strain can be titrated against a constant dilution  
328 of test serum in order to calculate a neutralisation index. Because of the variable sensitivity of tissue  
329 culture to capripoxvirus, and the consequent difficulty of ensuring the use of 100 TCID<sub>50</sub>, the  
330 neutralisation index is the preferred method, although it does require a larger volume of test sera.  
331 The test is described using 96-well flat-bottomed tissue culture grade microtitre plates, but it can be  
332 performed equally well in tissue culture tubes with the appropriate changes to the volumes used,  
333 although it is more difficult to read an end-point in tubes. ~~The use of Vero cells in the virus~~  
334 ~~neutralisation test has been reported to give more consistent results (Kitching & Taylor, 1985).~~

#### 335 2.1.1. Test procedure

- 336 i) Test sera including a negative and a positive control are diluted 1/5 in Eagle's/HEPES  
337 (N-2-hydroxyethylpiperazine, N-2-ethanesulphonic acid) and inactivated at 56°C for  
338 30 minutes.
- 339 ii) Next, 50 µl of the first inactivated serum is added to columns 1 and 2, rows A to H of the  
340 microtitre plate. The second serum is placed in columns 3 and 4, the third in columns  
341 5 and 6, the positive control serum is placed in columns 7 and 8, the negative control  
342 serum is placed in columns 9 and 10, and 50 µl of Eagle's/HEPES without serum is placed  
343 in columns 11 and 12 and to all wells of row H.
- 344 iii) A reference strain of capripoxvirus, usually a vaccine strain known to grow well in tissue  
345 culture, with a titre of over log<sub>10</sub> 6 TCID<sub>50</sub> per ml is diluted in Eagle's/HEPES in bijoux  
346 bottles to give a log dilution series of log<sub>10</sub> 5.0; 4.0; 3.5; 3.0; 2.5; 2.0; 1.5 TCID<sub>50</sub> per ml  
347 (equivalent to log<sub>10</sub> 3.7; 2.7; 2.2; 1.7; 1.2; 0.7; 0.2 TCID<sub>50</sub> per 50 µl).
- 348 iv) Starting with row G and the most diluted virus preparation, 50 µl of virus is added to each  
349 well in that row. This is repeated with each virus dilution, the highest titre virus dilution  
350 being placed in row A.

- 351 v) The plates are covered and incubated for 1 hour at 37°C.
- 352 vi) ~~LT cells are~~ An appropriate cell suspension (such as MDBK cells) is prepared from  
353 pregrown monolayers as a suspension of 10<sup>5</sup> cells/ml in Eagle's medium containing  
354 antibiotics and 2% fetal calf serum. Following incubation of the microtitre plates, 100 µl of  
355 cell suspension is added to all the wells, except wells H11 and H12, which serve as control  
356 wells for the medium. The remaining wells of row H are cell and serum toxicity controls.
- 357 vii) The microtitre plates are covered and incubated at 37°C for 9 days.
- 358 viii) Using an inverted microscope, the monolayers are examined daily starting at day 4 for  
359 evidence of CPE. There should be no CPE in the cells of row H. Using the 0240 KSGP  
360 vaccine strain of capripoxvirus, the final reading is taken on day 9, and the titre of virus in  
361 each duplicate titration is calculated according to the Kärber method. If left longer, there  
362 is invariably a 'breakthrough' of virus in which virus that was at first neutralised appears  
363 to disassociate from the antibody.
- 364 ix) *Interpretation of the results:* The neutralisation index is the log titre difference between  
365 the titre of the virus in the negative serum and in the test serum. An index of ≥1.5 is  
366 positive. The test can be made more sensitive if serum from the same animal is examined  
367 before and after infection. Because immunity to capripoxvirus is predominantly cell  
368 mediated, a negative result, particularly following vaccination in which the response is  
369 necessarily mild, does not imply that the animal from which the serum was taken is not  
370 protected.

371 ~~A constant virus/varying serum method has been described using serum dilutions in the~~  
372 ~~range 1/5 to 1/500 and fetal calf muscle cells. Because these cells have a lower sensitivity~~  
373 ~~to capripoxvirus than LT cells, the problem of virus 'breakthrough' is overcome.~~

## 374 2.2. Indirect fluorescent antibody test

375 Capripoxvirus-infected tissue culture grown on flying cover-slips or tissue culture microscope slides  
376 can be used for the indirect fluorescent antibody test. Uninfected tissue culture control, and positive  
377 and negative control sera, should be included in the test. The infected and control cultures are fixed  
378 in acetone at -20°C for 10 minutes and stored at 4°C. Dilutions of test sera are made in PBS, starting  
379 at 1/5, and positives are identified using an anti-sheep gamma-globulin conjugated with fluorescein  
380 isothiocyanate (Davies & Otema, 1978). Cross-reactions can occur with orf, bovine papular stomatitis  
381 virus and perhaps other poxviruses.

## 382 2.3. Western blot analysis

383 Western blotting of test sera against capripoxvirus-infected cell lysate provides a sensitive and  
384 specific system for the detection of antibody to capripoxvirus structural proteins, although the test is  
385 expensive and difficult to carry out (Chand *et al.*, 1994).

## 386 2.4. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay

387 ~~No validated ELISA is available for the serological diagnosis of SPP or GTP.~~

388 Both in-house and commercial enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISAs) are available, but  
389 these tests cannot discriminate between antibodies to different capripoxviruses (LSDV or  
390 SPPV/GTPV).

## C. REQUIREMENTS FOR VACCINES

**[THIS SECTION IS UNDER REVIEW IN THE 2024/2025 REVIEW CYCLE]**

391  
392

### 393 1. Background

#### 394 1.1. Rationale and intended use of the product

395 A variety of attenuated live and inactivated capripoxvirus vaccines has been used to provide  
396 protection against sheeppox and goatpox. All strains of capripoxvirus of ovine, caprine or bovine  
397 origin examined so far share a major neutralising site, so that animals recovered from infection with  
398 one strain are resistant to infection with any other strain (Capstick, 1961). Consequently, it is possible  
399 to use a single strain of capripoxvirus to protect both sheep and goats against all field strains of virus,  
400 regardless of whether their origin was in Asia or Africa (Kitching *et al.*, 1986; Kitching & Taylor, 1985).  
401 However, field evidence suggests some strains are quite host-specific and are used only in sheep  
402 against SPPV and only in goat against GTPV.

403 A number of strains of capripoxvirus have had widespread use as live vaccines (Davies & Mbugwa,  
404 1985), for example the Romanian and RM-65 strains used mainly in sheep and the Mysore and  
405 Gorgan strains used in goats. The real identity of the commonly used Kenyan sheep and goat pox  
406 vaccine virus (KSGP) 0240 was recently shown to be actually LSDV (Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2014). Virus  
407 strain identity and attenuation properties must be ascertained and taken into consideration when  
408 selecting vaccine strains for use in cattle, sheep and goats. The protective dose depends on the  
409 vaccine strain used. Immunity in sheep and goats against capripoxvirus following vaccination with  
410 the 0240 strain lasts over a year and the Romanian strain gave protection for at least 30 months.

411 Killed vaccines produced from tissue culture contain only the intracellular mature virion form of the  
412 virus, and lack the less robust but biologically crucial extracellular enveloped virion form. As a result,  
413 the vaccine does not stimulate immunity against the extracellular enveloped virion, resulting in poor  
414 protection. Killed capripoxvirus vaccines provide, at best, only temporary protection.

### 415 2. Outline of production and minimum requirements for conventional vaccines

416 General requirements set for the facilities used for the production of vaccines and for the documentation and  
417 record keeping throughout the whole manufacturing process are described in Chapter 1.1.8 *Principles of*  
418 *veterinary vaccine production*. The documentation should include the standard operating procedures (SOP)  
419 for the method of manufacture and each step for the testing of cells and reagents used in the process, each  
420 batches and the final product.

#### 421 2.1. Characteristics of the seed

##### 422 2.1.1. Biological characteristics

423 A strain of capripoxvirus used for vaccine production must be accompanied by a history  
424 describing its origin and tissue culture or animal passage. It must be safe to use in all breeds  
425 of sheep and goats for which it is intended, including pregnant and young animals. It must be  
426 non-transmissible, remain attenuated after further tissue culture passage, and provide  
427 complete protection against challenge with virulent field strains for a minimum of 1 year. A  
428 quantity of master seed vaccine virus should be prepared and stored in order to provide a  
429 consistent working seed for regular vaccine production.

##### 430 2.1.2. Quality criteria (sterility, purity, freedom from extraneous agents)

431 Each master seed must be tested to ensure its identity and shown to be free from adventitious  
432 viruses, in particular pestiviruses, such as border disease and bovine viral diarrhoea virus, and  
433 free from contamination with bacteria, fungi and/or mycoplasmas. The general procedures for  
434 sterility or purity tests are described in chapter 1.1.9. The master seed must also be safe and  
435 produce no clinical reaction in all breeds of sheep or goats when given by the recommended  
436 route and stimulate complete immunity to capripoxvirus in all breeds of sheep and goats for at



437 least 1 year. The necessary safety and potency tests are described in Section C.2.2.4 *Final*  
438 *product batch tests*.

## 439 **2.2. Method of manufacture**

440 The method of manufacture should be documented as the Outline of Production.

### 441 **2.2.1. Procedure**

442 Vaccine seed should be lyophilised and stored in 2 ml vials at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . It may be stored wet at  
443  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ , but when wet, is more stable at  $-70^{\circ}\text{C}$  or lower. The virus should be cultured in primary  
444 or secondary LT or LK cells of wool sheep origin for maximum yield. Vero cells may also be  
445 used with suitably adapted strains.

446 Vaccine batches are produced on fresh monolayers of secondary LT or primary LK cells. A  
447 vial of seed virus is reconstituted with GMEM or another appropriate medium and inoculated  
448 on to an LT or LK monolayer that has been previously washed with warm PBS, and allowed  
449 to adsorb for 15 minutes at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$  before being overlaid with additional GMEM. After 4–6 days,  
450 there will be extensive (80–90%) CPE. The culture should be examined for any evidence of  
451 nonspecific CPE, medium cloudiness or change in medium pH. The culture is freeze–thawed  
452 three times, the suspension removed and centrifuged at 600 **g** for 20 minutes. A second  
453 passage may be required to produce sufficient virus for a production batch. Live vaccine may  
454 be produced on roller bottles.

455 The procedure is repeated and the harvests from individually numbered flasks are each mixed  
456 separately with an equal volume of sterile and chilled 5% lactalbumin hydrolysate and 10%  
457 sucrose, and transferred to individually numbered bottles for storage at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Prior to  
458 storage, 0.2 ml is removed from each bottle for sterility control. An additional 0.2 ml is removed  
459 for virus titration; 2 ml pools composed of 0.2 ml samples taken from ten bottles are used. A  
460 written record of all the procedures must be kept for all vaccine batches.

461 Inactivated vaccines are produced, usually from unattenuated field strains of capripoxvirus,  
462 grown in tissue culture as described above, inactivated with 0.03% formaldehyde, and mixed  
463 with an equal volume of alhydrogel as adjuvant. Formaldehyde is no longer considered to be  
464 a suitable inactivant for certain viral vaccines because its mode of action cannot be guaranteed  
465 to be totally effective in inactivating all the live virus. This has not been fully investigated for  
466 capripoxvirus.

### 467 **2.2.2. Requirements for substrate and media**

468 The specification and source of all ingredients used in the manufacturing procedure should be  
469 documented and the freedom from extraneous agents: bacteria, fungi, mycoplasma and any  
470 other viruses should be tested. The detailed testing procedure is described in the chapter  
471 1.1.9. The use of antibiotics must meet the requirements of the licensing authority.

### 472 **2.2.3. In-process controls**

#### 473 **i) Cells**

474 Cells should be obtained from the testis or kidney of a healthy young lamb from a scrapie-  
475 free flock of a wool sheep breed. During cultivation, cells must be observed for any  
476 evidence of CPE, and for normal morphology (predominantly fibroblastic). They can  
477 usually be passaged successfully up to ten times. When used for vaccine production,  
478 uninfected control cultures should be grown in parallel and maintained for at least three  
479 additional passages for further observation. They should be checked for the presence of  
480 noncytopathic strains of bovine virus diarrhoea or border disease viruses by  
481 immunofluorescence or immunoperoxidase techniques. If possible, cells should be  
482 prepared and screened prior to vaccine production and stocked in 1–2 ml aliquots  
483 containing  $2 \times 10^7$  cells/ml in sterile 10% DMSO (dimethyl sulphoxide) and 90% FBS  
484 (fetal bovine serum) solution stored in liquid nitrogen.



- 485 ii) Serum  
486 Bovine serum used in the growth or maintenance medium must be free from transmissible  
487 spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs) and antibody to capripoxvirus, and tested for  
488 contamination with pestivirus or any other viruses, extraneous bacteria, mycoplasma or  
489 fungi.
- 490 iii) Medium  
491 Medium must be tested free from contamination with pestivirus or any other viruses,  
492 extraneous bacteria, mycoplasma or fungi.
- 493 iv) Virus  
494 Seed virus and final vaccine must be titrated in tissue culture tubes or microtitre plates.  
495 Vaccine samples must be examined for the presence of adventitious viruses including  
496 cytopathic and noncytopathic strains of pestivirus, and should be mixed with a high-titre  
497 capripoxvirus-immune serum that has tested negative for antibody to pestivirus to prevent  
498 the vaccine virus itself interfering with the test. The vaccine bulk can be held at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  or  
499 below until all sterility tests and titrations have been completed, at which time it should be  
500 freeze-dried in 1 ml aliquots in vials sufficient for 100 doses. The vaccine harvest diluted  
501 with lactalbumin hydrolysate and sucrose should have a minimum titre  $\log_{10}$  4.5 TCID<sub>50</sub>  
502 per ml after freeze-drying, equivalent to a field dose of  $\log_{10}$  2.5 TCID<sub>50</sub>. A further titration  
503 is carried out on five randomly chosen vials of the freeze-dried preparation to confirm the  
504 titre.

#### 505 2.2.4. Final product batch tests

- 506 i) Sterility/purity  
507 Tests for sterility and freedom from contamination of biological materials intended for  
508 veterinary use may be found in chapter 1.1.9.
- 509 ii) Safety  
510 The safety studies should be demonstrated by statistically valid vaccination studies using  
511 seronegative young sheep and goats of known susceptibility to capripox virus. The  
512 procedure described is suitable for vaccine strains such as 0240 that are equally  
513 immunogenic in both sheep and goats. The choice of target animal should be adapted for  
514 strains with a more restricted host preference.
- 515 iii) Potency  
516 Potency tests must be undertaken if the minimum immunising dose of the virus strain is  
517 not known. This is usually carried out by comparing the titre of a virulent challenge virus  
518 on the flanks of vaccinated and control animals. Following vaccination, the flanks of at  
519 least three animals and three controls are shaved of wool or hair.  $\log_{10}$  dilutions of the  
520 challenge virus are prepared in sterile PBS and six dilutions are inoculated intradermally  
521 (0.1 ml per inoculum) along the length of the flank; four replicates of each dilution are  
522 inoculated down the flank. An oedematous swelling will develop at possibly all  
523 24 inoculation sites on the control animals, although preferably there will be little or no  
524 reaction at the four sites of the most dilute inocula. The vaccinated animals should  
525 develop an initial hypersensitivity reaction at sites of inoculation within 24 hours, which  
526 should quickly subside. Small areas of necrosis may develop at the inoculation site of the  
527 most concentrated challenge virus. The macule/papule is measured at between 8 and 10  
528 days post-challenge. The titre of the challenge virus is calculated for the vaccinated and  
529 control animals; a difference of  $\log_{10}$  titre  $> 2.5$  is taken as evidence of protection.

530 **2.3. Requirements for authorisation**

531 **2.3.1. Safety requirements**

532 i) Target and non-target animal safety

533 The vaccine must be safe to use in all breeds of sheep and goats for which it is intended,  
534 including young and pregnant animals. It must also be non-transmissible, remain  
535 attenuated after further tissue culture passage.

536 Safety tests should be carried out on the final product of each batch as described in  
537 Section C.2.2.4.

538 The safety of the vaccine in non-target animals must have been demonstrated using mice  
539 and guinea-pigs as described in Section C.2.2.4. There should be no evidence of  
540 pathology caused by the vaccine.

541 ii) Reversion-to-virulence for attenuated/live vaccines

542 The selected final vaccine should not revert to virulence during a further passages in  
543 target animals.

544 iii) Environmental consideration

545 Attenuated vaccine should not be able to perpetuate autonomously in cattle, sheep or  
546 goat populations. Vaccines using the 0240 strain should not be used in *Bos taurus*  
547 breeds. Strains of capripoxvirus are not a hazard to human health. There are no  
548 precautions other than those described above for sterility and freedom from adventitious  
549 agents.

550 **2.3.2. Efficacy requirements**

551 i) For animal production

552 The efficacy of the vaccine must be demonstrated in vaccination challenge experiment  
553 under laboratory conditions. As described in Section C.2.2.4.

554 Once the potency of the particular strain being used for vaccine production has been  
555 determined in terms of minimum dose required to provide immunity, it is not necessary to  
556 repeat this on the final product of each batch, provided the titre of virus present has been  
557 ascertained.

558 ii) For control and eradication

559 Vaccination is the only effective way to control the sheep pox and goat pox outbreaks in  
560 endemic countries. Unfortunately, currently no marker vaccines allowing the  
561 differentiation of infected from vaccinated animals are available.

562 Immunity to virulent field virus following vaccination of sheep or goats with the 0240 strain  
563 lasts over 1 year, and protection against generalised infection following intradermal  
564 challenge lasts at least 3 years and is effective lifelong. The duration of immunity  
565 produced by other vaccine strains should be ascertained in both sheep and goats by  
566 undertaking controlled trials in an environment in which there is no possibility of field  
567 strains of capripoxvirus confusing the results. The inactivated vaccines provide immunity  
568 for less than 1 year, and for the reasons given at the beginning of this section, may not  
569 give immunity to the form of capripoxvirus usually associated with natural transmission.

570 **2.3.3. Stability**

571 All vaccines are initially given a shelf-life of 24 months before expiry. Real-time stability studies  
572 are then conducted to confirm the appropriateness of the expiry date. Multiple batches of the  
573 vaccine should be re-titrated periodically throughout the shelf-life to determine the vaccine  
574 variability.

575 Properly freeze-dried preparations of capripox vaccine, particularly those that include a  
576 protectant, such as sucrose and lactalbumin hydrolysate, are stable for over 25 years when  
577 stored at –20°C and for 2–4 years when stored at 4°C. There is evidence that they are stable  
578 at higher temperatures, but no long-term controlled experiments have been reported. The  
579 inactivated vaccines must be stored at 4°C, and their shelf- life is usually given as 1 year.

580 No preservatives other than a protectant, such as sucrose and lactalbumin hydrolysate, are  
581 required for the freeze-dried preparation.

### 582 3. Vaccines based on biotechnology

#### 583 3.1. Vaccines available and their advantages

584 Currently, no recombinant vaccines for capripoxviruses are commercially available. However, a new  
585 generation of capripox vaccines is being developed that uses the capripoxvirus genome as a vector  
586 for the genes of other ruminant pathogens such as peste des petits ruminants (PPR) virus (Berhe *et*  
587 *al.*, 2003; Tuppurainen *et al.*, 2014).

#### 588 3.2. Special requirements for biotechnological vaccines, if any

589 Not applicable.

## 590 REFERENCES

591 BALINSKY C.A, DELHON G, SMOLIGA G, PRARAT M, FRENCH R.A, GEARY S.J, ROCK D.L & RODRIGUEZ L.L. (2008).  
592 Rapid preclinical detection of sheep pox virus by a real-time PCR assay. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **46**, 438–442.

593 BERHE G., MINET C., LE GOFF C., BARRETT T., NGANGNOU A., GRILLET C., LIBEAU G., FLEMING M., BLACK D.N. &  
594 DIALLO A. (2003). Development of a dual recombinant vaccine to protect small ruminants against peste-des-  
595 petits-ruminants virus and capripoxvirus infections. *J. Virol.*, **77**, 1571–1577.

596 BOWDEN T.R, BABIUK S.L, PARKYN G.R., COPPS J.S. & BOYLE D.B. (2008). Capripox virus tissue tropism and  
597 shedding: A quantitative study in experimentally infected sheep and goats. *Virology* , **371**, 380–393.

598 CAPSTICK P.B. (1961). Annual Report. Kenya Veterinary Department, Kenya, 45–47.

599 CHAND P., KITCHING R.P. & BLACK D.N. (1994). Western blot analysis of virus-specific antibody responses to  
600 capripoxvirus and contagious pustular dermatitis infections in sheep. *Epidemiol. Infect.*, **113**, 377–385.

601 DAS A., BABIUK S. & MCINTOSH M.T. (2012). Development of a loop-mediated isothermal amplification assay  
602 for rapid detection of capripoxviruses. *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, **50**, 1613–1620.

603 DAVIES F.G. & MBUGWA G. (1985). The alterations in pathogenicity and immunogenicity of a Kenya sheep and  
604 goat pox virus on serial passage in bovine foetal muscle cell cultures. *J. Comp. Pathol.*, **95**, 565–576.

605 DAVIES F.G. & OTEMA C. (1978). The antibody response in sheep infected with a Kenyan sheep and goat pox  
606 virus. *J. Comp. Pathol.*, **88**, 205–210.

607 Fay P.C., Cook C.G., Wijesiriwardana N., Tore G., Comtet L., Carpentier A., Shih B., Freimanis G., Haga I.R.  
608 & Beard P.M. (2020). Madin–Darby bovine kidney (MDBK) cells are a suitable cell line for the propagation and  
609 study of the bovine poxvirus lumpy skin disease virus. *J. Virol. Methods*, **285**, 113943. doi:  
610 10.1016/j.jviromet.2020.113943.

611 GELAYE E., LAMIEN C.E., SILBER R., TUPPURAINEN E.S., GRABHERR R. & DIALLO A.(2013). Development of a cost-  
612 effective method for capripoxvirus genotyping using snapback primer and dsDNA intercalating dye. *PLoS One*,  
613 **8** (10): e75971.

- 614 HAEGEMAN A., ZRO K., VANDENBUSSCHE F., DEMEESTERE L., VAN CAMPE W., ENNAJIM M. & DE CLERCQ K. (2013).  
615 Development and validation of three Capripoxvirus real-time PCRs for parallel testing. *J. Virol. Methods*, **193**,  
616 446–451. doi: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2013.07.010. Epub 2013 Jul 11.
- 617 HEINE H.G., STEVENS M.P., FOORD A.J. & BOYLE D.B. (1999). A capripoxvirus detection PCR and antibody  
618 ELISA based on the major antigen P32, the homolog of the vaccinia virus H3L gene. *J. Immunol. Methods*,  
619 **227**, 187–196.
- 620 IRELAND D.C. & BINEPAL Y.S. (1998). Improved detection of capripoxvirus in biopsy samples by PCR. *J. Virol.*  
621 *Methods*, **74**, 1–7.
- 622 KITCHING R.P., HAMMOND J.M. & TAYLOR W.P. (1986). A single vaccine for the control of capripox infection in  
623 sheep and goats. *Res. Vet. Sci.*, **42**, 53–60.
- 624 KITCHING R.P. & SMALE C. (1986). Comparison of the external dimensions of capripoxvirus isolates. *Res. Vet.*  
625 *Sci.*, **41**, 425–427.
- 626 KITCHING R.P. & TAYLOR W.P. (1985). Clinical and antigenic relationship between isolates of sheep and goat  
627 pox viruses. *Trop. Anim. Health Prod.*, **17**, 64–74.
- 628 LAMIEN C.E., GOFF C.L., SILBER R., WALLACE D.B., GULYAZ V., TUPPURAINEN E., MADANI H., CAUFOUR P., ADAM  
629 T., EL HARRAK M., LUCKINS A.G., ALBINA E. & DIALLO A. (2011a). Use of the Capripoxvirus homologue of  
630 Vaccinia virus 30kDa RNA polymerase subunit (RPO30) gene as a novel diagnostic and genotyping target:  
631 development of a classical PCR method to differentiate Goat poxvirus from Sheep poxvirus. *Vet. Microbiol.*  
632 **149**, 30–39. doi: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2010.09.038.
- 633 LAMIEN C.E., LELENTA M., GOGER W., SILBER R., TUPPURAINEN E., MATIJEVIC M., LUCKINS A.G. & DIALLO A.  
634 (2011b). Real time PCR method for simultaneous detection, quantitation and differentiation of capripoxviruses.  
635 *J. Virol. Methods*, **171**, 134–140.
- 636 LE GOFF C., LAMIEN C.E., FAKHFACH E., CHADEYRAS A., ABU-ADULUGBAD E., LIBEAU G., TUPPURAINEN E.,  
637 WALLACE D., ADAM T., SILBER R., GULYAZ V., MADANI H., CAUFOUR P., HAMAMMI S., DIALLO A. & ALBINA E. (2009).  
638 Capripoxvirus G-protein-coupled chemokine receptor, a host-range gene suitable for virus-animal origin  
639 discrimination. *J. Gen. Virol.*, **90**, 67–77.
- 640 MURRAY L., EDWARDS L., TUPPURAINEN E.S., BACHANEK-BANKOWSKA K., OURA C.A., MIOULET V. & KING D.P.  
641 (2013). Detection of capripoxvirus DNA using a novel loop-mediated isothermal amplification assay. *BMC Vet.*  
642 *Res.*, **9**, 90.
- 643 OMOGA D.C.A., MACHARIA M., MAGIRI E., KINYUA J., KASIITI J. & HOLTON T. (2016) Molecular based detection,  
644 validation of a LAMP assay and phylogenetic analysis of capripoxvirus in Kenya. *J. Adv. Biol. Biotech.*, **7**, 1–  
645 12.
- 646 PARVIN R., CHOWDHURY E.H., ISLAM M.T., BEGUM J.A., NOORUZZAMAN M., GLOBIG A., DIETZE K., HOFFMANN B. &  
647 TUPPURAINEN E. (2022). Clinical Epidemiology, Pathology, and Molecular Investigation of Lumpy Skin Disease  
648 Outbreaks in Bangladesh during 2020–2021 Indicate the Re-Emergence of an Old African Strain. *Viruses*, **14**,  
649 2529. doi: 10.3390/v14112529. PMID: 36423138; PMCID: PMC9698944.
- 650 STUBBS S., OURA C.A., HENSTOCK M., BOWDEN T.R., KING D.P. & TUPPURAINEN E.S. (2012). Validation of a high-  
651 throughput real-time polymerase chain reaction assay for the detection of capripoxviral DNA. *J. Virol. Methods*,  
652 **179**, 419–422.
- 653 TUPPURAINEN E.S.M., PEARSON C.R., BACHANEK-BANKOWSKA K., KNOWLES N.J., AMAREEN S., FROST L.,  
654 HENSTOCK M.R., LAMIEN C.E., DIALLO A. & MERTENS P.P.C. (2014). Characterization of sheep pox virus vaccine  
655 for cattle against lumpy skin disease virus. *Antiviral Res.*, **109**, 1–6.
- 656 TUPPURAINEN E.S.M., VENTER E.H. & COETZER J.A.W. (2005). The detection of lumpy skin disease virus in  
657 samples of experimentally infected cattle using different diagnostic techniques. *Onderstepoort J. Vet. Res.*  
658 **72**, 153–164.

659 WOLFF J., & BEER M. & Hoffmann B. (2021). Probe-Based Real-Time qPCR Assays for a Reliable Differentiation  
660 of Capripox Virus Species. *Microorganisms*, **9**, 765. <https://doi.org/10.3390/microorganisms9040765>

661 ZHAO Z., FAN B., WU G., YAN X., LI Y., ZHOU X., YUE H., DAI X., ZHU H., TIAN B., LI J. & ZHANG Q. (2014)  
662 Development of loop-mediated isothermal amplification assay for specific and rapid detection of differential  
663 goat Pox virus and Sheep Pox virus. *BMC Microbiol.*, **14**, 1–10.

664 ZRO K., AZELMAT S., BENDOURO Y., KUHN J.H., EL FAHIME E. & ENNAJI M.M. (2014a). PCR-based assay to detect  
665 sheeppox virus in ocular, nasal, and rectal swabs from infected Moroccan sheep. *J. Virol. Methods*, **204**, 38–  
666 43.

667 ZRO K., ZAKHAM F., MELLOUL M., EL FAHIME E. & MUSTAPHA M. (2014b). A sheeppox outbreak in Morocco:  
668 isolation and identification of virus responsible for the new clinical form of disease. *BMC Vet Res.*, **10**, 31.

669 \*  
670 \* \*

671 **NB:** There are WOAHP Reference Laboratories for sheep pox and goat pox (please consult the WOAHP Web  
672 site:

673 <https://www.woah.org/en/what-we-offer/expertise-network/reference-laboratories/#ui-id-3>).

674 Please contact the WOAHP Reference Laboratories for any further information on  
675 diagnostic tests, reagents and vaccines for sheep pox and goat pox

676 **NB:** FIRST ADOPTED IN 1989. MOST RECENT UPDATES ADOPTED IN 2017.